W. L. Anstett
Ευχήμα

Wilber H. Young
Glen Dale Institute
Crestwood
Missouri
Charles M. Kay
Shurtleff College
June 9th, 1849
THE FIRST SIX BOOKS
OF
CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE
GALLIC WAR,
ADAPTED TO
BULLIONS' LATIN GRAMMAR;
WITH AN INTRODUCTION, ON THE IDIOMS OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE; COPIOUS EXPLANATORY NOTES; AND AN INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, ETC.

By Rev. PETER BULLIONS, D. D.,
PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY; AND AUTHOR OF THE SERIES OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN AND ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN.

THIRD EDITION.

NEW-YORK:
PUBLISHED BY PRATT, WOODFORD & Co.
No. 82 WALL STREET.

1845.
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1845, by
PETER BULLIONS,
in the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New-York.

EDUCATION LIBR.
PREFACE.

Cæsar is usually, and with great propriety, among the first books put into the hands of pupils commencing the study of Latin. In adapting a portion of this work, as well as the Latin Reader, to his Latin Grammar, the chief object of the Editor has been to lead the student, in the beginning of his course, to a minute and thorough acquaintance with the principles of the language. The text of Oudendorp has been generally followed. For the sake of convenience, and also because, with many, Cæsar is the first book studied after the Grammar, the Introduction on the Latin Idioms prefixed to the Latin Reader has been prefixed here also. To this as well as to the Grammar reference is constantly made at the foot of the page, for the purpose of explaining and illustrating principles as they occur; and if the pupil will only take the pains to examine these references as he proceeds, he will gradually, and with comparatively little labor, become so familiar with the grammatical structure and idioms of the language that his future progress will be much more rapid and pleasant than it can be without such a course of training.

To the text copious notes have been added, for the purpose of explaining more particularly some constructions of the language,—aiding the pupil in the selection of an appropriate term, or, in giving variety to his expression,—and, in some cases, of assisting him to apprehend more clearly the meaning of the author. These, together with the references to the Introduction and Grammar above specified, contain such and so much assistance as an industrious and intelligent pupil, at this stage of his progress, in preparing his lessons, may be supposed to need from his teacher; so that by a proper use of this work, both the teacher will be relieved in a great measure from that labor, and interruption of other duties which the ren-
dering of this assistance would require, and the pupil will have always at hand the assistance needed. These notes are taken chiefly from Dymock's Cæsar, Glasgow edition. A few have been added from other sources.

The Vocabulary or index at the end of the work is abridged from the same author, and contains various and important information respecting the persons and places mentioned in the text, and also respecting many things belonging to the antiquities and polity of the Romans and their method of conducting military operations. In this part several wood cuts have been introduced to aid the pupil in forming correct ideas of some of the engines and operations of war, as they existed in the days of Cæsar.

The map of Ancient Gaul has been prepared with special reference to this work, and exhibits the divisions of that country, with the names of nations, tribes, and towns, mentioned by Cæsar, as they existed in his time, so far as their position can be ascertained from authentic sources. The modern names of the same places will be found, generally, by consulting the Index.

A correct pronunciation as it regards quantity should be attended to from the beginning. In order to aid the pupil in forming correct habits in this too much neglected part of study, the quantity of the penult syllable has been marked in all words of more than two syllables, except where the penult vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant, in which case it is always long; or where the penult vowel is followed by another vowel, in which case it is almost always short; or when the syllable being common, that is, either short or long, there is no danger of the quantity being given wrong. In words of two syllables there is little danger of wrong pronunciation, and if, in words of more than two syllables, the quantity of the penult is correctly given, there is little danger of error elsewhere.

With a view to render the work as full as was deemed necessary, and at the same time to bring the price so low as to make it more generally accessible, only the first six books of the Commentaries on the Gallic war have been taken. These contain all that portion of this author usually read in academies and schools, and to have taken more would only have increased the size and the price of the book without any corresponding benefit to the purchaser.

The Editor takes this opportunity to renew his grateful acknowledgements to the many learned men, and instructors of youth, for
the favor with which his humble labors have been received by them, and for the many important suggestions communicated, by which he has been enabled to add essentially to their value and usefulness. A Greek Reader adapted to the Greek Grammar is now preparing, and will be published as speedily as possible.

Albany Academy, February 26, 1845.
NOTICE.

In the text, the references to the Grammar generally will be found at the places indicated, in all the editions. Those marked § 140, 1, 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, will be found in editions previous to the last of 1844, at § 145, Obs. 5, 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th: And those marked § 140, 2, 3, 4, 5, will be found under § 140, Obs. 1, 2d, 3d, 4th, and 5th.
INTRODUCTION.

SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *Man is mortal.*

2. Sentences are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound.*

3. A simple sentence contains but one subject and one verb; as, *Life is short. Time flies.*

4. A compound sentence contains two or more simple sentences combined; as, *Life, which is short, should be well employed.*

5. In the combining of words to form a sentence, observe carefully the following

*General Principles of Syntax.*

1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, and a *subject,* expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a substantive expressed or understood with which it agrees, § 98 and § 146.*

3. Every relative must have an antecedent or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees, § 99.

4. Every nominative has its own verb expressed or understood, of which it is the subject, §§ 100, 101, 102. Or is placed after the substantive verb in the predicate, § 103.

5. Every finite verb; i. e., every verb in the indicative, subjunctive or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood, §§ 101, 102, and when the infinitive has a subject it is in the accusative, § 145. The infinitive without a subject does not form a sentence or proposition, § 143.

6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part.

* The references are to the sections in the Latin Grammar.
Resolution or Analysis.

Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate, § 94, 6. 7. 8. In analyzing a sentence, it is necessary to distinguish between the Grammatical subject and predicate, and the Logical subject and predicate.

The Grammatical subject is the name or thing spoken of, without, or separated from, all modifying words or clauses, and which stands as the nominative to the verb, or the accusative before the infinitive.

The Logical subject is the same word in connection with the qualifying or restricting expressions, which go to make up the full and precise idea of the thing spoken of.

The Grammatical predicate is the word or words containing the simple affirmation made respecting the subject.

The Logical predicate is the grammatical predicate combined with all those words or expressions that modify or restrict it in any way; thus:

In the sentence, "An inordinate desire of admiration often produces a contemptible levity of deportment;" the Grammatical subject is "desire;" the Logical "An inordinate desire of admiration." The Grammatical predicate is "produces," the Logical, "produces often a contemptible levity of deportment."

In Latin and English, the general arrangement of a sentence is the same, i. e., the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts, is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the proper order of the English. This is technically called construing or giving the order. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

Directions for Beginners.

Direct. I. As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or NOMINATIVE, and the predicate or VERB; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this,
1. Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

2. Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, § 151. R. I. with exceptions.

Direct. II. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1. Take the Vocative, Exciting, Introductory, or connecting words, if there are any.
2. The NOMINATIVE.
3. Words limiting or explaining it, i.e., words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the verb.
4. The VERB.
5. Words limiting or explaining it, i.e., words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it.
6. Supply everywhere the words understood.
7. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

Direct. III. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

Rules for construing.

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.
   Exc. The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it or be coupled with it, is put before its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive, § 141. Rule VI.
III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause, should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb; (in English between the auxiliary and the verb.) Interrogative words, however, such as quis, quotus, quantus, uter, &c., come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative, and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative, and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions should be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.
LATIN IDIOMS.*

PARTICULAR DIRECTIONS AND MODELS FOR TRANSLATION.

[The following explanations and directions are intended chiefly for reference. But it will be of great advantage for the pupil to become familiar with them by going through them two or three times, in course, simultaneously with his reading lessons.]

1. Before translating, every sentence should be read over till it can be read correctly and with ease, paying special attention to the quantity and pronunciation. The words should then be arranged according to the preceding general directions, and translated as they are arranged, separately or in clusters, as may be found convenient; always remembering to place adjectives and adjective pronouns with their substantives before translating. The sense and grammatical construction being thus ascertained, the translation may then be read over without the Latin, and due attention paid to the English idiom. The whole sentence, whether simple or compound, may then be analyzed as directed § 152, and last of all, every word parsed separately as directed, § 153.

2. In order to arrange and translate with ease, it is necessary to be familiar with, and readily to distinguish the different cases, genders, and numbers of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles, and to translate them correctly and promptly, in these cases and numbers, &c.; and also to distinguish and correctly translate the verb in its various moods, tenses, numbers, persons, &c. This can be acquired only by continual practice and drilling, which should be kept up till the utmost readiness is attained.

3. The English prepositions used in translating the different cases in Latin, for the sake of convenience, may be called signs of those cases; and in translating these, the English definite or indefinite article is to be used as the sense requires. The signs of the cases are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>English Preposition</th>
<th>Sign</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>(No sign.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>To or for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>(No sign.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>O. or no sign</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>With, from, in, by, &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A Latin idiom, strictly speaking, is a mode of speech peculiar to the Latin language. It is here used in a more extended sense, to denote a mode of speech different from the English, or which, if rendered word for word, and with the ordinary signs of cases, moods, tenses, &c., would not make a correct English sentence.
In certain constructions the idiom of the English language requires the oblique cases in Latin to be translated in a manner different from the above. The chief of these constructions are the following:

4. **The Genitive.**

1. The genitive denoting the place where, R. XXXVI., is translated *at*; as, *Roma*, "At Rome."

2. Denoting *price*, sometimes *for*; as, *Vendiidit pluris*, "He sold it for more;" or without a sign; as, *Constitit pluris*, "It cost more.

5. **The Dative.**

1. After a verb of taking away, R. XXIX.; the dative is translated *from*; as, *Eripuit me morti*, "He rescued me from death;" *Eripitur morti*, "He is rescued from death." R. XXXII–III. See § 123, Exp.

2. Denoting the doer after a passive verb, R. XXXIII., it is translated *by*; as, *Vix audior ulli*, "I am scarcely heard by any one."

3. Denoting the possessor, R. XV., Obs. 1, it is translated as the genitive; as, *Ei in mentem venit*, "It came into the mind to him," i. e., of him, or into his mind.

4. After verbs signifying "to be present," *at*; as, *Adfuit precibus*, He was present at prayers. § 112, R. I.

6. **The Ablative.**

1. The ablative denoting a property or quality of another substantive, R. VII., is translated *of*; as, *Vir mira magnitudo*, "A man of wonderful size."

2. The place where, R. XXXVI. Exc., commonly *at*, sometimes *in*.

3. After the comparative degree, § 120, R. XXIV., *than*; as, *Dulcior meli*, "Sweeter than honey."

4. Denoting the material of which a thing is made, § 128, Obs. 2, *of*; as, *Factus ebo re*, "Made of ivory."

5. After *dignus* and words denoting origin; also after *opus and usus*, signifying need, *of*; as, *Dignus honor*, "Worthy of honor."
6. Denoting time how long, sometimes *in*; as, *Un* *d* *e* *fieit, “He did it in one day;” sometimes without a sign; as, *Un* *d* *e* *ab* *fieit, “He was absent one day.”

7. Time when, *at, on*; as, Solis *occ* *a* *s* *u, “At the setting of the sun;” *Id* *i* *b* *u* *s* *Ap* *ri* *l* *i* *s, “On the ides of April.”

8. After verbs of depriving, § 125, *of*; as, Eum *ve* *s* *t* *e* _spoliavet, “He stripped him of his garment.”*

_Cases without Signs:_

7. When the genitive, dative, or ablative, is governed by an intransitive verb which is translated by a transitive verb in English, (§ 38, Obs. 4,) or by an adjective denoting likeness, the sign of the case is omitted; as,

1. Gen. _Miser* *ere* _mei, Pity me._
2. Dat. _Prefuit e* *x* *erci* _tui, He commanded the army._
3. “ _Placuit re* _gi, It pleased the king._
4. Abl. _Utrit* _ur fra* _ude, He uses deceit._
5. “ _Potitus est im* _peri* _o, He obtained the government._
6. Dat. _Similis patri, Like his father._

_Obs._ But when rendered by an intransitive verb in English, the sign of the case must be used; as,

7. _Insidiantur nobis, They lie in wait for us._

8. When a verb governs two datives, by R. XIX., the dative of the end or design is sometimes rendered without the sign; as,

1. _Est mihi vo* _lum* _tali, It is to me [for] a pleasure; i. e., It is [or brings] a pleasure to me._
2. _Sex mensibus abfieit, He was absent six months._

9. The ablative absolute, R. LX., (See No. 109,) and frequently time how long, R. XL., are without the sign; as,

1. _Bellofinito, The war being ended._
2. _Sex mensibus abfieit, He was absent six months._

10. When the ablative is governed by a preposition, the English of that preposition takes the place of the sign of the ablative, and no other will be used; thus,

1. _Ab exercitu, From the army._
2. _Ex urbe, Out of the city._
3. _In agro, In the field._
4. _Cum dignitate, With dignity._
5. _Pro castris, Before the camp._
6. _Tenus pubes, Up to the middle._

11. In order to specify more particularly, the English idiom sometimes requires the possessive pronouns; _my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their_, (not expressed in Latin unless contrasted with others,) to be supplied before a noun, and espe-
INTRODUCTION.

cially if they refer to the subject of the sentence. The sense will shew when this is to be done and what pronoun is to be used; as,

1. Filius similis patri, A son like his father.
2. Reverere parentes, Reverence your parents.

12. Nouns in apposition, (§ 97, R. I,) must be brought as near together as possible, and the sign of the case, when used, prefixed to the first only; as,

1. Nom. Cicerô Oratôr, Cicero the orator.
2. Gen. Cicerônis oratóris, Of Cicero the orator.
3. Dat. Ciceroni oratóri, To Cicero the orator,

13. The noun in apposition is sometimes connected with the noun before it by the words as, being, &c.; as,

1. Misit me com'tem, He sent me as a companion.
2. Hic puer venit, He came, when [or being] a boy.

Adjectives and Substantives.

14. In translating an adjective or adjective pronoun and a substantive together, the adjective is commonly placed first, and the sign of the case is prefixed to it, and not to the noun, § 98, R. II.; as,

2. Gen. Alti montis, Of a high mountain.

15. When two or more adjectives, coupled by a conjunction belong to one substantive, they may be placed either before or after it; as,

1. Jupiter optimus et maximus, Jupiter the best and greatest; or
Optimus et maximus Jupiter, The best and greatest Jupiter.
2. Viri sapientis et docti, Sapientis et docti viri, Of a man wise and learned; or
Sapientis et docti vir, Of a wise and learned man.

16. The adjective must be placed after its substantive when the former has a negative joined with it, or another word in the sentence governed by it, or dependent upon it. So also solus; as,

1. Dux peritus belli, A general skilled in war.
2. Filius similis patri, A son like his father.
3. Poëta dignus honore, A poet worthy of honor.
4. Homines soli sapiunt, Men alone are wise.
5. Avis tam parum decor, A bird so little beautiful.
6. Littore non molli neque arenöso, With a shore not soft nor sandy.
17. The adjectives *primus, medius, ultimus, extrêmus, infîmus, imus, summus, suprêmus, reliquis, cæter, or cæterus,* and some others describing a part of an object, are translated as substantives, with the sign of the case prefixed, and of before the substantive following, § 98, Obs. 9; as,

1. *Medi à nocte,* In the middle of the night.
2. *Ad summum montem,* To the top of the mountain.

18. When these adjectives (No. 17,) describe the whole and not a part only, they are translated as No. 11.; as,

*Summum bonum,* The chief good.

*Suprêmus dies,* The last day.

19. An adjective without a substantive usually has a substantive understood, but obvious from the connexion, § 98, Obs. 5. Masculine adjectives, (if plural,) commonly agree with *homines,* or, if possessives, with *amici, cives,* or *mîlitès,* understood; and neuters, with *factum, negotium, verbum, tempus,* &c.; as,

1. *Boni (homines) sunt rari,* Good men are rare,
2. *Cæsar misit suos (mîlitès,)* Caesar sent his soldiers.
3. *Cocles transnâvit ad suos (cîves,)* Cocles swam over to his fellow-citizens.
5. *In postérum (tempus,)* In time to come,—for the future.
6. *In eo (locô) ut.* In such a situation that.

20. Adjectives commonly used without a substantive, (but still belonging to a substantive understood,) may be regarded as substantives. They are such as *mortalès, bonî, mali, supéris, infèriti, Græcus, Romàni,* &c. (See § 98, Obs. 5;) as,

1. *Mali odërunt bonos,* The wicked hate the good.
2. *Græcos Români vicërunt,* The Romans conquered the Greeks.

21. Adjective words when partitives, or used partitively, take the gender of the noun expressing the whole, and govern it in the genitive plural, (if a collective noun, in the genitive singular,) § 107, Rule X. In this case verbs and adjectives agree with the partitive as if it were a noun; as,

1. *Aliquis philosophrum Some one of the philosophers has said,*
2. *Una musa rum veniet,* One of the muses will come.

22. The comparative degree not followed by an ablative, or the conjunction *quam,* (than) is usually translated by the positive with *too or rather* prefixed. For explanation see § 120, Obs. 5.; as,
INTRODUCTION.

1. *Iracundior est*; (scil. *æquó,* He is too (or rather) passionate.
2. *Egríus ferébat,* He took it rather ill.
3. *Altius volavit,* He flew too high.

*Obs.* In a comparison, *eò* or *tanto* with a comparative in one clause, and *quò* or *quanto* in the other, may be rendered “the;” (See No. 44. 7. 8.) as,

4. *Quo plures, eò feliciorès,* The more the happier.

23. The superlative degree expressing comparison, is usually preceded by the article *the* in English, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Doctissimus Romanorum,* The most learned of the Romans.
2. *Fortissimus miles in exercitu,* The bravest soldier in the army.

24. When the superlative does not express comparison, but only eminence or distinction, it is translated with the article *a* or *an* prefixed in the singular, and without an article in the plural; or by the positive, with very, eminently, &c., prefixed, (§ 25,); as,

1. *Homo doctissimus.* A most learned (or a very learned) man.
2. *Hómines doctissimi,* Most learned (or very learned) men.

25. *Alius* repeated with a different word in the same clause, renders that clause double, and requires it to be translated as in the following examples:

1. *Alius alía viā,* One by one way, another by another.
2. *Aliud aliis vidētur,* One thing seems good to some, another to others, i. e. Some think one thing, and some another. (See other varieties. § 98.Obs. 11.)

The same usage occurs with words derived from *alius.* See Gr. § 98, Obs. 12.

26. The distributive numeral adjectives are usually translated by the cardinal number indicated, with “each,” or “to each,” annexed; sometimes by repeating the cardinal thus, “one by one;” “two by two,” &c., § 24, 11; as,

1. *Consules binae naves habēbant,* The consuls had each two ships, or, had two ships each.
2. *Quā singūli carri ducērentur,* Where wagons could be led one by one.
3. *Tigna bina,* Beams two by two, or in pairs.
4. *Singūlis singūlas partes distribuit aequales,* He distributed equal parts, one to each.
5. *Singūlis mensibus hoc fecit,* This he did every (or each) month.
6. *Plures singūli uxōres habēnt,* They have each many wives.
LATIN IDIOMS.

Pronouns.

27. 1st. The adjective pronoun, *hic, haec, hoc*, with a noun following, is used as an adjective, and means, in the singular, "*this,"—in the plural, "*these.""—*ille, illa, illud,—is, ea, id,—*iste, *ista, *istud, with a noun, in the singular, mean "*that,"—in the plural, "*those."

2d. Without a noun following they are all used substantively, and mean, in the singular, *he, she, it*; in the plural, *they*; thus,

1. *Hic vir,* This man. 4. *Hic fecit,* He did it.
2. *illa femina,* That woman. 5. *illa venit,* She came.
3. *Ea urbs,* That city. 6. *Ea (Dido) condidit eam,* She built it, (Carthage.)

Obs. In sentences containing an enumeration of particulars, the same pronoun is sometimes used in successive clauses, but they require to be translated differently, (§ 98, Obs. 12,); thus,

7. *Hic,*  
   8. *Is,*  
   9. *ille,*  
10. * alter,*  
   "one," "the one."  
   "is," "ille,"  
   "other."

When antithesis or contrast is stated, *hic* is translated "this," and refers to the nearer antecedent, *ille,* "that," and refers to the more distant; as,

11. *Hic minor natur est, illae major,* This is the younger, *that, the older.*

28. *Is, ea, id,* followed by *ut,* or the relative, *qui, quae, quod,* in the next clause, means "*such,*" and implies comparison. The relative after it may be translated, *that I, that thou, that he, that they,* &c., according as the antecedent requires, or it may be translated *as,* and its verb by the infinitive (§ 31, Obs. 2,); thus,

1. *Is homo erat ut,* &c.,  
2. *Neque is sum qui terrear,*  
   He was such a man that, &c.  
   I am not such that I may be frightened. Or better thus, I am not such a one as to be frightened.

Obs. The adverb *eo* with *ut* following it means "*so far," "to such a degree," "to such a point," "in such a state;" as,

3. *Eo pervenit ut,*  
   "He came so far, (i. e. made such progress.) that;"
INTRODUCTION.

Possessive Pronouns.

29. The possessive pronoun is equivalent in meaning to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, and may often be so translated; as,

1. *Beneficio suo popultque Romani,* By the kindness of himself and of the Roman people.
2. *Cum me a nemo scripta legat,* Since no one reads the writings of me, fearing to recite them publicly.

30. The possessives, *suus,* *sua,* *suum,* in Latin, agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun denoting the object possessed, but in English must be translated by a pronoun denoting the possessor; thus,

1. *Pater diligit suos liberos,* A father loves his children.
2. *Parentes diligunt suum sobolém,* Parents love their offspring.
3. *Frater diligit suum sororem,* A brother loves his sister.
4. *Soror diligit suum fratem,* A sister loves her brother.

*Obs.* In the first sentence, "*suos,*" agrees with "*liberos,*" but must be translated "*his,*" denoting "*pater,*" the possessor. In the second, *suum,* though singular, to agree with *sobolem,* must be translated "*their,*" so as to denote the possessors, "*parentes,*" &c.

Usage of Sui, Suus;—Ille, Iste, Hic, Is.

31. The reflexive, *sui,* and its possessive, *suus,* generally refer to the subject of the leading verb* in the sentence; *ille, iste, hic, is,* never refer to that subject, but to some other person or thing spoken of; thus,

1. *Cato occidit se,* Cato killed himself.
2. *Pater diligit suos liberos,* A father loves his (own) children.
3. *Parentes diligunt suam sobolem,* Parents love their (own) offspring.
4. *Dicit se valere,* He says that he is well.

*Obs.* In the second and third sentence, *suos,* "*his,*" and *suam,* "*their,*" referring to some other person than *pater or parentes,* would be made by the genitive of *ille, iste, hic, is.* In the first and fourth, *se* would be made *eum.* For the difference between these words usually translated "*he,*" see Gr. § 28, Obs. 3.

* See Gr. § 28, Obs. 3, 1st., with note.
Note. If a second subject and verb be introduced, the reflexive governed by that verb will belong to the new subject, unless the whole clause refer to the words, wishes, or actions, of the first subject; as,

5. Scipio civitatibus Italiae reddi. Scipio restored to the States of Italy, all the things which they recognised as their own.

Usage of Ipse.

32. Ipse renders the word with which it is joined emphatic, whether expressed or understood, and is equal to the English, myself, thyself, himself, themselves, &c., annexed to it; sometimes to the word very prefixed. With numbers it denotes exactness, and sometimes it is used by itself as a reflexive instead of sui, § 28, Obs. 3, 2d.; as,

1. Ipse faciam, (i. e. ego ipse,) I will do it myself.
2. Ipse fruérìs otio, (i. e. tu ipse,) Thou enjoyest ease.
3. Jaculo cadit ipse, (i. e. ille ipse,) He falls by a dart.
5. Tempus ipsum convenit, The very time was agreed on.
6. Ad ipsum portas, To the very gates.
7. Decem ipsi dies, Ten whole days.
8. Precatus est ut ipsum liberaret, He begged that he would liberate him.
9. Donum ipsi datum, A present given to him.

33. When joined with the personal pronouns, used in a reflexive sense, and in an oblique case, it sometimes agrees with them in case, but more commonly with the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative. It is always, however, to be translated with the oblique case, to which it adds the force of the word self, or simply of emphasis; thus,

1. Se ipsum interficit (or se ipsum,) He slew himself.
2. Nosce te ipsum (or te ipsum,) Know thyself.
3. Mihi ipsi, (or ipse,') I favor myself.
4. Agam per me ipsum, I will do it myself.
5. Virtus est per se ipse laudabilis, Virtue is to be praised for itself.
6. Se ipsum omnes naturâ dilegunt. All men naturally love themselves.

RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

General Principle.

34. Every sentence containing a relative and its antecedent, is a compound sentence, of which the relative with its
clause forms one of the parts, and is used further to describe or limit its antecedent word in the other part. That word may be the subject, or belong to the predicate, or to some circumstance connected with either. But to whichever of these it belongs, the relative and its clause must all be translated together, and in immediate connexion with its antecedent word. Hence the following

**General Rule of Arrangement.**

35. The relative with its clause should be placed immediately after, or as near as possible to the antecedent, and, unless unavoidable, another substantive should not come between them; thus,

**Latin Arrangement.**

1. *Urbi immīnet mons, qui ad Arcadiam procurrit.* Here "qui" with its clause, "ad Arcadiam procurrit," belongs to, and further describes the antecedent subject, "mons." As then the subject with all that belongs to it must be taken before the verb, (Gr. § 152, Direct. 2, 2d, 3d,) the above sentence should be arranged for translation, thus: *Mons qui procurrit ad Arcadiam, immīnet urbi,* A mountain, which extends to Arcadia, hangs over the city.

Or, the English order may be inverted, thus: *Urbi immīnet mons, qui procurrit ad Arcadiam,* Over the city hangs a mountain, which, &c.

But not, *Mons immīnet urbi, qui,* &c., because this arrangement would place "urbi" between the antecedent, "mons," and the relative, "qui," and so lead to a false translation. The following sentence also affords an example:

2. *Proxīme urbem Eurōtās fluvius delabītur, ad cujus ripas Spartāni se exercēre solēbant.* Arrange, *Proxīme urbem delabītur,* &c., Close to the city flows; or, *Eurōtās fluvius, ad cujus ripas,* &c.

36. When another noun necessarily comes between the relative and its antecedent, there is more danger of ambiguity in English than in Latin, as the gender and number of the Latin relative will generally direct to the proper antecedent, to which in English we are directed chiefly by the
sense. The following sentence affords an example of this kind: Ad Byzantium fugit, oppidum naturâ munitorum et arte, quod copiâ abundat.

37. The antecedent in Latin is often understood when the English idiom requires it to be supplied. It is generally understood, and should be supplied in the proper case:

1st. When it is intentionally left indefinite, or is obvious from the gender and number of the relative, and the connexion in which it stands, as in No. 19; as,

1. Sunt (hominès) quos iuvat, There are men whom it delights.
2. Hic est (id) quod querrimus, That which we seek is here.
3. (Is) qui cito dat, bis dat, (He) who gives promptly, gives twice.

Note. In the preceding sentences the antecedent supplied is in parentheses.

2d. The antecedent is usually understood before the relative, when it is expressed after it, and in the same case, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 2d.); as,

4. (Part) quae pars terræ fuit, The part which was earthy.
5. (Locus) in quem locum venit, The place into which he came.

Note. 1. When the antecedent word is expressed in the relative clause, as in the examples Nos. 4, and 5, or is repeated, as in the following, No. 6, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 3d.,) it is omitted in translating; as,

6 Erant omnino duo itinerâ, qui-... There were only two ways by which they could go from home.

Note 2. Quisquis, quidquid, or quicquid, (and also quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque,) "whoever, whatever," used as a relative without an antecedent, includes a general or indefinite antecedent, in such case as the construction requires, and is equivalent to omnis, or quivis qui,—omne, or quidvis quod; as,

7. Fortunam quæcunque (i.e. They would hazard whatever fortunam quæ) fortune (i.e. any fortune which) might happen.
8. Quidquid tetigisset aurum Whatever (i.e. everything which) he had touched became gold.
Note 3. When the antecedent is a proposition, or clause of a sentence, § 99, Exp., the relative is put in the neuter gender, and sometimes has id before it referring to the same clause; as,

9. Servi, quod (or id quod) nunquam ante factum, manumissi et militæ facti sunt; The slaves, which never had been done before, were set free and made soldiers.

38. In the beginning of a sentence, a relative, with or without quum, or other conjunctive term, and referring to some word, clause, or circumstance, in a preceding sentence, usually has the antecedent word repeated, or, if evident, understood; and instead of who or which, may be rendered this, that, these, those, or, and this, and that, &c., according as the closeness of the connexion may require, (§ 99, Obs. 8); as,

1. Quæ urbs quum infestaretur, And since (or because) this city was infested.

"Quæ legati quum missi essent, When these ambassadors had been sent.

2. Quæ contentio cuncta permiscuit, This contention threw all things into confusion.

3. Quibus nuncius acceptis, These tidings being received.

4. Quo d. quum ille cernœret, And when he saw this.

5. Quando facto, This being done (or accomplished).

6. Quæ dum omnia contemplabantur, And while they were contemplating all these things.

7. Quo d. quum impetrasset, And when he had obtained this.

8. A quo consilio quum revocaret, When he recalled him from this design.

9. Quo ictu ille extinctus est, And by this blow he was killed.

Note. To this construction belongs quod, (apparently for propter or ad quod, § 128,) in the beginning of a sentence, referring to something previously stated, and meaning, "on account of, with respect to, or as to, this thing;" as,

10. Quod diis gratias habeo, On account of this, (for this thing, wherefor,) I give thanks to the gods.

11. Quod d. dicēret se ventūrum, As to what (as to that thing which) he said, that he would come.

39. When the antecedent word is not repeated, as in No. 38, the relative, with or without quum, or other conjunctive term, may be rendered he, she, it, they, or and he, and she, &c., according as the antecedent word requires, (§ 99, Obs. 8); as,
1. Qui quum admitteret, And when he admitted.
2. Quam quum vidisset, And when she had seen.
3. Quam quum visa esset, When she had been (or was) seen.
4. Quam quum daret nollet, And when he would not give it.
5. Qui (qua; pl. qui, qua,) respondit, When he had met them.
6. Quam quum. And he, (she, they) replied.
7. Quam quum. And when they were present.
8. Qui (or quce) quum ade-, As soon as, (or when) he saw him.
9. Ad quern quum venissent, And when they had come to him.
10. Quemut vidit, As soon as, (or when) he saw him.

40. When the relative in any case is followed by the subjunctive mood, and the two clauses, viz: the antecedent and relative, involve a comparison; or the latter expresses the purpose, object, or design, of something expressed by the former, the relative is better translated by the conjunction that and the personal pronoun; thus, that I, that thou, that he, that they, &c., as the antecedent word may require, (See Gr. § 141, R. II. and Explanation,);

1. Missus sum qui te adducerem, I have been sent that I might bring you.
2. Neque is qui facias id, You are not such a person that you should do that.
3. Quis est tam lynceus qui, &c. Who is so sharp sighted that he.
4. Misit legatos qui cognoscere rent, He sent ambassadors that they might find out.
5. Fruges mandavit quas disseminaret, She gave him fruits that he might scatter them.

41. In the expressions, quippe qui, ut qui, utpote qui, the relative is better translated by the personal pronoun which represents the antecedent, (§ 141, Obs. 4,); as,

1. Quippe qui nunquam legerim, For, (or because) I have never read them.

42. After dignus, indignus, idoneus, and the like, in the predicate, the relative and subjunctive mood may be rendered by the infinitive, (§ 141, Obs. 2. 1st.); as,

1. Dignus qui ametur, Worthy to be loved.
2. Si dignum qui numeretur If you shall elect a person worthy to be reckoned, &c.

43. Sometimes the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should generally be placed first; as,
INTRODUCTION.

1. *Qui bonis non recte utitur, ei* Good things become evil to him who does not use good things well.

2. *Qui cito dat, (is) bis dat,* He gives twice who gives quickly.

Correlative Adjectives.

44. The demonstratives, *tot,* so many, and *totidem,* just so many; *tantus,* as great, so great, as much, so much; *talis,* such; are followed by their relatives, *quot,* *quantus,* *qualis,* signifying *as,* to denote comparison; as,

1. *Tot homines quot,* As many men as.
2. *Totidem naves quot,* Just so many ships as
3. *Tantus exercitus quantus,* As great (or so great) an army as.
4. *Talis homo qualis,* Such a man as.

So also the correlative adverbs.

5. *Toties quoties,* As often as.
6. *Tum quam,* So as.
7. *Eò quo,* By so much as.
8. *Tanto quanto,* By so much in proportion as.

45. Instead of the relative in such sentences, the conjunctions *ac,* *atque,* (§ 149, Obs. 6,) *ut,* and the relative *qui,* *quae,* *quod,* are sometimes used and may generally be translated, "as," or "that."

1. *Honos talis paucis est delatus a c mith,* Such honor has been bestowed upon few persons, as upon me.
2. *Cum totidem navibus atque profectus erat, reedit,* He returned with just as many ships as he had departed with.
3. *Nulla est tanta vis quae non frangi possit,* No power is so great as (or, *that it*) cannot be broken.

46. When the relative only is expressed in sentences implying comparison, the *demonstrative* (No. 44,) must be supplied and the sentence translated as above; as,

1. *Crocodilus parit (tanta) ova* The crocodile lays (as large) eggs as geese lay.
2. *(Tot) millia quot unquam* As many thousands as ever came from Mycenae.

47. Sometimes, as in No. 43, the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should be placed first; as,

1. *Quot homines tot causae,* As many causes as there are men.

    *Tot causae quot homines,*
48. The relatives, *quot, quoties, quantus, qualis*, used *interrogatively*, or *in an exclamation*, or *indefinitely*, in the indirect interrogation, and without implying comparison, have no reference to an antecedent term either expressed or understood, and are translated respectively, "how many," "how often," "how great," or "how much," "what," or "of what kind;" as,

1. *Inter. Quo t annos habet?* How many years has he? i.e. how old is he?
2. *Indef. Nescio quot,* I know not how many.
4. *Indef. Doce quales sint,* Tell us of what kind they are.

**THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.**

**General Principle.**

49. Every finite verb (§ 95, 5,) has its own subject, expressed or understood, in the nominative case.

*Obs.* The subject of the verb is the person or thing spoken of, and may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, a *verb in the infinitive mood*, a *clause of a sentence*, or any thing which, however expressed, is the subject of thought or speech. (§ 101, Exp.)

**General Rule of Arrangement.**

50. The subject and all the words agreeing with it, governed by it, connected with it, or dependent upon it, must be arranged in the order of their connection and dependence, and translated before the verb.

1. *Canis latrat,* The dog barks.
   2. *Ego Scribo,* I write.
   3. *Lude re est jucundum,* To play is pleasant.
   4. *Dulce est pro patria mori,* To die for one’s country is sweet.
   6. *Vir sapit qui pauc a loquitur,* The man who speaks little is wise.

51. When the subject of a verb is the infinitive, either alone or with its subject; or a clause of a sentence, connected by *ut, quod*, or other conjunctive term, the *English pronoun, it*, is put with the verb referring to that infinitive or clause following it, and which is its proper subject; as,
1. Facile est jubere, It is easy to command.
2. Nuntiatum est classem devinci, It was announced that the fleet was conquered.
3. Semper accidit ut absis, It always happens that you are absent.
4. Qui fit ut metuas, How happens it that you fear.
5. Nunquam Românis placuisse That it never had pleased the Romans, that a commander should be killed by his own soldiers.

52. The verb must always be translated in its proper tense, and in the same person and number with its nominative. (See paradigms of the verb, §§ 54-70.) But when it has two or more nouns or pronouns in the singular, taken together, or a collective noun expressing many as individuals, as its subject, the verb must be translated in the plural; as,

1. Et pater et mater venerunt, Both his father and mother have come.
2. Turba quoquoversum ruunt, The crowd rush in every direction.

53. The nominative to a verb in the first or second person, being evident from the termination, is seldom expressed in Latin; but must be supplied in translating; as,

1. Scribo, I write.
2. Legis, Thou readest.
3. Scribimus, We write.
4. Legitis, You read.

54. When the verb in the third person has no nominative expressed, it refers to some noun or pronoun evident from the connection; and, both in translating and parsing, the pronoun ille, or is, in the nominative case, and in the gender and number of the noun or pronoun referred to, must be supplied; as,

1. (Ille) scribit, (He) writes.
2. (Illi) scribunt, (They) write.

55. When the same word is the subject of several verbs closely connected in the same construction, it is expressed with the first and understood to the rest, both in Latin and English; thus,

1. Cæsar venit, vidit, et vicit, Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.
2. Dicitur Cæsarem venisse, It is said that Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.

Interrogative Sentences.

56. A question is made in Latin in four different ways, as follows:
1st. By an interrogative pronoun; as, Quis venit? "Who comes?" Quem misit? "Whom did he send?" Cujus pecus hoc? "Whose flock is this?" &c.

2d. By an interrogative adverb; as, Unde venit? "Whence came he?" Qua venit? "Why did he come?"

3d. By the interrogative particles, num, an, and the enclitic, ne. Thus used these particles have no corresponding English word in the translation; they merely indicate a question; as, Num venit, or an venit, or venit ne? "Has he come?" Num videtur? "Does it seem?"

4th. By simply placing an interrogation mark at the end of the question; as, Vis me hoc facere? "Do you wish me to do this?"

57. The interrogative pronoun or adverb, in all cases, is translated before the verb; as,

1. Quis factit? Who did it? or who has done it?
2. Quem misit? Whom did he send?
3. Quant constituit? How much did it cost?
4. Quid fuit? What sort of a man was he?

This is true also of the indirect question, i.e., when the substance of a question is stated but not in the interrogative form; as,

5. Nescio quant constituisset, I know not how much it cost.
6. Docuit quam firma res esset. He shewed them how firm a thing agreement was.

Note. When the verb in the direct or indirect question comes under § 103, R. V., the predicate, or nominative after the verb, is translated first, and the subject or nominative, in the direct question after the verb, as in Ex. 4; but in the indirect, before it, as in Ex. 6. Thus, in Ex. 4, qualis is the predicate, and ille understood, the subject; in Ex. 6, res is the predicate, and concordia the subject.

58. In all forms of interrogation not made by an interrogative pronoun, as in No. 57, the nominative or subject is translated after the verb in English, in the simple forms, and after the first auxiliary in the compound forms; as,

1. Vide?e? Seest thou? or dost thou see?
2. An venisti? Hast thou come? or have you come?
3. Scribe?e? Will he write?
4. Num ibimus? Shall we go?
5. Nonne fecit? Has he not done (it?)
INTRODUCTION.

6. An egisset melius? Would he have done better?
7. Nosne alémus? Shall we support?
8. Nonne Dei est? Does it not belong to God?
9. Iste est frater? Is that your brother?

59. When a sentence not interrogative is introduced by nec or neque, not followed by a corresponding conjunction, (See No. 124,) in a connected clause, the verb will be translated by an auxiliary, and the English nominative will stand after the first auxiliary; as,

1. Neque hoc intelligo, Neither do I understand this.
2. Nec venisset, Neither would he have come.
3. Nec adeptus sum, Nor have I attained.

The object of the verb.

60. In translating, the object of a transitive verb in the accusative is arranged after the verb, and as near to it as possible. That object may be a noun, a pronoun, an infinitive mood, or a clause of a sentence, (§ 116, Exp.); as,

1. Romulus condidit urbem, Romulus built a city.
2. Vocavit eam Romam, He called it Rome.
3. Disce dicere vera, Learn to speak the truth.
4. Obtulit ut captivos redeemissent, He offered that they should redeem the captives.

61. The interrogative or relative pronoun is always translated before the verb that governs it; as,

1. Quem mittemus? Whom shall we send?
2. Cuī dedisti? To whom did ye give it?
3. Deus quem collimus, God whom we worship.
4. Cuī omnia debēmus, To whom we owe all things.

62. When a transitive verb governs two cases, the immediate object in the accusative, according to the natural order, is usually translated first, and after that the remote object in the genitive, § 122; dative, § 123; accusative, § 124; or ablative, § 125; as,

1. Arguit me furti, He accuses me of theft.
2. Comparo Virgilium Homero, I compare Virgil to Homer.
3. Possimus te pacem, We beg peace of thee.
4. Onérat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Note. The accusative of the person after verbs of asking, is translated by of, or from; as,

5. Pyrrhum auxiliurn possecrunt, They demanded aid of (or from) Pyrrhus.
63. But when the remote object is a *relative*, or when the immediate object is an *infinitive*, or a clause of a sentence, or a noun further described by other words, the remote object must be translated first; as,

1. *Cui librum dedimus,*  
   *To whom we gave the book.*
2. *Da mihi fallère,*  
   *Give me to deceive.*
3. *Dixit e i confiteor meum peccatum,*  
   *He said to him, I confess my fault.*
4. *Eum rogavérunt, ut ipsos deféret,*  
   *They entreated him, that he would defend them.*
5. *Docuit illos quam firmae esset,*  
   *He shewed them how firm it was.*
6. *Ciuitatem, anteà solicitudin,*  
   *He supplies with arms, the city already excited.*

64. When a verb, which in the active voice governs two cases, is used in the passive form, that which was the immediate object in the accusative, becomes the subject in the nominative, and the remote object in its own case immediately follows the verb. Thus, the examples No. 62, may be arranged and translated as follows, § 126.

1. *Arguor furti,*  
   *I am accused of theft.*
2. *Virgilius comparatur Homerò,*  
   *Virgil is compared to Homer.*
3. *Pax poscitur te,*  
   *Peace is begged of thee.*
4. *Naves onerantur aurum,*  
   *The ships are loading with gold.*
5. *Accusatus furti,*  
   *Accused of theft.*
6. *Comparatus Homerò,*  
   *Compared to Homer,*
7. *Onerata aurum,*  
   *Loaded with gold.*
8. *Nudata homínibus,*  
   *Stripped of men.*
9. *Ereptus morti,*  
   *Saved from death.*

**Impersonal Verbs.**

65. The impersonal verb has no nominative before it in Latin. It is translated by placing the pronoun *it* before it in English; as, (§ 85, 2.)

1. *Decet,*  
   *It becomes.*
2. *Constat,*  
   *It is evident.*
3. *Tonat,*  
   *It thunders.*
4. *Pugnátur,*  
   *It is fought.*
5. *Itur,*  
   *It is gone.*
6. *Curritur,*  
   *It is run.*

66. Impersonal verbs governing the dative or accusative in Latin, may be translated in a personal form by making the word in the dative or accusative the nominative to the English verb, taking care always to express the same idea, (§ 85, 6, and § 113; thus,
### INTRODUCTION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impersonally</th>
<th>Personally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Placet mihi,</td>
<td>It pleases me; I am pleased.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Licet tibi,</td>
<td>It is permitted to you; You are permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Decet eum,</td>
<td>It becomes him; He ought.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Pudet nos,</td>
<td>It shames us; We are ashamed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Tadet vos,</td>
<td>It wears you; You are wearied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Favetur, illis,</td>
<td>Favor is done to them; They are favored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Nocetur hosti,</td>
<td>Hurt is done to the enemy; The enemy is hurt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Miset me tuui,</td>
<td>It moves me to pity of you; I pity you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Penitet e os,</td>
<td>It repents them; They repent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Penitet me peccasse,</td>
<td>It repents me, i. e., I repent of having sinned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

67. When the doer of an action denoted by an impersonal verb, or by a passive verb used impersonally, is expressed by the ablative with a, (§ 85, 6,) the verb may be translated personally in the active voice, and the doer, in the ablative, be made its English subject or nominative; as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impersonally</th>
<th>Personally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Pugnatur a me,</td>
<td>It is fought by me; I fight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Curritur a te,</td>
<td>It is run by thee; Thou runnest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Favetur a nobis,</td>
<td>It is favored by us; We favor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Favetur tibi a nobis,</td>
<td>It is favored to you by us; We favor you; or you are favored by us.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** The doer in the ablative with a, is frequently understood, (especially when no definite person or thing is intended,) and must be supplied as the context requires; as,

| 5. Ubi perventum est (ab illis,) | When it was come by them, i. e., when they came. |
| 6. Descenditur (ab hominibus,) | Men (or people,) go down. |
| 7. Conveniendum (ab hominibus,) | People assembled. |

68. Some verbs, not impersonal, are used impersonally, when used before the infinitive of impersonal verbs, (§ 113, Obs. 1,) as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impersonally</th>
<th>Personally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Potest credi tibi,</td>
<td>It can be trusted to you; You can be trusted; 66. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Non potest noceri hosti,</td>
<td>It cannot be hurt to the enemy; The enemy cannot be hurt; 66. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Ut fieri solet,</td>
<td>As it is wont to be done; or, As is usual.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

69. Verbs usually impersonal are sometimes used personally, and have their subject in the nominative, (§ 113, Obs. 1,) as,
1. *Doleo* I grieve, (Impersonally *Dolet mihi,*) It grieves me,
3. *Ista g e s t a mi n a nostros hu-*These arms become my shoul-

**Usage of Videor, “I seem.”**

70. *Videor,* “I seem,” though never impersonal in Latin, is often rendered impersonally in English; and the dative following it, seems properly to come under Rule XXXIII, § 126, to denote the person to whom any thing seems or appears, i.e., by whom it is seen; thus, *Videor tibi esse pauper,* I seem to you, (i.e., I am seen by you,) to be poor. *Videor mihi esse pauper,* I seem to myself, (i.e., I am seen by myself,) to be poor; or, I think that I am poor. So the following:

1. *Videor esse liber,* I seem to be free; or, *It seems that* I am free.
2. *Videor mihi esse liber,* I seem to myself to be free; or, *It seems to me,* (or, *I think*) that I am free.
3. *Vidēris esse,* You seem to be; or, *It seems that* you are.
4. *Vidēris tibi esse,* You seem to yourself to be; or, *It seems to you,* (i.e., you think) that you are.
5. *Vidēris mihi esse,* You seem to me to be; or, *It seems to me,* (i.e., I think) that you are.
6. *Tu,* ut *vidēris,* *non scribis,* You, as you seem, (or, as it seems) do not write.

**Obs.** The third person singular of *videor* followed by an infinitive, with its subject in the accusative, or by a depend-
ent clause after *ut,* or *quod,* may be said to be used impersonally; though strictly speaking, that infinitive with its accusative, or that clause, is the subject, (See No. 51); as,

7. *Vidētur mihi te valēre,* It appears to me that you are well; strictly rendered, That you are well appears to (or, is seen by) me.
8. *Illi vidētur ut valeat,* It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (*another person*) is well.
9. *Vidētur sibi valēre,* It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, (*himself*) is well. He seems to himself to be well.
Verbs.—Indicative Mood.

71. Verbs in the indicative mood are translated as in the paradigm in the Grammar. Care must be taken, however, to notice when the sense requires the simple, or emphatic, or progressive form.

72. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event extending to, or connected with the present, in itself or in its consequences, it is used definitely, and must be rendered by the auxiliaries, have, hast, has, or hath; as,
1. Regem *vidi* hodie, I have seen the king to day.

73. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event, without reference to the present, it is used indefinitely, (Gr. § 44, III.) and cannot be rendered by have, hast, has, or hath; as,
1. Regem *vidi* nuper, I saw the king lately.

Subjunctive Mood.

The subjunctive mood is used in two different ways, viz: subjunctively and potentially. (Gr. § 42, II. and §§ 139–141.)

Subjunctive used subjunctively.

74. This mood is used subjunctively, but for the most part translated as the indicative, when it expresses what is actual and certain though not directly asserted as such. This it does,

1st. When it is subjoined to some adverb, conjunction, or indefinite term in a dependent clause, for the purpose of stating the existence of a thing, (without directly asserting it,) as something supposed, taken for granted, or connected with the direct assertion, as a cause, condition, or modifying circumstance, (§ 140, Obs. 4,); as,

1. *Ea cum ita sint discèdam*, Since these things are so, I will depart.
2. *Si mædeat*, If it is wet.
3. *Quum Cæsar rediret*, When Cæsar returned—was returning.
4. *Ita perterritus est ut mori* - He was so frightened that he died.
5. *Gratulor tibi quod redieris*, I am glad that you have returned.
6. Si imperitavérint, If they have commanded.
7. Si reliquissem iniqui If I had left him, &c.
dicérent,
8. Quum Cæsar profectus When Cæsar had departed.

Obs. In the first of the above examples the direct assertion, is discédam, “I will depart.” The dependent clause, ea cum iüa sint, “since these things are so,” expresses the existence of certain things referred to without directly asserting it, but taking it for granted as a thing admitted or supposed, but still affecting in some way the event directly asserted. This holds good of all the other examples above.

* The dependent clause connected by ut, or ubi, “when;” dum, “whilst;” priusquam, “before;” postquam, “after;” and other conjunctions, (§ 140, Obs. 2 and 3,); and also by quum or cum, “when,” (Obs. 4,) sometimes take the indicative mood.

2d. The subjunctive mood is used subjunctively, as above, after an interrogative word used indefinitely, in a dependent clause, or in what is called the indirect question, i. e., an expression containing the substance of a question without the form. All interrogative words may be used in this way, (See § 140, 5,); thus,

9. Nescio quis sit—quid I know not who he is—what is doing.
10. Doce me ubi sint dìi, Tell me where the gods are.
11. Nescio uter scriberet, I know not which of the two wrote.
12. Nescio quid scriptum I know not what was written.

et set,
12. Scio cui, (a quo) scrip- I know to whom (by whom) it was tum esset, written.
13. An scis quis hoc fecérît? Do you know who has done this?
14. An scis a quo hoc fác- Do you know by whom this has tum füerit? been done?
15. Nemo scivat quis hæc fe- None knew who had done these cisset, things.

Note. The direct question requires the indicative; as, Quis fecit? “Who did it?” The indirect requires the subjunctive; as, Nescio quis fecérît, “I know not who did it.”

75. This mood is used subjunctively, and usually translated as the indicative in a relative clause, after an indefinite general expression, (§ 141, P. I.) a negation, or a ques-
tion implying a negation, and also after the relative in oblique narration, (§ 141, R. VI.); as,

1. *Est qui diciat*,  
2. *Nullus est qui neget*,  
3. *Quis est qui hoc faciat?*  
4. *Antonius inquit, artem esse*  
   *cærum rerum qua sciam*  
   *tur*,

   Those things which are known.

   The Subjunctive used Potentially.

76. The subjunctive mood is used potentially; 1st, in interrogative sentences; and 2d, to express a thing not as actual and certain, but contingent and hypothetical, (Gr. § 42, II. 2, and Obs. 3.) Thus used it is much less definite with respect to time, and is translated with some variety; as follows:

1. **Present,** by may, can, shall, will, could, would, should.
2. **Imperfect,** by might, could, would, or should.
3. **Perfect,** by may have, can have, must have, &c.
4. **Pluperfect,** by might have, could have, would have, should have, and denoting futurity, should.

The most usual renderings of each tense are the following:

77. **Present.** The present subjunctive used potentially expresses present liberty, power, will, or obligation, usually expressed by the English auxiliaries, may, can, shall, will, could, would, should. (§ 45, 1.)

1. *Licet eas*,  
2. *An sic intelligat?*  
3. *Men moveat cimex Panti-lius?*  
4. *Quis istos ferat?*  
5. *Si hic sis, alter sentias,*

   You may go.
   Can he so understand it?
   Shall (or should) the insect Pantilius discompose me?
   Who could bear those men?
   If you were here you would think otherwise.

   Imperatively.

6. *Sic eat,*  
7. *Edmus,*  
8. *Pugnetur, (Impersonally,)*  
9. *Difaciant,*  

   Thus let her (or him) go.
   Let us go.
   Let it be fought.
   May the gods grant.

78. **Imperfect.** The imperfect subjunctive used potentially, is preceded by a past tense, and expresses past liberty, power, will, or duty, but still in its use expresses time very indefinitely. It is usually rendered by the English
LATIN IDIOMS.

auxiliaries, might, could, would, should, sometimes had, would have, should have; as,

1. Legebat ut discēret, He read that he might learn.
2. Quid fācērem? What could I do?
3. Iret si jūbēres, He would go if you should order it.
4. Ĉur vēnīret, Why should he come.
5. Rogāvērunt ut vēnīret, They entreated that he would come.
6. Si quis dīcēret, nunquam, If any one had said it, I would not have thought it.

Note. After verbs denoting to hinder, forbid, and the like, quo minus with the subjunctive, may be rendered by from and the present participle, (§ 45, II. 3); thus,

7. Impedivit quo minus iret, He hindered him from going

Obs. An action or state which would, or would not exist, or have existed, in a case supposed, but the contrary of which is implied, is expressed in Latin by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, without an antecedent verb or conjunction, (§ 139, 2); as,

8. Scribērem, si nescēses. I would write, if it were necessary.
9. Scripsissetem, si nescēse I would have written, had it been necessary.

79. Perfect. The perfect subjunctive properly expresses what is supposed to be past, but of which there exists uncertainty. Thus used it is commonly rendered by the auxiliaries may have, can have, &c. It is also used sometimes in a present and sometimes in a future sense, with much variety of meaning, according to its connection, (§ 45, III.); as,

1. Fortasse errāvērim, Perhaps I may have erred.
2. Etsinon scripsērit, Though he cannot have written.
3. Uī sic dixērim, That I may so speak.
4. Citius credidērim, I would sooner believe.
5. Facie dixērim, I could easily tell.
6. Quasi affuērim, As if I had been present.

80. Pluperfect. The pluperfect (§ 45, IV.) is usually rendered by the auxiliaries, might have, could have, would have, should have, as in the paradigm of the verb. But when an action is related as having been future at a certain past time, it is expressed in Latin in the pluperfect subjunctive, and translated should; as,

1. Quodcumque jussisset me I said that I would do whatsoever factūrum dixi, he should order
2. Promisisti te scripturum, Si You promised that thou would write, if I should desire it.
3. Dum con val uisset, Until he should get well.

81. The pluperfect subjunctive active, with quum, in verbs not deponent, is used instead of a past participle active, (§ 49, 8,) and may be rendered by the compound perfect participle in English; as,
1. Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset Caesar having said these things; (literally, Cæsar, when he had said these things.)

82. When the subjunctive has a relative for its subject, and the relative and antecedent clause involve a comparison, they may be rendered as in No. 40, or the sense will be expressed if we render the relative by as, and the subjunctive by the infinitive; thus,
1. Quis tam esset amens qui sem per vivère t, Who would be so foolish as to live always,
2. Neque tu is es qui nescias, You are not such a one as not to know.

83. When the relative and subjunctive follow such adjectives as dignus, indignus, idoneus, (§ 141, Obs. 2.) and the like; or when they express the end or design of something expressed in the antecedent clause, their meaning will be expressed as in No. 40, or by the infinitive alone, or preceded by the phrase “in order to;” thus,
1. Dignum qui secundus ab Romulo numeretur, Worthy to be ranked next after Romulus.
2. Legátos miserunt qui eum a c us áre t, They sent legates to accuse (or, in order to accuse) him.
3. Virgas iis dedit quibus a g ére t, He gave them rods to drive, (in order to drive; or, so that with these they might drive.)

84. The subjunctive with, or without ut, after verbs signifying to bid, forbid, tell, allow, hinder, command, and the like, (§ 140, 1, 3d, and Obs. 5,) may be rendered by the English infinitive preceded by the subject of the verb in the objective case; as,
1. Precor venías, I pray that you may come; i. e., I pray you to come.
2. Die veni at, Tell her to come.
3. Sine eat, Permit him to go.
4. Non patíēris ut eant, You will not suffer them to go.
5. Non patíēris ut vescámur, You do not suffer us to eat.
85. When several verbs in the same mood and tense, have the same nominative, and are connected in the same construction, the auxiliary and "to," the sign of the infinitive, in the translation is used with the first only, and understood to the rest; as,

1. *Et vidisset et audivisset,* He might have both seen and heard.
2. *Et visus et auditus esset,* He might have been both seen and heard.
3. *Cupimus et videre et audire,* We wish both to see and hear.

**The Infinitive Mood.**

86. When the infinitive is without a subject, it is to be considered as a verbal noun, (§ 144,) and translated as in the paradigm of the verb; as,

1. *Volo scribere,* I wish to write.
2. *Dicetur didiciisse,* He is said to have learned
3. *Dicetur iturus esse,* He is said to be about to go.
4. *Dicetur iturus fuisse,* He is said to have been about to go.

87. When the verbs *possus, volo, nolo, malo,* in the indicative or subjunctive, are translated by the English auxiliaries, *can, will, will not, will rather,* and sometimes, in the past tense, by *could, would,* &c., the infinitive following is translated without *to* before it; as,

1. *Potest fieri,* It can be done.
2. *Volo ire,* I will go.
3. *Nolo facere,* I will not do it.
4. *Malo facere,* I will rather do it.
5. *Ut se volucrem facere vellet,* That he would make her a bird.
6. *Nihil jam defendi potuit,* Nothing could now be defended.
7. *Hoc facere non potuit,* He could not do this.
8. *Nolite timere,* Do not fear.

88. The present is generally translated as the perfect without "to," after the imperfect, perfect and pluperfect tenses of *possus, volo, nolo, malo,* when translated *could, would, would not, would rather,* and with "to" after the same tenses of *debo,* and *oportet,* translated *ought;* as,

1. *Melius fieri non potuit,* It could not have been done better.
2. *Volui dicere,* I would have said.
3. *Sumere arma noluit,* He would not have taken arms.
4. *Maluit augere,* He would rather have increased.
5. *Quam potuisset edere,* Than he could have caused.
6. *Debuisisti mihi ignoscere,* You ought to have pardoned me.
7. *Dividi oportuit,* It ought to have been divided.

4
Note. A strictly literal translation of most of the above sentences would not express the precise idea intended; thus, in the third sentence, “He would not have taken arms,” and “He was not willing to take arms,” manifestly do not mean the same thing.

89. After verbs denoting to see, hear, feel, and the like, the present infinitive is often translated by the English present participle; as,

1. **Audvi eum dicère**, I heard him saying.
2. **Surgere videt lunam**, He sees the moon rising.
3. **Terram tremère sensit**, He felt the earth trembling.

*Obs.* So also when the infinitive alone, or as part of a clause, is the subject of another verb; as,

4. **Morari periculōsum est**, Delaying is dangerous.
5. **Morari periculōsum (esse)** They think that delaying is dangerous.

The Infinitive with a subject.

90. The infinitive with its subject in the accusative, though but seldom, is sometimes translated in the same form in English; as,

1. **Cupio te venire**, I wish you to come.
2. **Quos discordare nōvē** Whom he had known to differ.
3. **Hoc optimum esse judicavit**, He decided this to be the best.
4. **Eum vocari jussit**, He ordered him to be called.

91. The infinitive with a subject, usually is, and always may be, translated by the English indicative or potential, according to the sense intended. When so rendered, its subject must always be translated in the nominative; and this, if not a relative, is usually preceded by the conjunction *that,* (§ 145); as,

1. **Cupio te venire**, I wish that you would come.
2. **Dicit me scribere**, He says that I write.
3. **Eos ivisse putasbat**, He thought that they had gone.
4. **Quem nunquam risisse ferunt**, Who they say never laughed.
5. **Rogavit quid faciendum (esse) putāret**, He asked what he thought ought to be done.

92. Both the Latin and the English infinitive, by their tenses, represent an act, &c., as present, past or future, *at the time of the governing verb.* Hence, when the one is translated by the other; that is, the Latin infinitive by the English infinitive, (Nos. 86 and 90,) any tense of the one
will be correctly translated by the same tense in the other, (except as in No. 83,) no matter what be the tense of the governing verb; as,

1. Pres. *Dicitur*,
2. Past, *Dixebatur,*
3. Fut. *Dicetur,*
1. Pres. He is said
2. Past, He was said
3. Fut. He will be said

\{ to have; to have had; to be about to have.

93. But when the Latin infinitive, with its subject, is translated by the English *indicative* or *potential*, the tense used in these moods, must be that which will correctly express the time of the act expressed by the Latin infinitive as estimated, not from the time of the governing verb, as in Latin, but as estimated from the present. That is, events present at the same time, or past at the same time, will be expressed in English by the same tense; an event represented in Latin as prior to the present time, (perfect infinitive after the present tense,) will be expressed by the English imperfect or perfect indefinite; and an event represented in Latin as prior to a past event, (perfect infinitive after a past tense,) will be expressed by the English pluperfect: thus:

1. Pres. *Dicunt eum venire,* They say that he *is coming,* or *comes.*
2. Past, *Dixerunt eum venire,* They said that he *came.*
3. Pres. *Dicunt eum venisse,* They say that he *came.*
4. Past, *Dixerunt eum venisse,* They said that he *had come.*
5. Past, *Caprerunt suspicariillam* They began to suspect that she *came.*

*Note.* The infinitive after the future does not follow this analogy, but is always translated in its own tense; as,

1. Pres. *Dicent cum venire,* They will say that he *comes,* *has come,* *will come.*

94. 1. Present, past, and future time, are variously expressed as follows:

1st. *Present time* is expressed by the *present tense,* and sometimes by the *perfect definite.*

2d. *Past time* is expressed by the *imperfect, perfect definite* and *pluperfect.*—by the *perfect participle,*—the *present infinitive after a past tense,*—the *present tense used to express a past event,* § 44, I, 3,—and by the pre-
sent participle, agreeing with the subject of the governing verb in any of these tenses, § 49, 5.

3d. Future time is expressed by the future, and future perfect.

2. The infinitive of deponent verbs, is translated in the same manner as the infinitive active in the following examples in Nos. 95 to 100.

3. After verbs denoting promise, request, advise, command, and the like, implying a reference to something future, the present infinitive, with its subject, is usually translated as the future, by should, or would, (See No. 100, 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9); as, Jussit, eos per castra duci, He ordered that they should be led through the camp.

4. The Latin words for “he said,” “saying,” or the like, introducing an oblique narration, are often omitted, and the infinitive takes the form of translation corresponding to the time expressed by the word to be supplied.

From these principles are deduced the following directions for translating the infinitive with a subject.

Present Infinitive after Present or Future time.

95. Direct. I. When the preceding verb is in the present, the perfect used definitely, or future tense, the present infinitive is translated as the present; as,

\[ \text{Active Voice.} \]
\[ 1. \ Dico \ eum \ laudare, \quad \text{I say that he praises.} \]
\[ 2. \ Dixi \ eum \ laudare, \quad \text{I have said that he praises.} \]
\[ 3. \ Dicam \ eum \ laudare, \quad \text{I will say that he praises.} \]

\[ \text{Passive Voice.} \]
\[ 4. \ Dico \ eum \ laudari, \quad \text{I say that he is praised.} \]
\[ 5. \ Dixi \ eum \ laudari, \quad \text{I have said that he is praised.} \]
\[ 6. \ Dicam \ eum \ laudari, \quad \text{I will say that he is praised.} \]

Present Infinitive after Past time.

96. Direct. II. When the preceding verb is in the imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect, or in the present infinitive after a past tense, the present infinitive is translated as the imperfect, or perfect indefinite; as,
**Present Infinitive Active.**

1. Dicēbam eum laudāre, I said that he praised.
2. Dixi eum laudāre, I said that he praised.
3. Dixēram eum laudāre, I had said that he praised.
4. Capī dicēre eum laudāre, I began to say that he praised.

**Present Infinitive Passive.**

5. Dicēbam eum laudāri, I said that he was praised.
6. Dixi eum laudāri, I said that he was praised.
7. Dixēram eum laudāri, I had said that he was praised.
8. Capī dicēre eum laudāri, I began to say that he was praised.

**Exc. I.** When the present infinitive expresses that which is always true, it must be translated in the present, after any tense, § 44, I. 1; as,

9. Doctus erat deum governum, He had been taught that God governed the world.

**Exc. II.** When the present infinitive expresses an act subsequent to the time of the governing verb, it is translated after any tense, by the potential with should; would; as,

10. Jubet The he orders
11. Jussit He ordered
12. Jessērat He had ordered

{\textit{te ire,}}

**Perfect Infinitive after Present or Future time.**

97. **Direct. III.** When the preceding verb is in the present, perfect definite, or future tense, the perfect infinitive is translated as the imperfect or perfect indefinite; as,

**Active Voice.**

1. Dico eum laudavisse, I say that he praised.
2. Dixi eum laudavisse, I have said that he praised.
3. Dicam eum laudavisse, I will say that he praised.

**Passive Voice.**

4. Dico eum laudātum esse, I say that he was praised.
5. Dixi eum laudātum esse, I have said that he was praised.
6. Dicam eum laudātum esse, I will say that he was praised.
7. Dico eum laudātum fu- I say that he has been praised. isse,
8. Dixi eum laudātum fu- I have said that he has been praised isse,
9. Dicam eum laudātum fu- I will say that he has been praised isse,
Perfect Infinitive after Past Tenses.

98. Direct. IV. When the preceding verb is in the imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect, or in the present infinitive after a past tense, the perfect infinitive is translated as the pluperfect; as,

**Active Voice**

1. *Dicēbam eum laudavisse*, I said that he had praised.
2. *Dies eum laudavisse*, I said that he had praised.
3. *Dixeram eum laudavisse*, I said that he had praised.
4. *Cępi dicēre eum lauda*—I began to say that he had praised.

**Passive Voice**

5. *Dicēbam eum laudātum* I said that he had been praised.
6. *Dies eum laudātum esse*, I said that he had been praised.
7. *Dixeram eum laudātum* I had said that he had been praised.
8. *Cępi dicēre eum laudātum* I began to say that he had been praised.

**Future Infinitive after the Present Tense.**

99. When the preceding verb is in the present, or perfect definite, or future tense, the future infinitive with esse, is translated as the future indicative; and with fuisse by would have, or should have, in the pluperfect potential in a future sense, and fore, for futurum esse, by will be.

**Active Voice.**

1. *Dico eum laudatūrum* I say that he will praise.
2. *Dies eum laudatūrum* I have said that he will praise.
3. *Dicam eum laudatūrum* I will say that he will praise.
4. *Dico eum laudatūrum fuisse*—I say that he would have praised.
5. *Dies eum laudatūrum fuisse* I have said that he would have praised.
6. *Dicam eum laudatūrum fuisse* I will say that he would have praised.
Passive Voice.

7. Dico eum laudatum iri, I say that he will be praised.
8. Dixi eum laudatum iri, I have said that he will be praised.
9. Dicam eum laudatum iri, I will say that he will be praised.

Future Infinitive after Past Tenses.

100. Direct. VI. When the preceding verb is of the imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect, the future of the infinitive with esse, is rendered by would or should; and with fuisse, by would have, and should have; and fore for futurum esse after any past tense, by would be; as,

Active Voice.

1. Dicebam eum laudatum I said that he would praise.
2. Dixi eum laudatum, &c. I said that he would praise.
3. Dixeram eum laudatum I had said that he would praise.
4. Dicebam eum laudatum I said that he would have praised.
5. Dixi eum laudatum, &c. I said that he would have praised.
6. Dixeram eum laudatum I had said that he would have praised.

Passive Voice.

7. Dicebam eum laudatum I said that he would be praised.
8. Dixi eum laudatum iri, I said that he would be praised.
9. Dixeram eum laudatum iri, I had said that he would be praised.
10. Dicebam (dixi) eum fore I said that he would be safe.

Usage of Fore.

Obs. Fore is used for futurum esse, and, with a subject after present tenses means "will be," after past tenses "would be." Both of them when followed by a subjunctive with ut (§ 145, Obs. 6,) after a present tense, may be translated by the future indicative of that verb; and after a past tense, by the imperfect potential; as,

11. Credo eum fore tutum, I believe that he will be safe.
12. Credebam, or credidi, (credi-) I believed, (had believe) that he dixeram) eum fore tutum, would be safe.
13. Credo for e (or futurum esse) I believe that you will learn.
14. Credebam or credidi (credi-) I believed, (had believed) that you ram) for e (or futurum esse) ut disceres,
Participles.

101. Participles are usually translated after their nouns, as in the paradigms of the verb; thus,

1. Present active, *Homo c a r e n s fraude,* A man wanting guile.
2. Future active, *Homo scripturus,* A man about to write.
3. Perfect passive, *Vita bene a c t a,* A life well spent.
4. *Cæsar c o a c t u s,* Caesar being (or having been) compiled.
5. (Deponent,) *Cæsar r e g r e s s u s,* Caesar having returned.
6. Future passive, *Mala v i t a n d a,* Evils to be avoided, i.e., which ought to be avoided.

Exc. But when a participle is used as an adjective, (§ 49, 3,) it is translated, like the adjective, before its substantive; as,

7. *Tigrin ostendit m a n s u e f a c t a m,* He exhibited a tamed tiger.
8. *In f e r v e n t i b u s a r e n i s* Standing on the burning sands.

**Future Participle Active.**

102. When the Future participle active is used to express a purpose, end, or design of another action, (§ 146, Obs. 3,) it is rendered by "to," or the phrase "in order to," instead of "about to;" as,

1. *Pergit c o n s u l t u r u s o r a,* He goes to consult (or, in order to consult) the oracle.

Obs. The present participle is also sometimes used in this sense; as,

2. *V e n e r u n t p o s t u l a n t e s c i,* They came to (or, in order to) ask food.

**Perfect Participle Passive.**

103. As the Latin verb has no perfect participle in the active sense, (except in deponent verbs,) its place is usually supplied by the perfect participle passive in the case absolute, (§ 146, Obs. 8;) thus, "Cæsar having consulted his friends," rendered into Latin, will be, *Cæsar a m i c i s c o n s u l t i s,* literally, "Cæsar, his friends being consulted.

Hence,

104. When the action expressed passively by the perfect participle in the case absolute, or agreeing with the object of a verb, is something done by the subject of the leading
verb in the sentence, the participle is rendered more in accordance with English idiom, by the compound perfect active participle in English, agreeing with the subject of the verb, and followed by its noun in the objective case, (§ 49, 8, and § 146, Obs. 8); thus,

1. *Caesar, his dictis, profectus est*, translated in the Latin idiom, Caesar, *these things being said*, departed. English idiom, Caesar, *having said these things*, departed.

2. *Opere peracto, ludēmus*, Latin idiom, *Our work being finished, we will play.* English idiom, *Having finished our work, we will play.*


105. The perfect participle of deponent verbs having an active signification, accords with the English idiom, and is best translated literally; as,

1. *Nactus naviculam*, Having found a boat.
2. *Cohortatus exercitum*, Having exhorted the army.

106. When the perfect participle of deponent or common verbs, expresses an act nearly or entirely contemporaneous with the leading verb, it may be translated by the English present participle in *ing*, (§ 48, 5, Note); as,

1. *Rex hoc facinus miratus* The king, admiring this act, dismissed the youth.
2. *Columba delapsa refert sagittam*, The dove falling brings back the arrow.

**The Future Participle Passive.**

107. After verbs signifying to give, to deliver, to agree or bargain for, to have, to receive, to undertake, and the like, the participle in *dus* generally denotes design or purpose, and is rendered simply as in the paradigm, or with the phrase "in order to," prefixed, (§ 146, Obs. 4); as,

1. *Testamentum tibi tradit e* - He delivers his will to you to (or *gendum*, in order to) be read.
2. *Atribuit nostum iucidandos* He has given us over to Cethegus Cethigos, (in order) to be slain.

108. The participle in *dus*, especially when agreeing with the subject of a sentence or clause, generally denotes *propriety, necessity, or obligation*, and is rendered variously, as
the tense of the accompanying verb and the connection require, (§ 146, Obs. 5,); the following are examples:

1. *Legátus mittendus est,* An ambassador must (or should) be sent.

2. *Legátus mittendus erat or* An ambassador had to be sent.

3. *Legátus mittendus erit,* An ambassador will have to be sent.

4. *Legátum mittendum esse,* That an ambassador should be sent.

5. *mittendum futurum* ought to (or should) have been sent.

6. *Dissimulanda loquitur,* He speaks things that ought to be concealed.

7. *Dissimulanda loquebd-* He spake things which ought to have been concealed.

8. *Quae dissimulanda erunt,* Which will have to be concealed.

9. *Dic, quid statuendum* Say, what is to be (or must be) thought.

**Ablative Absolute.**

109. When a participle stands with a substantive in the ablative absolute, R. L.X., the substantive is translated without a sign, No. 9, and after it the participle, as in the paradigm of the verb; as,


2. *Hac oratione habitâ,* This oration being delivered.

3. *Cæsâre venturo,* Cæsar (being) about to come.

4. *Preceptis tradendis,* Rules being to be delivered.

5. *Bello orto,* War having arisen.

*Note.* The future participles, Ex. 3, 4, are seldom used in the case absolute.

110. When two nouns,—a pronoun and a noun,—a noun or a pronoun and an adjective, are used in the ablative without a participle, (§ 146, Obs. 10,) they are translated in the nominative without a sign, and the English participle "being," inserted between them; as,

1. *Adolescentulo duce,* A young man being leader.

2. *Mario consüle,* Marius being consul.

3. *Me suasöre,* I being the adviser.

4. *Annibäli vivo,* Hannibal being alive.

5. *Se invito,* He being unwilling.

**Gerunds and Gerundives.**

111. The gerund, being a verbal noun, is translated in
the same manner as other nouns of the same case, and at the same time may govern the case of its own verb, § 147; as,

1. N. Petendum pacem, Seeking peace.
2. G. Petendi pacem, Of seeking peace.
3. D. Utendo libris, To (or for) using books.
5. Abl. Parendo magistratui, By obeying the magistrate.

112. Of verbs that govern the accusative, instead of the gerund in the oblique cases, the Latins commonly used the participle in duus, in the sense of the gerund, and agreeing with its object in gender, number and case; the case being governed by the same word that would have governed the gerund. When thus used it is called a gerundive. (§ 147; R. LXII.)

Gerunds.  Gerundives.
1. Ars librum legendi, The art of reading a book. 5. Ars libri legendi,
2. Utile vulnera curando, Useful for healing wounds. 6. Utile vulneribus curandis,
3. Ad litteras scribendum, For writing a letter. 7. Ad litteras scribendas,
4. De captivis commutando, Respecting exchanging captives. 8. De captivis commutando,

113. When the gerund is the subject of the verb est, and governs the dative, it implies necessity, and is variously translated into the English idiom, as the tense of the verb requires, (§ 147,); as,

Latin Idiom.  English Idiom.
1. Legendum est mihi, I must read; I ought to read; Reading is to me; i. e., I should read.
2. Legendum erat (fuit) mihi, I had to read; I ought to have read; Reading was to me;
3. Legendum fuisset mihi, I had been obliged to read. Reading had been to me;
4. Legendum erit mihi, I will have to read; It will be necessary for me to read. Reading will be to me;
5. Dicit legendum esse mihi, He says that I must read— He says that reading is to me; ought to read—should read.
6. Dicit legendum fuisse mihi, He says that I had to read— He says that reading was to me; ought to—or should—have read.

Obs. The dative is frequently omitted, and generally when it denotes persons or things, in a general or indefinite
sense. In such cases, homini, hominibus, nobis, or the like, must be supplied; as,
7. Vivendum est recte (scil. homini- Living honestly, is viz. to men; hominibus, i.e., men ought to live honestly.
8. Dicit vivendum esse recte, (scil. He says that living honestly is, homini,) viz. to a man; i.e. a man ought to live honestly.

Supines.

114. The Supines are rendered without variation, as in the paradigm, and under the rules, (§ 148); as,
1. Abit de a m b u l a t u m, He has gone to walk.
2. Facile d i c t u, Easy to tell, or to be told.

Passive Voice.

115. The passive voice, in the indicative mood, is translated as in the paradigms. The subjunctive mood is subject to all the variety of construction and translation used in the active voice, Nos. 74–84, acting on the verb to be, which as an auxiliary with the perfect participle, makes up the passive form of the verb in English.

In the compound tenses, (§ 53, 3,) when two or more verbs in a sentence are in the same tense, and have the same nominative, or are in the same construction, the verb sum is commonly expressed with the last and understood to the rest, as in the following Ex. 1. But when the nominative is changed, the verb “to be” should be repeated as in Ex. 2.
1. Nisus a Minoe victus et occisus Nisus was conquered and killed est, by Minos.
2. Tres naves captae, decem demersae, duo millia hostium Three ships were taken, ten sunk; captae, tredecim millia occisa two thousand of the enemy were sunt. taken, thirteen thousand killed.

Passive Voice in a Middle Sense.

116. The Latin passive voice is often used to represent its subject, not as acted upon by another, but as acting on itself, or for itself, or intransitively, by its own impulse; and so corresponds in sense to the middle voice in Greek. Thus used, it is best translated by the active voice followed by the reflexive pronoun as an object, or by an intransitive
verb expressing the idea intended, (§ 41, Obs. 3.) The following are examples.

1. *Paludibus a b d i t i s u n t,* They concealed themselves in the marshes.
2. *Cum omnes in omni genere s c- lërum v o l u t e n t u r,* Since all give themselves up to every kind of wickedness.
3. *F e r t u r in hostes,* Rushes against the enemy.
4. *V o l u t ä i s p e r a p o m a,* Rolling themselves over the apples.
5. *C i n g i t u r a r m i s,* Girds himself with his armor.
6. *S t e r n u n t u r t ü m ü l o,* Throw themselves on the grave.
7. *G a l l u s v i c t u s o cc u l t ä t u r,* The cock, when conquered, hides himself.

117. The verb *sum* governing the genitive by R. XII., § 108, may generally be translated by the phrase "belongs to," "is the part," "is the property," &c. See explanation under Rule; as,

1. *E s t r e g i s,* It belongs to the king.
2. *P e c u s e s t M e l i b ä i,* The flock belongs to Melibœus.
3. *P r u d e n t i a e s t s e n e c t ä t i s,* Prudence is the characteristic of old age.

118. The verb *sum,* (also *desum,* in the third person, governing the dative by § 112, Rule II., may generally be translated by the corresponding tenses of the verb "to have," with the Latin dative for its subject, and the Latin subject for its object; as,

**Latin Idiom.** | **English Idiom.**
---|---
1. *L i b e r e s t m i h i,* A book is to me, I have a book.
2. *L i b e r e r a t m i h i,* A book was to me, I had a book.
3. *L i b e r f u i t m i h i,* A book was (or has been) to me, I had, or have had a book.
4. *L i b e r f u é r a t m i h i,* A book had been to me, I had had a book.
5. *L i b e r e r í t m i h i,* A book will be to me, I will have a book.
6. *L i b e r s u n t m i h i,* Books are to me, I have books.
7. *E s t m i h i,* It is to me, I have it.
8. *L i b e r d e e s t m i h i,* A book is not to me, I have not a book.

119. When a compound verb, rendered by the simple verb and a preposition, is followed by two cases, the simple verb with the immediate object (always in the accusative,) is usually translated first, and then the preposition with the remote object.

1. *F l u m e n c o p i a s t r a n s d u x i t,* He led his forces across the river.
2. *C i r c u m d ä r e m a n i a o p-* To build walls around the city
3. *C a p u i d e j é c i t s a x o,* He threw the head down from the rock.
INTRODUCTION.

120. An adverb, adverbiale phrase, or clause expressing some circumstance in translating, may often be arranged in different situations in a sentence, due regard being paid to the sense and harmony of the whole; thus, Magna debēmus suscipère dum vires suppētunt, may be arranged variously for translating, as follows:

1. Debēmus suscipère magna, dum vires suppētunt; or,
2. Dum vires suppētunt, debēmus suscipère magna; or,
3. Debēmus, dum vires suppētunt, suscipère magna.

121. The negative conjunction ne, is variously rendered lest, lest that, that—not, not; and after verbs signifying to fear, forbid, and the like, it is translated that, while ut in the same situation, means that not.

1. Ne quis eat, Lest (or that not) any one may go.
2. Orat n e se perdat, She entreats that he would not destroy her.
3. Egi n e interessem, I managed that I should not be present.
4. Dum n e veniat, Provided he do not come.
5. Respondit n e cogitātā quidem latent. He replied that not even the thoughts are concealed.
6. Vereor n e cadās, I am afraid that you may fall.
7. Timui ut veniret, I feared that he would not come.

Note 1. But when the fear expressed, refers to such things as we wish, ne means that—not; as, Paves n e ducas illam, You are afraid that you do not get her to wife.

Ne, after a command implying a negative, or prohibition, is often omitted; as, cave titūbes, take care that you do not stumble.

Note 2. Ne quidem, (always separate,) is an emphatic negative, and has the emphatic word between; as, ne hoc quidem, not even this; ne tum quidem, not even then.

122. When a verb is translated into English by the aid of an auxiliary, an adverb, or clause modifying it, will often have to be placed between the auxiliary and the verb, (Eng. Gr. § 74,); as,

1. Dixit ne o b h o c a li o s con- He said that we should not on this account despise others.

123. Some prepositions are variously translated according to the meaning of the words, or the case with which they are connected; thus,
1. In followed by an accusative, means to, into, towards, for, against. &c., (§ 136, R. L.)
2. In, followed by the ablative, means in, upon, among, in the case of, (§ 136, R. L.)
3. Inter, referring to two, means between; to more than two, among.
4. Sub means under, at the foot of, close up to.
5. Præ means before, in comparison of;—sometimes, more than.

124. When the following conjunctions, adjectives, and adverbial particles, are placed, one before each of two successive words or clauses, the first is commonly translated differently from the second, and usually in the following manner, (§149, Obs. 5.)

1. Et ---- et, Both ---- and.
2. Que ---- que, Both ---- and.
3. Aut. vel, } aut, vel, } Either ---- or.
   sive, } sive, }
4. Nec ---- nec, Neither ---- nor.
5. Neque ---- neque,}
6. Sive, seu ---- sive, seu,)
7. Tum ---- tum.
8. Cim or quum ---- tum,
9. Jam ---- jam, }
10. Nunc ---- nunc, }
11. Simul ---- simul,
12. Modo, alias ---- modo, alias,

Corresponding Conjunctive Terms.

13. Ne ---- an, Whether ---- or.
14. Utrum ---- an, Whether ---- or.
15. Ita, sic, tam, adeo ---- ut, So ---- that; so ---- as.
16. Talis, tantus ---- ut, Such, so great ---- that.
17. Is, ejusmodi ---- ut, Such, of such a kind ---- that.
18. Simul ---- ac, or atque, As soon ---- as.
19. Tamdiu ---- quamdiu, As long ---- as.
20. Ut ---- sic, As ---- so.

Ne is frequently omitted with the first word or clause, and must be supplied when an stands with the second; as,

21. Recte an perpérum, (Whether) right or wrong.
ACCENTUATION, QUANTITY, ETC.

General Rules for Accentuation.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first or penult; as, pā-ter, mü'-sa, au'-rum.

2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; when the penult is short, they have the accent on the antepenult; as, a-mi'-cus, dom'-i-nus.

3. When the enclitics, que, ve, ne, are added to a word the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, pā'-ter, pā-ter'-que; dom'-i-nus, dom-i-nus'.ve.

General Rules for the Quantity of Syllables.

1. A vowel before another vowel, is short; as, vīa, Dēus.

2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is long by position; as, arma, fallo, axis.

3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, (l, r,) is common, i.e. either long or short; as, volūcris, or volūcris.

4. A diphthong is always long; as, aurum, Cēsar.

Note. In this work when the quantity of the penult, in words of more than two syllables, is determined by any of these rules, it is not marked, otherwise it is marked.

Explanation of References.

The references at the foot of each page, to which a section mark (§) is prefixed, are to the sections and their subdivisions in the Grammar, and are intended chiefly to explain the construction.

In those references which have no section mark prefixed, the first number directs to the same number in the preceding Introduction, and the second, to the example under that number. Thus for example, in p. 53, § 38, 8; the number 38 refers to Introduction 38, (p. 22,) which shows how the relative in the beginning of a sentence is to be translated; and the number 8 refers to example 8, A quo consilio, &c., showing that the relative quā is here to be translated "this," and Quā de causā, "for this cause." These references are intended to explain particular phrases and idioms, and to give an example of the mode of translating them.

The references made by figures are to the notes on the text, commencing p. 207, where it will be observed that all the notes belonging to a page are contained in one paragraph, at the beginning of which is the number of the page to which the notes refer.

N. B. In the text the reference letter stands after, and the reference figure stands before the word or words to which they respectively belong.
C. JULII CÆSARIS COMMENTARII
DE BELLO GALLICO.

BOOK I.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. General description of Gaul—Chap. 1. II. The war with the Helvetii—Chap. 2-29. III. War with Ariovistus—Chap. 30-54.

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, 1 quarum a unam incólunt Belgæ, aliam Aquităni, tertiam, 2 qui ipsórum lingüā Cēltæ, b nostrā Galli, b appellantur. Hic omnes lingüā,c 3 institūtis, c legibus 4 inter se d dīfferunt. 5 Gallos ab Aquitănibus Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrōna et Sequāna divīdit. Horum a omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propter quod a 6 cultu atque humanitate Provinciae longissīmē absunt, 7 minimēque ad eos mercatörēs sāpe cōmmeant, atque ea, quae ad efferēnandōs e anēmos pertinēnt, important; proxiμique sunt Germānīs, f qui trans Rhenum incólunt, quibuscum continentēr bellum gerunt: quā s de causā Helvetii quoque reliquis Gallos virtūte e præcēdunt, quōd serē quotidiānīs prēelīs h cum Germānīs contendunt, cūm aut suis i finibus 8 eos prohibent, aut 9 ipsi in 10 eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. 11 Eōrum una pars, quam Gallos k obtinēre dictum est, iniμium capit a flumīne Rhodāno; continētur Garumnā flumīne, h Oceāno, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sequānis et Helvetii flumen Rhenum; 12 vergit ad septentriones.

---

a § 107, R. X.  c § 147, R. LXII, &  b § 129, R.

b § 103, R. V.  112, 3.  i 31, 3.

c § 128, R.  f § 111, R.  k § 145, R. LVIII.

d § 28, Obs. 5.  e 38, 8.
Belgae 1 ab extremis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; 2 spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnâ flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceâni, quæ est 3 ad Hispanicam, pertinent; spectat inter occâsum solis et septentriones.

2. Apud Helvetios longè nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, Marco Messâla et Marco Pisone 4 Consulibus, 5 regni cupiditatem 6 inducctus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et 5 civitati 6 persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent; 4 perfacile esse cum virtute omnibus præs tarent, 7 totius Galliæ imperio 6 potiri. Id hoc faciliùs eis 7 persuasit, quod undique loci 8 naturâ 9 Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, 9 latissimo 9 atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germânis dividit: altera ex parte, monte 9 Jurâ altissimo, 9 qui est inter Sequânos et Helvetios; tertia, lacu Lemanno, 9 et flumine 9 Rhodâno, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus foebat, 9 ut et minùs latè vagarentur, 9 et minùs faciliù finitimis 9 bellum infere possent: 9 qua de causâ homînes bellandi 9 cupìdi magno dolore 9 afficiebantur. 9 Pro multitùde autem hominum, et pro gloriâ 10 belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habère 9 arbitrabantur, 9 qui in longitudinèm millia 9 passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinèm centum et octoginta patèbant.

3. 12 His rebus 9 adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorixis permoti, constituërunt 9 ea, quæ ad 13 profisciscendum 9 pertinere; comparare; 1 jumentorum et 14 carrorum quâm maximum 9 numerum coëmère; 16 sementes quâm maximas 9 facère, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppetèret; 17 cum proxim.
mis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res con-
fiendas\(^a\) biennium sibi satis esse\(^b\) duxérunt;\(^1\) in ter-
tium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res con-
fiendas\(^c\) Orgetörix deligitur. Is sibi\(^c\) legationem ad civ-
itātes suscépit. In eo itinere persuādet Castico,\(^d\) Catamant-
talēdis filio,\(^e\) Sequāno, cujus pater regnum in Sequānis multos annos\(^f\) obtinuērat, et a senātu Populi Romāni amīcus\(^g\) appellātus erat, ut regnum in civitāte suā\(^2\) occupāret,\(^h\) quod pater antè habuērat; itemque Dumnorīgī\(^d\) Æduo, fratri\(^e\) Di-
vītāci, qui eo tempōre\(^1\) principātum in civitāte obtinēbat,\(^k\) ac maxīmē plebi\(^1\) acceptus erat, ut idem\(^m\) conarētur\(^h\) pers-
suādet, eique\(^c\) filiam suam in matrimonium dat.\(^4\) Persa-
cile\(^a\) factu\(^o\) esse,\(^b\) illis\(^d\) probat, conāta\(^m\) pericēre, propterea quōd ipse suā civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: non esse
dubium, quin\(^p\) totius Galliāe plurīmum Helvetii posseō:
se\(^d\) suis copiis\(^7\) suūque exercītū illis\(^c\) regna conciliāturum,
confirmat. Hac oratione adducti,\(^6\) inter se fidem et jus-
jurandum dant, et, regno occupāto, per tres potentissīmos ac
firmissīmos\(^7\) popūlos totius Galliāe\(^e\) sese\(^q\) potiū posse\(^8\)
spe-rant.

4.\(^9\) Ea res ut est Helvetiis\(^1\) per\(^10\) indicium enunciāta,
morībus\(^r\) suis Orgetōrigem ex\(^11\) vincūlis causam dicēre coē-
gērunt:\(^12\) damnātum pōenam\(^u\) sequi oportēbat, ut igni cre-
māre tur.\(^*\) Die\(^i\) constitūtā causā dictiōnis, Orgetōrix ad
judicium omnem suam\(^13\) familiam,\(^14\) ad homīnum\(^w\) millia
decem, undīqua coēgit et omnes clientes, obæratosque suos,
quorum magnum numērum habēbat, eōdem condūxit: per
eos, ne causam dicēret,\(^x\) se eripuit. Cūm civītās, ob eam

\(^a\) 112, 7.
\(^b\) 94, 3.
\(^c\) § 123, R.
\(^d\) 63.
\(^e\) § 97, R.
\(^f\) § 131, R. XLI.
\(^g\) § 103, R. V.
\(^h\) § 140, 1, 3d.
\(^i\) § 131, R. XL.
\(^k\) § 44, II. 2.
\(^l\) § 111, R.
\(^m\) 19, 4.
\(^n\) § 98, Obs. 6.
\(^o\) 114, 2.
\(^p\) § 140, 3.
\(^q\) § 145, R. LVIII.
\(^r\) § 129, R.
\(^s\) § 121, R. XXVI.
\(^t\) § 126, R. III
\(^u\) § 113, Exc. III.
\(^v\) § 140, 1. 4th.
\(^w\) § 24, 5.
\(^x\) § 140, 1, 2d.
rem incitāta, armis jus suum exsèqui conarētur, a multitudinemque hominum ex agris1 magistrātus cogērent, a Orgetōrix mortuus est: neque-abelst suspicio, ut c Helvetii arbitrantur, 2quin b ipse sibi d mortem conscivērit.

5. Post ejus mortem nihil minus Helvetii id, quod constituērant, facère conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. e Ubi jam se f ad eam rem paratos g esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numōro 3 ad duodēcin, vicīs ad quadringentos, reliqua privāta ædificia incendent; frumentum omne, prāter quod h secum portatūri erant, combūrunt; ut, domum i reditōnīs spe k sublātā, paratiōres ad omnia pericūla subeunda l essent: m 4 trium mensium molīta 5 cibaria sibi d quemque domo l efferre jubent. Persuādent Raurāci, d et Tulingis, et Latobrīgis, finītimis, uti, eōdem 6 usi consilio, n oppidis suis vicisque existus, o unā cum iis profisciscantur: e 7 Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noīcum transiōṅque oppugnarant, receptos o ad se, socios p sibi d adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnīno itinēra duo, quibus itinerīibus q domo exire possent: i unum r per Sequānos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodānum, 8 vix quā singūli s carri ducerentur; i mens autem altissīmus impendēbat, ut facilè perpauci prohibēre possent: u altērum per 9 Provinciām nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius 10 propertea quōd Helvetiōrum inter fines, et Allobrōgum, qui nuper pacāti erant, Rhodānus fluit, isque nonnullis locis 11 vado transitūr. f Extrēmum oppidum Allobrōgum est, proximumque Helvetiōrum finibus, w Genève. Ex eo oppido pons ad
Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogium sese vel persuasuros, a (quod nondum 1 bono animo b in Populum Romænum vide-
rentur,7 existimabant; vel vi coacturos, a ut per suos fines
eos ire paterentur. d Omnibus rebus ad prosectionem com-
paratis, e 2 diem dicunt, quâ die f ad ripam Rhodâni omnes
convenient: g is dies erat 3 ante diem quintum Kalendas
Aprilis, 4 Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus. h)

7. Cæsari1 cum id nuntiatum esset, k eos per Provinciam
nostram iter facère conâri, matûrat 5 ab urbe proficisci, et, quâm maxîmis1 potest itineribus, in 6 Galliam ulteriorem
contendit, et ad Genëvam pervênit: 7 Provinciæ m toti quàm
maximum 1 militum numérum impérât (erat omnîno in Gal-
liâ ulteriore legio una); pontem, qui erat 8 ad Genëvam,
jubet rescindi. a Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii 9 certiöres
facti sunt, legâtos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos cîtâtis, c
Cæsari, quod memoria tenebat, Lucium Cassium Consulem
occissum, exercitumque ejus ab Helve-
tiiis pulsâm, et 12 sub jugum missum, 13 concedendum a non
putâbat: neque homînes inimico animô, b datâ facultate per
Provinciam itinéris faciundi, v temperatûros ab injuriâ et
maleficio existimât. Tamen, ut spatium intercedère pos-
set, d dum militûs, quo imperavérat, convenièrent, legâtis
respondit, "diem se ad deliberandum sumtûrum; si quid
vellent, x 14 ante diem Idus Aprilis reverterentur." y

a 100, 1. 1 § 126, R. III. r 51, 5. b § 106, R. VII. k 51, 2. 1 94, 4. c § 141, Obs. 7. 1 § 134, Obs. 6, 3d. t § 140, 1, 3d. d § 140, 1, 2d. m § 123, R. & 5, 1. u 113, Obs. & 8. e 104, 1. n 90, 4. v 112, 1. f § 131, R. XL. o § 107, R. X. Exp. w § 141, Obs. 8. s § 141, R. II. p § 102, R. I. x § 140, 2. h 110, 2. q § 112, R. II. y 78, 3.
8. Interea eâ legiône, quam secum habëbat, militibusque, qui ex Provinciâ convenërant, a lacu Lemanno, 1 qui in flumen Rhodânum influit, 2 ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanôrum ab Helvetiis dividit, 3 millia a passuum decem novem murum, in altitudinem pedum b sedëciû, fossamque perdûcit. Eo opère perfecto,c præsidia disposit, 4 castella commûnit, quo faciliûs, si d se invîto transire conarentur, d prohibère possit.ë Ubi ea dies, quam constituërat cum legâtis, venit, et legati ad eum revertérunt, 6 negat, se f more g et exemplo h Popûli Români posse iter ulli h per Provinciam dare; et, si vim i facère conentur, d prohibitûrum k ostendit. Helvetii, ea spe l dejecti, 7 navibus 8 junctis ratibusque 9 compluribus factis, alii vadis 8 Rhodâni, 8 quà miníma altitudô flûminis erat, nonnunquam inter diui, sæpiûs noctu, si 9 per-rumpère possent, d conâti, opûris munitione e et militûm con-cursu m et telis repulsi, hoc conâtu n destîterunt.

9. Relinquebâtur una per Sequânos via, quà, 5 Sequânis o invitis, propter angûstias ire non potèrant. His h cûm suâ p sponte persuadère non possent,q legâtos ad Dumnorìgem Æduuum mittunt, ut eo 10 deprecatôre o a Sequânis impetrârent. r Dumnorìx 11 gratiâ s et largitioœ apud. Sequânos plurînum potèrat, et Helvetiis 8 erat amîcus, quûd ex eà civi-tate Orgetorigis filiam, 12 in matrimonium duxerât; et, cu-piditâte s regni adductus, 13 novis rebus t studêbat, et quàm plurímas u civitûtes suo sibi r benefício habëre obstrictas vo-lèbat. Itâque rem suscipit, et a Sequânis impetrât, ut per fines suos ire Helvetios patiantur; obsidesque uti inter sese

---

* a § 131, R. XLII.&
* b § 106, R. VI.
* c § 104, 1, & 109.
* d § 140, 2.
* e § 140, 1.
* f § 145, R. LVIII.
* g § 129, R.
* h § 123, R.
* i § 15, 12.
* k § 47, Note 1. and
* l § 136, R. LI.
* m § 149, R.
* n § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)
* o 110, 5.
* p 30, 2.
* q § 140, Obs. 4.
* r § 140, 1, 3d.
* s § 111, R.
* t § 112, R. V.
* u § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.
* v § 126, R. III.
dent, perfecit: 1 Sequāni, 2 ne itinēre Helvetios prohibeant; 3 Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuriā transeant.

10. 3 Cæsāri renunciātur 6 Helvetiis 4 esse in anīmo, per agrum Sequanōrum et Ėduorum iter in Santōnum fines facēre, qui non longē a Tolosatium finibus absunt, qua civi- tās est in Provincia. Id si fīcerit, 4 iūnēbat magno cum Provinciā periculō futūrum, 6 ut homīnes bellicosos, Popūli Romāni inimīcos, 7 lociș 8 patentibus maxīmēque frumentarīis finitīmos habēret. 9 Ob eas causas ei munitiōni, 1 quam fecērat, Titum Lābiēnum legātum præfēcit: ipse in Italian magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiōnes conscribīt, et tres, quāe circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernis edū- cit; et, quāe proxīmum iter in ulterīōrem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes, et Graioclēi, et Caturīges, locī superiōribus occupā- tīs, 9 itinēre 1 exercītum prohibēre consentiōtur. Complurībus his præliis pulsīs, 9 ab Ocēlo, 6 quod est citeriōris Provinciāe extrēmum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulteriōris Provinciāe die septīmō m pervēnit; inde in Allobroģum fines: ab Allobro- gībus in Segusīanos exercītum ducit. Hi sunt extra Provin- ciam trans Rhodānum primī.

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias transduxērant, et in Ėduorum fines pervenērant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ėdui, cūm, se 9 suāque 9 ab iis defendēre non possent, 4 legātos ad Cāsārem mittunt 7rogātum 9 auxiliō: "ita se 9 omni tempōre 9 de Popūlo Ro- māno merītōs esse, ut pāne in conspectu exercītūs nostri agri vastāri, libēri eōrum in servitūtem abduī, oppīda ex-

---

1 2
2 2d.
3 51, 2.
4 112, R. II.
5 140, 2.
6 47, Note 1.
7 97, R.
8 111, R.
9 100, Obs. 14.
10 123, R.
11 104, 2.
12 136, Obs. 5, (in.)
13 131, R. XL.
14 19, (popūli.)
15 31.
16 19, (negotia.)
17 4, 4.
DE BELLO GALlico.

pugnāri non debuērunt." a Eōdem tempōre Ēdui Ambarri, 1 necessariī b et consanguinei Ēduōrum, Cæsārem certōrem faciunt, sese, c depopulātis agris, d non facīle ab oppīdis vim hostium prohibēre: ītem Allobrōgēs, qui trans Rhōdānum vicos possessionesque habēbant, fugā se ad Cæsārem recipiunt, et demonstrant, 2 sibī e prāter agri solum nihil e esse reliqui. f Quibus g rebus h adductus Cæsār, non expectandum c sibī i statuit, dum, omnībus fortūnis d sociōrum con-
sumtis, in Spretōsos Helvetii pervenīrent.

12. 3 Flumen k est Arar, quod per fines Ēduōrum et Se-
quanōrum in Rhōdānum influit, 4 incredibili lenitāte, b ita ut ocūlis, h in utram partem fluat, l judicāri non possit. a 6 Id Helvetii ratībus h ac lintrībus h junctis transībant. Ubi per explorātōres Cæsar certīō m factus est, tres jam copiārum partes n Helvetios c id flumen n transduxisse, o quartam verò partem c citra flumen Arārim reliquam m esse; 7 de tertiā vi-
giliā cum legionībus tribus e castrīs profectus, ad eam par-
tem pervēnit, quae nondum flumen p transiērat. Eos 8 im-
peditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eōrum partem
concīdit: reliqui fugae u sese mandārunt atque 9 in proximas
sylvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabātur Tigrūinus: k nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic
pagus unus, cūm domo v exisset, s patrum nostrōrum memoriā, t Lucium Cassium Consūlem interfecērat, et ejus exercītum
sub jugum mīsērat. Ita, sive u casu, h sive consilio Deōrum
immortalium, qua e pars civitātis Helvetiae insignem calamiti-
tātem Popūlo q Romāno intulērat, ea 10 princeps w pænas
persolvit. Quā g in re Cæsār non solum publicas, sed etiam

a § 140, 1, 1st.  b § 97, R.  c § 145, R. LVIII.  d § 109, 2.  e § 112, R. II.  f § 106, R. VI.  g 38.  h § 129, R.  i § 147, & 113.  k § 103, R. V.  l § 103, Obs. 2.  m § 119, 1.  n 98, 2.  o § 136, R. LII.  p § 136, R. LII.  q § 123, R.  r § 130, 4.  s § 140, Obs. 4.  t § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)  u 124, 6.  v 43, & 37, 2d. 4.  w§ 98, Obs. 10.
privātas injurias ultus est, quōd ejus socēri Lucii Pisōnis a
avum, Lucium Pisōnem legātum, a Tigurīni eōdem prēlīo, b
quo b Cassium, i interfecērant.

13. Hoc prēlīo facto, reliquas copias Helvetiōrum ut con-
sēquī possēt, c pontem in Arāre faciendum d curat atque ita
exercitum transducit. Helvetii, repente ejus adventu e
commōti, cum id, quod ipsi diēbus f viginti aegerrimē con-
fecērant, b legātos ad eum mittunt: cujus i legatiōnis Divīcō
princeps fuit, qui bello b Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum fuērat.
Is iāta cum Cāsāre agit: "Si pacem Popūlus Rōmānus cum
Helvetiōs facēret, k in eam partem itūros l atque ibi futūros
Helvetiōs, m ubi eos Cāsār constituiisset g atque esse n volu-
isset: g sin bello e persēqui perseverāret, k reminiscērēt o
et vētēris incommōdi p Popūli Romāni et pristīnae virtūtis p
Helvetiōrum. Quōd improviso unum pagum adortus esset, g
cūm ii, qui flumen transissent, g suis i auxilium ferre non
possērunt, h ne ob eam rem aut sua magno opēre virtūtī q trī-
buēret o aut r ipsos despicēret: se m ita a patrībus majoribus-
quēque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte, e quām dolo s aut insidiis,
niterentur. i Quare ne committēret, o ut is locus, ubi consi-
tissent, g ex calamitāte Popūli Romāni et internecióne exer-
cītūs nomen capēret, l aut r memoriam prodēret."

14. h His Cāsar ita respondit: "Eo sibi r minus m dubita-
tiōnis v dari, quōd eas res, quas legāti Helvetiō commemo-
rāssent, g memoriā tenēret: w atque eo x graviūs ferre, quo x
minus merīto e Popūli Romāni accidissent; 10 quī y si alicujus

a § 97, R. 1 38. r § 149, R.
b § 136, Obs. b, (in.) k § 140, 2. s § 120, Obs. 1.
c § 140, 1, 2d. l § 47, 4, Note 1. t § 140, 1, 3d.
d 108, 4. ≈ § 145, R. LVIII. u § 126, R. III. e 90. v § 106, R. VIII.
f § 131, R. XLI. o § 140, 3d, & Obs. 5. w § 140, 6.
g § 141, Obs. 8. p § 108, R. XIV, & 7, 1. x 22, 4, or 44, 7.
h § 140, Obs. 4. q § 123, R. & 19. y 39.
injuriâe sibi a conscius fuisset, b 1 non fuisset c difficile d cavère, 2 sed eo deceptum, e quod neque commissum a se intelligēret, f quare timēret; f neque sine causâ 3 timendum 5 putaret. 4 Quod si vetēris contumeliae 6 oblivisci vellet; 5 num 1 etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo k invito iter per Provinciam per vim tentassent, f quod Æduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobroges vexassent, f memoriam deponēre posse? Quod suā victoriā tam insolentēe gloriarentur, f quodque tam diu se impunēe tulisse injurias admirarentur, f eōdem 6 pertinēre: c consuēsse enim Deos 1 immortāles, quo graviūs homīnes ex commutatione rerum dolecant, a quos pro scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, n his 7 secundiores interdum res et diuturniōrem impunitātem concedēre. p 8 Cūm ea ita sint, a tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi r dentur, b uti ea, quae polliceantur, n factūros in- telligat, e et si Æduis 1 de injuriis, quas ipsis 3 sociisque eōrum intulērint, n item si Allobrogiubus 1 satisfaciant, b sese 1 cum iis pacem esse factūrum.” Divico respondit: “Ita Helvetios a majoribus 9 suis institūtos esse, ut obsides ac- cipēre, non dare, consuērint: m ejus rei Popūlum Romānum 1 esse 9 testem.” Hoc responso dato, discessit.

15. Postēro die v castra ex eo loco movent: idem facit Cæsār; equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quatuor milli- um, quem ex omni Provinciā et Æduis atque eōrum sociis coactum w habēbat, præmittit, qui videant, x quas in partes hostes iter faciant. y Qui, z 10 cupidiūs aa novissimium agmen

---

a § 111, R. b § 140, 2. c § 51, 5. d § 98, Obs. 6. e § 47, 6. f § 140, 6. g 113, 8, (sibi.) h § 108, R. XIV. & 7, 1. i 56, 3. k 110, 5. l § 145, R. LVIII. m § 140, 1. n § 141, Obs. 8. o § 123, R. p § 144, R. LVII. q § 140, Obs. 1, & 74, 1. r § 126, R. III. s § 140, 1, 2. t § 112, R. III. u § 129, Obs. 2. v § 131, R. XL. w § 146, R. LIX. x § 141, R. II. y § 140, 5. z 39, 5. aa 22, 3.
insecuti, aliēno loco cum equitātu Helvetiōrum prēliō committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo prēliō sublāti Helvetii, quod quingentis* equībus tantam multitudinem equītum propulērant, audaciūs subsistēre, nonnunquam ex 1 novissimo agmīne prēlio * nostros 1 lacessēre; cōpērunt. Cæsar suos 2 a prēliō continēbat, ac 2 satis habēbat in præsēntia hostem rapinis,c pabulationibus,e populationibusque, prohibēre. Ita dies 4 circiter quindēcim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissīmum hostium agmen et nostri primum e non amplius 4 quinis 4 aut senis millibus 6 passum interesset.

16. 5 Intērīm quotidiōe Cæsar Æduos 5 frumentum, 6 quod essent 1 publicēe pollicīti, flagitāre: k nam propter 6 frigōra, quōd Gallia 7 sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posīta est, non modō frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabūli quidem 1 satis magna copia suppetēbat: eo autem 8 frumento,m quod flumīne a Arāre navībus 6 subvexērāt, propterēa uti minūs potērat, quōd iter ab Arāre Helvetiī avertērāt, a quibus discedēre nolēbat. Diem ex die ducēre k Ædui; 9 conferri, a comportāri, adesse diēcēre. 7 Ubi 10 se diuītās duci 6 intellexit, et diem instāre, 9 quo die p frumentum militibus metīri oportēret; 9 convocātīs eōrum principiibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiāco 7 et Lisco, 11 qui summo magistrātu p prēcērat (quam Vergobrētum appellant Ædui, qui creatūr annuus, 6 et vita necisque in suos habet potestātem,) gravīter eōs accūsat, quōd, cūm neque ēmi 9 neque ex agris sumi posset, 7 tam necessario tempōre, tam propīnis hostībus, ab ipsis non sublevētur; 9 prēsērtim cūm magnā ex parte eōrum precī-
bus* adductus bellum suscepērit: b multo c etiam gravius, quòd sit destitūtus, d querētur.

17. Tum demum Liscus, oratioē¹ Cæsāris adductus, quod ē antea t tacuērat, propōnit: "Esse nonnullos, quorum auctōritās apud plebem plurimum valeat; d qui s privāti plus possint, quam ipsis magistrātus. Hos seditiosā atque imprōbā oratioē¹ multitūdīnem deterrēre, ne frumentum confērant, f quod præstāre debeant. g Si jam principātum Galliōc obtinēre non possint, h Gallōrum, quàm Romanōrum imperia perferre, satīùs esse; neque dubitāre debēre, quin, si Helvetiōs superαvērint h Romāni, unā cum reliquā Galliā Æduis i libertātem sint ereptūrī. k Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quæque in castris gerantur, l hostibus m enunciāri: hos a se coērcēri non posse. Quin etiam, quōd 4 necessariō rem coactus Cæsāri n enunciārit, l intelligēre sese, quanto id cum pericūlo fecērit, n et ob eam causam, quàm diu potuçērit, t tacuisset.

18. Cæsar hac oratioē² Lisci Dumnorīgēm, Divitiācī fratem, 5 designāri sentiēbat: sed, quōd 6 pluribus p praesentibus eas res jactāri nolēbat, celerīter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quærīt ex 7 solo ea, quae in conventu dixērat. Dicit liberius atque audaciōs. Eādem secrētō ab aliis quærīt; repērit esse vera. "Ipsum esse Dumnorīgēm, sūmā audaciā, magnā apud plebem propter liberalitātem gratiā, n cupīdum rerum novārum: complūres annos 8 portoria, reliquāque omnia Æduōrum vectigalia, parvo pretio 8 edentum habēre, propterēa quōd, illo licente, p contra licēri audeat l

---

a § 129, R.  b § 140, Obs. 4., & 74.  c § 132, Obs. 6.  d § 141, Obs. 7.  e 37, 2.  f § 140, 1, 3d., & 77.  g § 141, Obs. 8.  h § 140, 2.  i § 123, R.  k § 45, 1, & § 140, 3.  l § 140, 6.  m § 126, R. III.  n § 140, 5, & 74, 2d.  o § 97, R.  p § 146, R. LX. & 9.  q § 107, R. VII. & 6, 1.  r § 107, R. IX.  s § 131, R. XLI.  t § 146, Obs. 1.
nemo. His rebus\(^a\) et suam rem familiārem auxisse,\(^b\) et facultātes ad largiendum magnas comparāsse:\(^b\) magnum numèrum equitātus suo sumtū\(^c\) semper alēre\(^d\) et circum se habēre:\(^d\) neque solūm domi,\(^e\) sed etiam apud finitīmas civitātes largīter posse: atque hujus potentiae causā matrem in Biturigibus, homīnī\(^f\) illic nobilissīmo,\(^g\) ac potentissīmo,\(^h\) collocāsse:\(^b\) ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorēm habēre:\(^d\) sorōrem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum\(^h\) in alias civitātes collocāsse:\(^b\) favēre et\(^i\) cupēre Helvetiis\(^j\) propter eam affīnitātem: odisse etiam suo nomine\(^a\) Caesārem et Romānos, quōd eōrum adventūpotential ejus diminūtā,\(^k\) et Divitiacus frater in antiquōm locum gratiā atque honōris sit restitūtās.\(^k\) Si quid accidat\(^l\) Romānis,\(^m\) summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinemī\(^n\) venire; imperio\(^o\) Popūli Romāni non modō de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat,\(^k\) gratiā desperāre.\(^d\) Reperiebat etiam\(^g\) inquirendo\(^p\) Caesār, quōd prēquel equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus\(^q\) esset factum, initium ejus fuga factum a Dumnōrīge atque ejus equitūbas\(^r\) (nam\(^s\) equitātū,\(^r\) quem auxiliō\(^t\) Caesāri\(^u\) Aedui miserant, Dumnōrix praērat), "eōrum fuga reliquitas esse equitātum perterritum."

19. Quibus\(^t\) rebus cognōtīs, cūm ad has suspicīones\(^v\) certissīmās res accedērent,\(^u\) quōd per fines Sequanōrum Helvetiōs transduxisset,\(^k\) quōd obsidēs inter eos dandos curāset,\(^k\) quōd ea omnia non modō injussu suo\(^v\) et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset,\(^k\) quōd a magistrātū Aedūorum accusarētur: satis esse causā\(^w\) arbitrabātur, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertēret,\(^x\) aut civitātem animadvertēre jubēret.\(^x\)

---

\(^a\) § 129, R.  
\(^b\) 93, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.  
\(^c\) § 133, R.  
\(^d\) 96, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.  
\(^e\) § 130, 4.  
\(^f\) § 123, R  
\(^g\) § 24, 1.  
\(^h\) § 143, Obs. 2.  
\(^i\) § 112, R. V.  
\(^j\) § 112, R. V.  
\(^k\) § 140, 6.  
\(^l\) § 140, 2.  
\(^m\) § 140, 2d.  
\(^n\) 112, 5.  
\(^o\) § 136, Obs. 5. (sub)  
\(^p\) § 147, Obs. 5.  
\(^q\) § 131, R. XL.  
\(^r\) § 112, R. I.  
\(^s\) § 114, R.  
\(^t\) 34, 3.  
\(^u\) § 140, Obs. 4.  
\(^v\) 29, 1.  
\(^w\) § 135, R. XLVI.  
\(^x\) § 140, 5.
His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in Populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognovet: nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offendit, verebatur. Itaque priusquam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet, quotidianis interpretibus rem Otis, per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provincie, familiarem suum, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonebatur, vel ipsum separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit, petit atque hortatur, vel sine ejus offensione animi ipse de eo, causae cognitae, statuat, vel civitatem statuat, Cesar erat, multis cum lacrymis, Cesarera complexus, obsecrare capuit, ne quid gravius in fratem statueret: scire se, illa esse vera, nec quenquam ex eo plus, quam se, doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratiam plurimum domi atque in reliquâ Galliâ, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus ac nervis, non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Cesarre gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitia apud eum tenet, neminem existimatum, non sua voluntate factum; quâ ex re futurum, ut totius Galliae animi a se averterentur." Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesar ejus dextram prehendit; consolatus
rogat, finem orandi faciat: a tanti b ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. c Dunnořigem ad se vocat; fratrem 1 adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, 4 ostendit; quae ipse intelligat, d quae civitas queretur, d propinat; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspicioches vitet; e praeerita f se 2 Divitiaco g fratri condonare dicit. Dunnořigi g 3 custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, d quibuscum loquatur, d scire possit. h

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte 4 consedisse 1 millia k passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset d natura montis et qualis in circitu ascensus, qui cognosceref, l misit. Renunciaturum est, 5 facilem esse. m De tertia 6 vigiliæ Titum Labiœnum, 7 legatum pro 8 prætore, cum duabus legionibus, 9 et iis duceb, qui iter cognovérant, summum jugum montis ascendetere jubet; quid sui consili sit, d ostendit. Ipse de quartâ vigiliæ eodem itinere, quo hostes iérant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omne ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militàris n peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullæ, et postea 10 in Marci Crassi fuërat, cum exploratoribus præmíttitur.

22. 11 Prima luce, 4 cùm summus 5 mons a Tito Labiœno teneretur, a 12 ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus, aut Labiœni, cognitus esset; q Considius, 13 equo r admissus, ad eum accurrerit: dicit, montem, quem a Labiœno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus tenêri; s id se a Gallicis armis 8 atque insignibus cognovisse.
De bello Gallico.

68

sae suas copias in proximum collem subducit, a aciem instructum. a Labienus, ut erat ei b praecipsum c a Caesar ne praelium committaret, d nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra e visae essent, f ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetu monte occupato nostros expectabat praedioque abstinentbat. 1 Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit, et montem a suis tenere, h et Helvetios castra movisse, i et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, f 2 pro viso sibi renunciasse. 1 Eodem die, 3 quo k consuerat intervallum, hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria, ab eorum castris castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diei, l quod omnino biduum supererat, cum 4 exercitu frumentum metiri oportaret, m et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibus n passuum octodécim aberat, 5 rei o frumentariae prospiciendum p existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte 9 ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos Lucii Aemilii, e decurioniis equitum Gallorum, hostibus b nunciatur. Helvetii, seu, q quod timore perterritos Romanos 7 discedere a se existimarent, s eo magis, quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, n praelium non commovissent; sive eo, quod re frumentaria intercludi posset, 8 confidèrent; c commutato a consilio atque itinere converso, 9 nostros a novissimo auge misse insequi ac laecessere cooperunt.

24. Postquam id 9 annum adventit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, 9 equatumque, 10 qui sustin- èret v hostium impetum, misit. Ipse intèrim in colle medio w

---

a § 44, I. 3. i 98, 2. q § 130, 2.
b § 126. R. III. k 37, 2d, 4, & Note 1. r—124, 6.
c 51. l § 135, R. XLVI. s § 140. Obs. 2.
d § 140,1, 3d, & 121, 3. m § 140, Obs. 4. & t § 136, Obs. 5, (a.b.)
e § 136, Obs. 5. (ad.) n § 120, R. & 6. 3. u 104, 1.
f § 141, Obs. 8. o § 112, R. V. v § 141, Obs. 2, 4th
ge § 140, 1, 2d. p 113. w § 98, Obs. 9, & 17
h 96, 6.
triplicem aciem instruxit legiōnum quatuor veteranarum, ita, uti supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Galliā citeriōre proxīmē conscriptērat, et omnia auxilia collocarent; ac totum montem hominibus a completīb, et interea sārōnas in unum locum conferri, b et eum ab his, qui in superiori acie constitērānt, munīrīb jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt: ipsi, 4 confertissimā aciē, c rejecto d nostro equitātu, phalange factā, d sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

25. Ĉæsar, primum 6 suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotīs d equis, ut, aquātō omnium 7 pericūlō, spem fugē tollēret, cohortātus suos, proelium communīs. Milites, e loco superiōre pilis missīs, d facilē hostium phalangem perfregērunt. Eā disjectā, e gladiās f destīctis in eos impētum fecērunt. Gallis g magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, g quōd, plurībus eōrum 6 scutiē unoictu pilōrum transfixīs et colligātis, cūm ferrum se inflexisset, 1 neque evellēre, neque, sinistra impēditā, e satīs 9 commōdē pugnāre potērant; multi ut, diu jactāto brachio, praēoptārent k scutum manu 1 emitīrē, et 10 nudo corpōre f pugnāre. Tandem vulnerībus defessī, et 11 pedem referrē, et quōd mons subērat circiter mille passuum, eō se recipēre cæpērunt. Capto montē e et succedentībus nostris, e Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus f circiter quīndēcim 12 agmen hostium claudēbant, et novissimis g præsidio erant, ex itinĕre nostros latēre m aperto aggressī, circumvenēre: et id conspicāti Helvetii, qui in montem sese recepērunt, rursus instāre et proelium redintegrāre cæpērunt. Romāni conversa signa 13 bipartītō intulērunt: prima, ac secunda acies, ut victis ac summōtis resis tēret; n tertia, ut venientes excipēret. n

a § 126, R. V. b § 129, R. c § 129, R. d § 129, R. e § 114, R. & 8, 1. f § 114, R. & 8, 1. g § 140, 1, 1st. (ita.) h § 140, Obs. 4. i § 140, Obs. 4. j § 140, 1, 1st. (ita.) k § 136, R. LII. l § 136, R. LII. m § 136, Obs. 5, (ab) n § 140, 1, 2d.
DE BELLO GALlico.

26. Ita 1 ancipiti prælio a diu atque acrīter pugnātum est. h Diutius cūm nostrōrum impētus sustinēre non possent; c 2 al-tēri d se, ut cæpērant, in montem recepērunt; altēri d ad im-pedimenta et carros suos se contulērunt. Nam hoc toto prælio, e cūm ab 3 horā septīmā ad vespērum pugnātum sit, c 4 aversem hostem vidēre nemo potuit. 5 Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, propterea quōd pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiōre in nostros f veni-entes tela conjiciēbant, g et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, 6 matāras ac tragūlas subjiciēbant g nostrosque vulnerābant. g Diu cūm esset pugnātum, impedimentis h castrisque nostri potīti sunt. Ibi Orgetorūgis filia, atque unus e filiis 1 captus est. Ex eo prælio circūtē millia homīnum centum et tri-ginta superiōre in nostros venientes tela conjiciēbant, et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, 6 matāras ac tragūlas subjiciēbant nostrosque vulnerābant. g Diu cūm esset pugnātum, impedimentis h castrisque nostri potīti sunt. Ibi Orgetorūgis filia, atque unus e filiis 1 captus est. Ex eo prælio circūtē millia homīnum centum et triginta superiōre in nostros venientes tela conjiciēbant, et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, 6 matāras ac tragūlas subjiciēbant nostrosque vulnerābant. g Diu cūm esset pugnātum, impedimentis h castrisque nostri potīti sunt. Ibi Orgetorūgis filia, atque unus e filiis 1 captus est. Ex eo prælio circūtē millia homīnum centum et triginta superiōre in nostros venientes tela conjiciēbant, et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, 6 matāras ac tragūlas subjiciēbant nostrosque vulnerābant. g Diu cūm esset pugnātum, impedimentis h castrisque nostri potīti sunt. Ibi Orgetorūgis filia, atque unus e filiis 1 captus est. Ex eo prælio circūtē millia homīnum centum et triginta superiōre in nostros venientes tela conjiciēbant, et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, 6 matāras ac tragūlas subjiciēbant nostrosque vulnerābant. g Diu cūm esset pugnātum, impedimentis h castrisque nostri potīti sunt. Ibi Orgetorūgis filia, atque unus e filiis 1 captus est. Ex eo prælio circūtē millia homīnum centum et triginta superiōre in nostros venientes tela conjiciēbant, et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, 6 matāras ac tragūlas subjiciēbant nostrosque vulnerābant. g

27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopīa adducti, legātos de deditiōne ad eum misērunt. 9 Qui, cūm eum in itinēre convenissent, e seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locūti flentes pacem petitissent, atque eōs in eo loco, quo tum essent, 4 suum adventum expectāre jussisset, paruērunt. Eō postquam Cāsar pervēnīt, obsīdes, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, 5 poposcit. Dum ea conquiritur, et conferun-

---

a § 129, R.
b § 44, II, 2.
c § 121, R. XXVI.d § 107, Obs. 8.e § 131, R. XL.f 124, 1.
g m§ 140, 1, 3d.h § 140, 2.i § 121, R. XXVI.j § 145, R. LVIII.k § 141, Obs. 8.l 94, 3.m § 141, R. I.n 140, 2.o § 140, 2.p § 145, R. LVIII.q § 141, R. I.r 94, 3.s § 141, R. I.
tur, nocte intermissâ, circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbigènus appellâtur sive timôre perterrîtî, ne, armis traditis, supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salûtis inducti, quôd, in tantâ multitudine dedititiôrum, suam fugam aut occultâri, aut omnîno ignorâri posse existimârent, primâ nocte ex castris Helvetiôrum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanôrum contendérint.


29. In castris Helvetiôrum tabûlæ repertæ sunt, litâris Graecis consectæ et ad Cæsarem relatæ, quibus in tabulis nominâtim ratio consecta erat, qui numèrus domo exissent
eorum, qui arma ferre possent: a et item separatim puéri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum b omnium rerum summa erat. 1 capitum Helvetiorum millia c ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingorum millia triginta sex, Latobrigorum quatuordecim, Rauracorum viginti tria, Boiorum triginta duo: ex his, qui arma ferre possent, a ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium d fuérunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, 2 censu e habito, ut Cæsar imperavérat, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

30. Bello e Helvetiorum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Cæsarem gratulatum f convenérunt: intelligere sese, g tametsi, 4 pro veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis Populi Romani, ab ipsis pœnas bello repetisset, h tamen eam rem e non minus ex usu terrae Galliae, quam Populi Romani accidisse: propere qua eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliæ 1 bellum inferrent, k imperiisque potirentur, k locumque domicilio 1 ex magnâ copiâ deligirent, k quem ex omni Galliæ opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicassent, a reliquisque civitatis stipendiariis habèrent." Petiérunt, "ut sibi m concilium totius Galliæ in diem certam indicere, idque Cæsaris voluntate facere, liceret:" sese h habère quasdam res, quas "ex communi consensu ab eo petère vellent." Èa re permissâ, diem concilium 1 constituérunt, et jurejurando, s ne p quis enunciaret,"nisi quibus q communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisse, iidem principes civitatum, qui ante fuérant ad Cæsarem, revertérunt, petieruntque, ut sibi secreto de sua r omniumque salute cum eo agère liceret.
Ea re impetratá, sese omnes flentes Cásári ad pedes pro-
jecérunt: non minus se id contendére et laboráre, ne ea, 
quæ dixissent, enunciárentur, quàm uti ea, quæ vellent, 
impetrárent, propterea quòd, si enunciátem esset, summum 
in cruciátem se ventúros vidérent. Locútus est pro his 
Divitiácus AÉduus: "Galliae totius factiones esse duas: 
harum alterius principátum tenère AÉduos, alterius Arver-
nos. Hi cum tantopère de potentátu inter se multos annos 
contendérent, factum esse ut ab Arvernis Sequanisque 
Germáni mercédé arcesserentur. Horum primó circíter 
millia quindécim Rhenum transísse: posteaquam agros, 
et cultum, et copias Gallórum homínes feri ac barbarí ad-
amássent, transductos plures: nunc esse in Galliá ad cen-
tum et viginti millium numerum: cum his AÉduos eorum-
que clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; 
magnam calamitátem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitátem, om-
nem senátum, omnem equitátum amísisse. Quibus præ-
liis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et suá virtúte, et Popúli 
Románi hospitio atque amicitia, plurínum anté in Galliá 
potuissent, coactos esse Sequánis obídes dare, nobilissímos 
civítátis, et jurejurando civítátem obstringère, sese neque 
óbides repetitúros, neque auxílium a Popúlo Románo im-
ploratúros, neque recusatúros, quo minús perpetuo sub 
illórum didióne atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex 
omni civitáte AÉduorum, qui addúci non potuérunt, ut jurár-
ret, aut libérös suos obídes dare. Ob eam rem se 
ex civitáte profugisse, et Romam ad senátum venisse, aux-
ilium postulátum, quod solus neque jurejurando neque
obsidibus teneretur. Sed pejus victis, accidisse: propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optinus totius Galliae, occupavisset, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere jubaret; propterea quod, paucis mensibus antè, Harudum millia hominum viginti quatuor ad eum venissent; quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse paucis annis uti omnes ex Gallia finibus pellerentur, atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illâ comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias prælio vicérít, quod prælium factum sit ad Magetobriam, superbè et crudelier imperare, obside nobilissimi cujusque liberos poscere, et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edère, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit: hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia diutius sustinéri. Nisi si quid in Cäsare Populoque Romano sit auxilii, idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent; aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant, fortunamque, quacunque accidat, experiantur. Hæc si enunciata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Cäsarem vel auctoritatem suâ atque exercitùs, vel recenti victoriâ, vel nomine Populi Români deterrëre posse, ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum transducâtur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuriâ posse defendère."
32. Hác oratióné ab Divitiáco habítá, omnes, qui adé-rant, magno fletu auxilium a Cásáre petére cæpérunt. Ani-
madvertit Cásar, unos ex omnibus Sequános nihil eárum rerum facére, quas cétérí facérent; sed tristes, capíté de-
missó, terram intuéri. Ejus rei causa quae esset, mirátus, ex ipsis quesívit. Nihil Sequánti respondére, sed in cádem tristitiá tacíti permanére. Cúm ab iis sǽpius quæréret, neque ullam omnínó vocem exprímère posset, idem Divit-
iácus Æduús respondit: Hoc esse miseríorem gravíórem-
que fortúnam Sequanórum, praé reliquórum, quód soli
ne in occulto quidem queri, neque auxilium implórases au-
dérent, absentísque Ariovistí crudélitátem, velút si coram
adset horrérent: propterea quód reliquis tamen fugae
facultas darétur; Sequánís vero, qui intra fines suos Ario-
vístum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potéstáte ejus
essent, omnes cruciátes essent perferéndi."

33. His rebus cognítís, Cásar Gallórum ánimos verbís e
confirmávit, pollicitusque est, sibi cam rem curæ futúram:
magnam se habère spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritáte
adductum Ariovístum finem injuriis factúrum. Hác ora-
tióné habítá, concilium dimísit; et secundum ea multæ res
eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitándam et sus-
cipiendum putáret; in primis quód Æduós, fratres consan-
guineosque sǽpènuméro ab Senátu appellátos, in servítúte
atque in dítione vidébat Germanórum tenéri, eorumque
obsídés esse apud Ariovístum ac Sequános intelligébat:
quod in tanto imperio Popúli Románi turpíssimum sibi

---

a 16, 4. i § 98, Obs. 10. p 108.
b § 145, R. LVIII. k § 140, Obs. 4. q § 114, R. & 8.
c 96, 2. l § 136, Obs. 6. r 100, 2.
d § 141, Obs. 8. m§ 140, 2. a § 140, Obs. 2.
e § 129, R. n § 126, R. III. & 19. t 37, Note 3.
f § 140, 5. o § 126, R. XXXIII. u § 103, Obs. 2.
g 106, 1. & Obs. 3. v § 111, R.
h § 144, Obs. 6.
et reipublicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germānos consuescēre Rhenum transīre, et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venire, Popūlo Romāno periculōsum vidēbat: neque sibi a homines feros ac barbāros temperāturos b existimābat, quin, cūm omnem Galliam occupāssent, c ut antē Cimbri Teutonīqué fecissent, d in Provinciam exīrent, e atque inde in Italiam contendērent; e prāsertim cūm Sequānos a Provinciā nostrā Rhodānus dividēret. f Quibus g rebus quām i maturīm ā occurrentum putābat. h Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumserat, ut ferendus non viderētur.

34. Quamobrem d placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legātos mittēret, i qui ab eo postulārent, m utā alīquem locum medium utriusque colloquio dicēret: n velle sese de republicā 3 et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agēre. Ei legatiōni o Ariovistus respondit: 4 Si quid ipsi p a Cæsāre opus esset, sese ad eum ventūrum fuisset; a s se ille se velit, illum s ad se venire oportère. Prāterea se neque sine exercītū in eas partes Galliā venire audēre, quas Cæsar possidēret; i neque exercītum sīne magno commētātu atque emolimento in unum locum contrahēre posse: sibi autem mirum vidēri," 7 quid in suā Galliā, quam bello vicisset," aut Cæsāri," aut omnīno Popūlo Romāno w negotii x esset.

35. His responsis ad Cæsārem relātis, itērum ad eum Cæsar legātos cum his mandātis mittit: "Quoniam tanto suo  y Populique Romāni beneficio affectus (cūm in consulātu suo rex atque amīcus a Senātu appellātus esset), hanc sibi
Populōque Romāno gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatūs gravarētur, neque de commūni re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret; hāc esse, quae ab eo postularet: primō, ne quam homīnum multitudinem amplius trans Rhenum in Galliām transducećret: deinde obsides, quos habēret ab Ėduis, reddēret; Sequanisique permittēret, ut, quos illi habērent, voluntāte ejus reddēre illis licēret; neve Ėduos ēiūriaš laccēret, neve his sociisve eōrum bellum inferret: si id ita fecisset, sibi Populōque Romāno perpetuam gratiam atque amīcitiam cum eo sustinērat: si non impetrāret, ēse (quoniam Marco Messālā, Marco Pisōne Consulibus, Senātus censuisset, ut quicumque Galliām provinciam obtinēret, quod commōdo reipublicae facēre posset, Ėduos ceterosque amicos Popūli Romāni defendēret), ēse Ėduorum ēiūrias non neglectūrum.

36. Ad hāc Ariovistus respondit: "Jus esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperāret: 7 item Popūli Romānum iūte vicitēs non ad alterius præscriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre consuērēre. Si ipse Popūlo Romāno non præscriberet, quemadmodum suo jure uterēt; non oportēre sese a Popūlo Romāno in suo jure impedirī. Ėduos sibi, quoniam belli fortūnam tentāssent et armis congressi ac superāti essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Cæsārem ēiūriām facēre, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora facēret. Ėduis se obsides redditūrum non esse, neque iis, neque eōrum sociis iūriā bellum illatūrum, si in eo manērent, quod convenisset, stipendumque quotannis pendērent: si
id non fecissent, longè iis a fraternum nomen Popúli Románi abfutúrum. 2 Quod b sibi Cásar denunciáret, se Æduórum injurias non neglectúrum; nemínum c secum sine suá d pernicie contendíssé. Cúm vellet, f congréderétur; g intellectúrum, quid invicti Germáni, exercitássími in armis, qui 3 inter annos quatuordéccim tectum non subissent, h 4 virtúte possent. i

37. Hae códem tempóre Cásári k mandáta referébantur, et legáti ab Æduis et a Trevíris veniébant: b Ædui1 questum, m quod Harúdes, qui nuper in Galliam transportáti essent, h fines eórum populárentur, h sese ne obsídibus quidem datís pacem Ariovísti redímére potuisset: b Trevíri1 autem, pagos centum Suevórum ad ripas Rheni consédisse, qui Rhenum transíre conárentur; h iis a præesse Nasuam et Cimberiúm fratres: Quibus n rebus Cásar vehéménter commóitus, maturandum c sibi o existimávit, 7 ne, si nova manus Suevórum cum veteribus copiis Ariovísti sese conjunxisset, p minus facilè resisti posset. q Itáque 8 re frumentaríá, quàm r celerrímè potuit, comparátâ, s magnís itineríbus ad Ariovístum contendit.

38. Cúm 9 triduí viam y processisset, f nunciótum est ei, k Ariovístum c cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum t Vésoniónem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequánórum, 10 contendére, " triduíque viam y a suis finibus processisse. e Id ne accidéret, q magno opère sibi o præcavendum c Cásar existímabat: namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usu w erant, 11 summa erat in eo oppído facultas; idque naturá loci sic muniebátur, ut magnam 12 ad ducendum bellum dare x fac-

a § 112, R. I. b § 126, R. III. c § 140, 5. d § 145, R. LVIII. e § 101, Obs. 4. f § 148, 1. g § 145, R. LVIII. h § 141, Obs. 7. i § 140, 5. j § 134, Obs. 6, 3d. k § 126, R. III. l § 101, Obs. 4. m § 148, 1. n § 38. o § 113. p § 140, 2. q § 140, 1, 2d. r § 132, R. XLII. s § 140, 1, 1st. t § 104, 1. u § 96, 2. w § 114, R. & Obs. 4. x § 140, 1, 1st.
ultatem, propteram quod flumen Dubis 1 ut circino circumductum, pæne totum oppidum cingit: reliquum spatium, quod est 2 non amplius pedum 3 sexcentorūm, quà flumen intermittit, mens 3 conténet magnā altitūdīne, 4 ita ut radices ejus montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingat. 4 Hunc 4 murus circumdātus arcem 4 efficet et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Cæsar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, 5 occupatōque oppido, ibi præsidium collōcat.

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontiōnem, rei frumentariae comineatūsque causā, morātūr, 5 ex percucctatiōne nostrōrum vocibusque Gallōrum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitūdine 6 corpōrum Germānōs, incredibili virtūte 6 atque exercitatiōne in armis esse prādicābant, 6 saepe numēro sese, 6 cum eis congressos, 6 ne 6 vultum quidem atque aciem ocu- lōrum ferre potuisse, 6 tantus subītō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut non mediocrīter omnium mentes animosque perturbāret. 6 Hic i primūm ortus est a 7 Tribunīs militūm, præfectis reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amicitia causā Cæsārem secūti, non magnum in re militāri usum habēbant: 8 quorum 8 alius, 1 aliā 1 causā illātā, quam 9 sibi 9 ad proficiscendum necessariam esse dicērent, 9 petēbant, ut ejus voluntāte discēdēre licēret: 9 nonnulli, pudōre adducti, ut timōris suspicio nem vitārent, 9 remanēbant. Hi neque 9 vultum fingēre, neque interdum lacrūmas tenēre potērant: abdīti in tabernaculis, aut suum 7 fatum querebantur, 7 aut cum familiaribus sui 7 commūne periculum miserabantur. 7 Vulgō totis castris testantem obsignabantur. 7 Horum vocibus ac timōre paulatim etiam ii, 9 qui magnum in castris usum habēbant, milītes 9 centurionesque, quique equitātum praeerant, pertur-

---

1 a § 106, R. VI. Obs. 107 R. XVIII. 2 § 145, R. LVIII. 3 (spatio.) h 98, 2. 4 § 111, R. 5 3 § 141, Obs. 7. 6 b § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1. 7 19, (timor.) i 98, 2. 8 § 140, 1, 3d. 9 j 107, R. X. r § 140, 1, 2d. 10 a § 116, Obs. 1. 11 § 102, Obs. 5. s § 97, R. 12 e § 44, I, 3. 13 m 25, 1, and 14 19, (timor.) 15 n 30, 2. 16 f § 44, II. 1. 17 § 98, Obs. 11.
babantur. 1 Qui a se ex his minús timídos existímári b volé-
bant, non se hostem verěri, c sed angustias itinérís et mag-
nitudinem silvárum, quae intercedérent d inter ipsos atque
Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut e satís commódè sup-
portári posset, timěre c dicěbant. Nonnulli etiam Cæsári
renunciábant, cúm castra mověri ac signa feri jussisset, f
non fore 2 dicto audientes milités, nec propter timórem sig-
na latúros.

40. Hæc cúm animadvertisset, 3 convocatō g consilio, om-
niumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibítis g centurionibus,
vehementer eos incusávit; "primúm, quòd, aut quam in
partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur, b 4 sibi quærendum aut
cogitandum putárent, d Ariovistum, se k consúle, cupidis-
símě Popúli Románi amicitiam appetisse; 1 cur hunc tam
teměre quisquam ab officio discessúrum judicáret? d 5 Sibi m
quidem persuaděri, cognítis suis 6 postulátis atque æquitáte
conditionum perspectá, eum neque suam, n neque Popúli
Románi gratiam repudiatúrum. Quòd si, furóre atque amen-
tiá impulsus, bellum intuílisset, o quid tandem vererentur? d
aut cur de 7 suá virtúte, aut de ipsius diligentiá, desperárent? d
8 Factum ejus hostis pericúlum patrum nostrórum memorá,
cúm, Cimbris et Teutónis a Caio Mario pulsí, non minó-
rem laudem exercítus, quàm ipse imperábôr, merítus videbát-
tur; p factum etiam nuper in Italíá 9 servíli tumultu, quós a
tamen aliquid r usus ac disciplína, quam a nobis accepis-
sent, sublevárent. d Ex quo judicári posset, d quantum ha-
běret h in se boni constantia; propterea quòd, quos e ali-
quamdiu inermos sine causá timuissent, hos postea armátos

a 37, (ii.)  
b 94, 3.  
c 96, 1.  
d § 140, 6.  
e 121, 7, and  
§ 140, Obs. 6.  
f 80, 1.  
g 104, 1.  
h § 140, 5.  
i 113.  
j 110, 2.  
l 98, 2.  
m § 126, R. III.  

b § 29, 1.  
o § 140, 2.  
p § 141, Obs. 5. 1st.  
q § 99, Obs. 2.  
r § 116, Obs. 3.  
s 43.
ac victóres superássent. Denique hos* esse eosdem, quibus-cum sæpennúmerò Helvetii congressí, non solùm in 1 suis, sed etiam in illórum finibus, plurumque superárint, b qui tamen pares esse nostro exercíto c non potuérint. Si 2 quos adversum præélium et fuga Gallórum commovérét, d hos, si que-rérent, a reperíre posse, diurnútátè belli desatigatís Gallis, e Ariovístum, a cùm multos menses f castris se ac paludibus tenuisset, 3 neque sui potestátem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugná et dispersos subítò adortum, magis 4 ratiónē f et consilio, quàm virtūte, g vícisse. Cui h ratióni 1 contra homínès barbarós atque imperítos locus fuisset, hác, ne ipsum a quidem speráre, nostros exercitus a capi posse. 5 Qui k suum l timórem in rei frumentariæ simulatiónem angustiasque itinérum conferrent, b facère arroganter, cùm aut de officio imperatóris desperáre, aut præscribère viderentur. m Hæc sibi n esse curæ; n frumentum Sequános, a Leucos, Lingónas subministráre; o jamque esse in agris frumenta matúra: de itínere ipsos a brevi tempóre judicatúros. p 6 Quod q non fore dicto audientes milítés, a neque signa latúri dicantur, h nihil r se eā re commověri: 7 scire enim, quibuscumque exercíto dicto audiens non fuérít, b aut, malè re e gestá, fortúnam defuisse; aut, aliqúo facinóre e comperto, avaritiam esse conjunctam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitátem Helvetiörum bello, esse perspectam. s 8 Itaque se, a quod in longiórem diem collatúrus esset, f representatúrum, p et proxímá nocte de quartá vigiliá castra motúrum, ut quàm primúm intelligére posset, a utrúm apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valéret. w Quod si præterea nemo sequátur, x

a § 145, R. LVIII. b § 140, 6. c § 111, R. d § 140, 2. e 109, 2. f § 131, R. XLI. g § 129, R. h 33. i § 110, R. XV. k 37, (eos.) l 30, 2. m § 140, Obs. 4. n § 114, R. o 94,3 & 96, Exc. II. p 100, 2. q 38, Note. 11. r § 116, Obs. 3. s 98, 6. t § 79, 8. u § 140, 1, 2d. v 124, 14. w § 140, 5. x § 140, 2, & 77 5. y § 39, 1.
tamen se cum solá decima legiōne itūrum, de quā non dubitāre; sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futūrum."

Huic legiōni Cāsar et indulsērat praeipuē, et propter virtūtem confidēbat maximē.

41. Hác oratīone habitā, mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summāque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi innāta est, prīncepsque decima legio, per tribūnos militum, ei gratias egit, quōd de se optimum judicium fecisset; seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnes, per tribunos militum et primōrum ordinum centuriones, ēgerunt, ut Caesari satisfacerent: seque neque unquam dubitasse, neque timuisse, neque de summā belli suum judicium, sed imperatōris esse, existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione acceptā, et itinère exquisīto per Divitiācum, quōd ex aliis ei maximam fidem habēbat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circūitu locis apertis exercitum ducēret, de quartā vigiliā, ut dixērat, prefectus est. Septimo die, cūm iter non intermittēret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovistī copias a nostrīs millibus passuum quatuor et vigintī abesse.

42. Cognīto Cēsāris adventu, Ariovistus legātos ad eum mittit: quod f antea de colloquio postulāsset, id per se fieri licēre, quoniam proprius accessisset; seque id sine periculo facere posse existimāre. Non respuit conditionem Cēsār: jamque eum ad sanitātem reverti arbitrabātur, cūm id, quod antea petenti denegāsset, ultro policerētur; magnāque in spem veniēbat, pro suis tantis Populique Romāni in eum beneficiis, cognītis suis postulātīs, fore, uti pertinaciā de-

\[\text{§ 141, Obs. 7.} \quad \text{§ 112, R. III.} \quad \text{r 19, (copiis.)} \]
\[\text{§ 114, Obs. 2.} \quad \text{§ 140, 1, 2d.} \quad \text{q 132, R. XLII.} \]
\[\text{§ 112, R. V.} \quad \text{k 98, 2.} \quad \text{r 43.} \]
\[\text{§ 44, III, Note.} \quad \text{1 29, 1.} \quad \text{§ 140, 6.} \]
\[\text{112, 5.} \quad \text{w 108, R. XII.} \quad \text{t 141, Obs. 8.} \]
\[\text{§ 98, Obs. 10.} \quad \text{u 123, R.} \quad \text{u 145, Obs. 6, 14.} \]
\[\text{§ 126, Obs. 2.} \quad \text{o 140, Obs. 4.} \quad \text{100, 14.} \]
sistet. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. Interim, cùm sæpe ulbroque legatì inter eos mitterentur, a Ariovistus postulavit, 1ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adducérer: b vereri, ne d per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uferaque cum equitatu veniret: b alìa ratione se non esse ventūrum. Caesar, quòd neque colloquio interposita causà 2 tolli volēbat, neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātūm committēre audēbat, 3 commodissimum esse statuit, 4 omnibus equis1 Gallis equitibus k detractis, eò legionarios militès legiōnis decima, cui quàm maxūmē confidēbat, imponère, 1 ut præsidium quàm amicissimum, 5 si quid opus facto esset, habēret. m Quod a cùm fieret, a non irridiculè quidam ex militibus 6 decima legiōnis dixit: “plus, quàm pollicitus esset, P Caesar ei facere; pollicitum, se in co- hortis prætoriæ loco decimam legiōnem habitūrum, 6 nunc ad equum rescriberē.”

43. Planities erat magna, et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus æquo sēspatio quattuor ab castris utrisque abērat. Eò, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quàm equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constitērunt. Ariovistus, 7 ex equis ut colloquenter et, præter se, denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. 8 Ubi eò ventum est, Caesar, initio oratiōnis, sua Senatusque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, “quòd rex appellātus est a Senātu, quòd munēra amplissima missa: quam a rem et paucis contigisse, et pro magnis hominum officiis consuēsse tribui” docēbat: “illum, cùm neque aditum,
neque causam postulandi justam habēret, beneficio ac liberalitāte suā ac Senātus ea præmia consecūtum." Docēbat etiam, "quām vetēres, quāmque justē cause 1necessitudinis ipsī cum Āduis intercedērent, b quāe Senātūs consulta, quoties, quāmque honorifi ca in eos facta essent: b ut omni tempōre totīus Gallīa principātum Ādui tenuissent, c priūs etiam quām nostram amicitiam appetissent: d Popūli Romāni hanc e esse consuetūdīnem, ut socios f atque amīcos non modō 2sui nihil desperēre, f sed gratiā, dignitāte, honōre s actūōres velit g esse: quod vero ad amicitiam Popūli Romāni attulissent, id iis b eripi, quis pati posset? "g Postu-lāvit deinde eādem, quae legātīs in mandātis dederat, "ne aut Āduis, aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret;" e obsides red-dēret: si nullam partem Germanōrum domum h remittēre posset, k at ne 4quos ampliūs Rhenum transīre paterētur."c

44. Ariovistus ad postulātā Cæsāris paucā respondit; de suīs virtūtibus multa prāedicāvit: "Transiśse l Rhenum m sese, non suà sponte, sed 5rogātum n et arcessītum a Gallis; non sine magnā spe, magnisque præmiis, domum pro-pinquoque reliquisse; i sedes habēre o in Galliā, ab ipsī concessas;" obsides ipsōrum voluntāte datas; stipendium capēre o jure belli, quod victōres victis p imponēre consuērint; non sese e Gallis, sed Gallos e sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitātes ad se oppugnandum venisse, l ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno prælio fusas ac superātas esse; si itērum experīri velint, k itērum parātum sese decertāre; si pace q uti velint, iniquum esse, de stipendio recusāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependērint.

a § 112, R. IV.  g § 140, 6.  m§ 136, R. LII.
b § 140, 5.  h § 126, R. III.  n 101, 4.
c § 140, 1, 3d.  i § 130, 4.  o 96, 2.
d § 140, 4.  k § 140, 2.  p § 123, R. & 19.
e § 145, R. LVIII.  l 98, 2.  q § 121, R. XXVI.
f 90.
Amicitiam Populi Romani sibi ornamentum et præsidio, non detrimento, esse oportère, idque se à spe petisse. Si Populum Romanum stipendium remittat, et dedititii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusatùrum Populi Romani amicitiam, quàm appetiērit. Quod multitudínei Germanorùm in Galliam transducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandæ causã facère; ejus rei testimonium esse, quod, nisi rogātus, non venērit, et quod bellum non intulērit, sed defendērit. Se prius in Galliam venisse, quàm Populum Romanum. Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum Populi Romani Galliae provinciæ fines egressum. Quod sibi vellet? Cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concèdi non oportère, si in nostros fines impētum facère, sic item nos esse iniquos, qui in suo jure se interpellārēmus. Quod frater a Senatu Ēduos appellatós dicēret, non se tam barbarum, neque tam imperiūm esse rerum, ut non sciret, neque bello Allobrogum proximo Ēduos Romanis auxilium tullisse, neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Ēdui secum et cum Sequānis habuisse, auxilio Populi Romani usos esse. Debère se suspiciāri, simulātâ Cæsarem amicitiam, quod exercitum in Galliâ habeât, suī opprimendī causã habère. Qui nisi decèdat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amīco, sed pro hoste habitūrum: quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque Populi Romani gratum esse factūrum; id se ab ipsis per cōrum nuntios compertum habère, quorum omnium gratiam atque ami-
citiam ejus morte redimère posset. Quòd si decessisset, \(a\) ac libērām possessiōnem Galliāe sibi \(b\) tradidisset, magno se illum præmio remuneratūrum, et, quæcumque \(c\) bella geri vellet, \(d\) sine ullo ejus labōre et periculō confectūrum."

45. Multa ab Cæsāre \(1\) in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset, \(e\) et "neque suam, \(f\) neque Popūli Romānī consuetūdīnem \(g\) pati, ut  optimē merītos socios deserēret;\( h\) neque se judicare, Galliam potiūs esse \(2\) Ariovisti, \(i\) quàm Popūli Romānī.\( j\) Bello superātōs esse Arvernos et Rutēnos ab Q. Fabio Maxīmo, quibus \(k\) Popūlus Romānus ignovisset, \(l\) neque in provinciam redegisset; \(m\) neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum \(n\) quodque tempus \(o\) spectāri oportēret, \(p\) Popūli Romānī justissīnum \(q\) esse in Galliā imperium: si judicium \(r\) Senātūs observāri oportēret, \(s\) libērām \(t\) debēre esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus \(u\) uti \(v\) voluisset."

46. Dum hæc in colloquio geruntur, Cæsāri \(w\) nunciātum est, equītes \(z\) Ariovisti \(a\) propriūs tumūlum accedēre, \(b\) et ad nostros adequitāre, \(c\) lapīdes telāque in nostros conjicēre. Cæsar loquendi finem facit \(d\) seque ad suos recipit, \(e\) suisque \(f\) imperāvit, ne quod omnīno tumul in hostes rejicērent.\( g\) Nam, etsi sine ullo periculō legiōnis delectā cum equitātu prælium \(h\) fore vidēbat, tamen committendum \(i\) non putābat, ut, pulsis hostībus, dici posset, \(j\) eos \(k\) ab se \(l\) per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in \(m\) vulgus militum elātum est, \(n\) quà arrogantiā in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Galliā Romānīs interdixisset, \(o\) impetumque in nostros ejus equītes fecissent \(p\) eāque res colloquium ut diremisset: \(q\) multo major alacritās studiūmque pugnandi majus exercītū \(r\) injectum est.

\(a\) § 140, 2. \(b\) § 123, R. \(c\) § 99, Obs. 7. \(d\) § 140, 6. \(e\) § 140, 5. \(f\) 29, 1. \(g\) § 145, R. LVIII. \(h\) § 140, 1, 3d. \(i\) § 108, R. XII. \(j\) § 141, Obs. 7. \(k\) § 112, R. V. \(l\) § 103, Obs. 2. \(m\) § 121, R. XXVI. \(n\) § 126, R. III. \(o\) § 96, 2. \(p\) § 44, I. 3. \(q\) 113, and \(r\) § 140, 1, 1st.
47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Cäsarem legātos mittit, velle b se de his rebus, quæ inter eos agi cœptæ, neque perfectæ essent; ἀgēre cum eo: uti aut itērum colloquio diem constituēret; aut, si id minùs vellet, ex suis aliquem ad se mittēret. Colloquendi Cäsāri f causa visa non est; et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diēi g Germāni retinērī non potērunt, 2quīn h in nostros i tela conjicērent. Legātum ex suis i sese magno cum pericūlo ad eum missūrum, et hominibus feris objectūrum, existimābat. Commodissīnum visum est, Caium Valerium Procillum, Caii Valerii Cabūri filium, summā virtūte k et humanitāte adolescentem l (cujuς pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitāte m donātus erat), et propter fidem et propter linguāe Gallīcāe scientiam, quā multā jam Ariovistus longinquā consuetūdīnē n utebātur, et quōd in eo 3pec candi Germānīs o causa non esset, p ad eum mittēre, et Marcum Mettiūm, qui hospitio Ariovisti usus erat. His q mandāvit, ut, quae dicēret r Ariovistus, cognoscērent d et ad se referrent. Quos s cūm apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercītum suo præsente, con clamāvit: "Quid ad se veniērent? c An 4speculandī causā?" Conantes dicēre prohibuit et in catēnas conjēcit.

48. Eōdem die castra promōvit, et millibus v passuum sex a Cäsāris castris sub monte consēdit. Postridie ejus diēi g prater castra Cäsāris suas copias transduxit, et millibus v passuum duōbus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio, n uti frumento commeatūque, qui ex Sequānīs et Æduīs supportātur, r Cäsārem intercludēret. e Ex eo die dies continuos
quinque Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet a Ariovistus prœlio contendère et b potestas non deesset.c. Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus d exercitum castris continuat; equestri prœlio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc e erat pugnae, quo se Germāni exercuērunt. Equītum millia erant sex: totidem numero f pedītes velocissimi ac fortissimi; g quos ex omni copiā singūli singūlos, sus salūtis causā, delegērunt. Cum his in præliis versabantur, ad hos se equītes recipiēbant: hi, si quid erat durius, h concurrēbant: si qui, i graviōre vulnēre accepto, equo decidērunt, circumsistēbant: k si quō erat longius prodeundum, aut celeriūs recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatio celeritas, ut, jubis l equōrum sublevāti, 4 cursum adæquērunt.m

49. Ubi eum n castris se tenēre Cæsar intellexit, ne diuitiūs commeātu prohiberētur; c ultra eum locum, d quo in loco e Germani consedērunt, circīter passus p sexcentos ab eis, castris q idoneum locum delēgit, aciēque triplīci instructā, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, r tertiam castra munīre jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circīter passus p sexcentos, ut dictum est, abērat. Eo circīter homīnum nūmero sexdēcim millia expedita cum omni equitātū Ariovistus misit, 6 quae s copiāe nostros perterrērent t et munitione prohibērunt. Nihilō seciūs Cæsar, ut antē constituērat, duas acies hostem propulsāre, t tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiōnes reliquit et partem auxiliōrum: quatuor reliquas in castra majōra reduxit.
50. Proxímo die, a instituto b suo, Cæsar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paulumque 2a majoribus progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibusque c pugnandi potestātem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire d intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reductum. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suārum copiārum, quæ castra minōra oppugnāret, e misit: acriter utrinque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Solis occāsu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illātis et acceptis vulneribus, f in castra reductum. Cūm ex captīvis querēret a Cæsar, quam ob rem Ariovistus prōelio non decertāret, b hanc reperiēbat causam, quōd apud Germānos ea consuetūdo esset, ut matres familiae eōrum 3 sortībus et vaticinationibus declarārent, b utrum prōelium commiitti 4 ex usu esset, b nec ne: eas ita dicēre, e "Non esse f fas, Germānos superāre, si ante novam lunam prōelio contendissent."

51. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar prāsidio " utrisque castris, quod ⁰ satis esse visum est, reliquit; ⁶ omnes alarios in conspectu hostium ⁷ pro castris minorībus constituit, quōd minūs multitudīne militūm legiōnariōrum pro hostium numeōr va-lēbat, ut ⁸ ad speciem alariis uterētur. P Ipse, triplīci instructā acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessariō Germāni suas copias castris eduxerunt, ⁰ generā-timque constituerunt paribusque intervallis Harūdes, Mar-comānos, Triboccos, Vangīones, Nemētes, Sedusios, Sue-vos, omnemque aciem suam ⁹ ¹⁰ rhedis b et carris circumdedē-runt, ne qua spes in fugā relinquerētur. p ¹¹ Eō multiēres im-posuerunt, quæ in prōelium proficiscentes milites passis cri-nībus flentes implorābant, ne se in servirūtem Romānīs tra-cērent.f

---

a § 131, R. XL.  b § 129, R.  c § 123, R. & 63, 5.  d § 96, 2.  e § 140, Obs. 4.  f 109, 2.  g § 140, 1, 4th.  h § 140, 5.  i § 141, Obs. 7.  k § 140, 1, 1st.  l 51.  m§ 140, 2.  n § 114, R.  o 37, 2 (id.)  p § 140, 1, 2d.  q § 30, 2.  r § 140, 1, 3d, &  s § 140, Obs. 1, 2d.  t 121, 2.
52. Caesar singulis a singulós legátos et quas-tórem præfécit, ut eos testes suæ quisque virtutís habéret. Ipse a dextro cornu, quòd eam partem minímà firmam hostium esse animum adverterat, prælium commísit. Ita nostri acéris in hostes, signo dato, impérum fecérunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrenti, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi non darétur. Rejectis pilis, cominús gladiis pugnátum est; at Germáni, celeriter ex consueáudine suá phalange factá, impétus gladiórum excepérunt. Reperti sunt complúres nostri milítes, qui in phalangas in silérent, et scuta maníbus revellérent, et desúper vulnerárent. Cúm hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitúdo suórum nostram aciem premébant. Id cúm animadvertisset Publius Crassus adolescens, qui equitatu praecébat, quòd expedítor erat, quàm qui inter aciem versa-bantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris suísídim misit.

53. Ita prælium restítutum est, atque omnes hostes terga vertérunt, neque priús fugère destíterunt, quàm ad flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circéris quinquaginta pervenerint. Ibi perpauci aut, viríbus confísi, transnátre contendorunt, aut, líntríbus inventis, sibi salútem reperérunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, navículam deligatam ad ripam nactus, ea profúgit: reliquos omnes consecuti equites nostri interfecérunt. Duæ fuérunt Ariovísti uxóres, una Sueva natióne, quam ab domo secum eduxérat; altéra Nor-íca, regis Vociónis soror, quam in Galliá duxérat, a fratre missam : utraque in eá fugá periérunt. Duæ filiæ harum, altéra occísa, altéra capta est. Caius Valerius Procíllus,
cùm a custodībus in fugā trinis catēnis vincitus traherētur,  
1 in ipsum Cäsārem, hostes equitātu persequentem, incidit.  
Quae quoque res Cäsāri non minōrem, quàm ipsa victoria,  
voluptatem attūlit; quōd homōnem honestissimum provinciāe Galliāe, suum familiārem et hospitēm, ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum videbat, neque ejus calamitātē de tantā voluptāte et gratulatiōne quicquam fortūna deminuērat. Is, se præsente, de se ter sortībus consultum dicēbat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservarētur: sortīum beneficio se esse incolēmem.  
Item Marcus Mettius repertus, et ad eum reductus est.  


---

*a* § 129, R.  
*b* § 140, Obs. 4.  
*c* 38, 2.  
*d* § 123, R.  
*e* § 120, Obs. 1.  
*f* § 97, R.  
*g* § 126, R. III.  
*h* 110, 5.  
*i* § 47, 6, & 98, 2.  
*j* § 124, 14.  
*k* § 140, 5.  
*l* § 140, R. III.  
*m* § 96, 2.  
*n* § 130, 4.  
*o* § 136, Obs. 5. (ad.)  
*p* § 131, R. XLI.  
*q* 112, 7.
BOOK II.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

II. War with the Nervii—Chap. 15-28. III. War with the Aduatici—Chap. 29-33. IV. Expedition of Publius Crassus into Armorica—Chap. 34. V. Transactions subsequent to the reduction of the Belgæ—Chap. 35.

1. Cum esset Cæsar in citeriore Galliâ in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebant, literisque itêm Labiêni certior fiébat, omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliâ partem dixeramus, contra Popûlum Românum conjurâre, obsidesque inter se dare: conjurandi has esse causas: primùm, quòd vererentur, ne, omni pacâtâ Galliâ, ad eos exercitus noster adducetur: deinde, quòd ab nonnullis Gallis solicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Galliâ versâri noluérant, ita Popûlì Români exercitum hiemâre atque inveterascere in Galliâ molestè ferèbant; partim qui mobilitâte et levitâte animi novis imperiis studerbant: ab nonnullis etiam, quòd in Galliâ a potentioribus atque his qui ad conducendos hominès facultâtes habêbant, vulgô regna occupabantur, qui minus facìlè eam ren in imperio nostro consêqui potérant.

2. Iis nuntiis literisque commotus, Cæsar duas legiônes in citeriore Galliâ novas conscripit, et, initâ astâtè, in interiôrem Galliam qui deduceret, Quintum Pedium legâtum misit. Ipse, cum primûm pabûli copia esse incipëret, ad exercitum venit: dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quá apud eos germantur, cognoscant, seque de his rebus certiôrem faciant.
Hi constanter omnes nunciavérunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum condüci. Tum vero dubitandum non existi-
ma vit, quin ad eos proficiscerētur. Re frumentariā pro-
visā, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindēcim ad fines
Belgārum pervēnit.

3. Eō cūm de improviso celeriūsque omnium opinione venisset, Remi, qui proxīmi Gallīae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legātos, Iccium et Antebrogium, primos civitātis, misērunt, qui dicērent, se suāque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem Popūli Romāni permittēre: neque se cum Belgis reli-
quis consensisse, neque contra Popūlum Romānum omnino conjurāsse: paratosque esse et obsīdes dare, et imperātūrā facēre, et oppīdis recipēre, et frumento ceterisque rebus ju-
vāre: reliquis omnes Belgas in armis esse: Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incōlunt, sese cum his conjunxisse; tan-
tumque esse eōrum omnium familiarum, ut ne Suessiones qui-
dem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eōdem jure et eis-
dem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistrā-
tum cum ipsis habeant, deterrēre potuērint, quin cum his consentiērent.

4. Cūm ab his quærēret, quae civitātes, quantāaque in
armis essent, et quid in bello possent, sic reperiēbat: ple-
rosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis: Rheūnumque antiquī-
tus transductos, propert loci fertilitātem ibi consedisse, Gal-
losque, qui ea loca incolērent, expulisse; solosque esse, qui, patrum nostrōrum memoriam, omni Galliā vexātā, Teutōnos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingrēdi prohibuērint. Quā ex re sēriī, utē eārum rerum memoriam magnam sibi auctoritā-
tem, magnosque spiritus in re militāri sumērent. De nu-
mēro eōrum omnīa se habēre explorātā, Remi dicēbant;

5. Cæsar, Remos cohortātus 5 liberaliterque oratiȯne persecūtus, omnem senātum, h ad se convenire, principumque libēros obsides i ad se addūci jussit. Quæ k omnia ab his 1 diligentem 6 ad diem facta sunt. Ipse, Divitiacum Æduum 7 magno opēre cohortātus, docet, quanto opēre rei publicae communiquē salūtis intersit, a manus hostium distineri, m ne 8 cum tantā multitudīne uno tempōre confligendum sit." Id fieri posse, si suas copias Ædui in fines Bellovācorum intro-

---

duxērint, a et eōrum agros populāri cæpērint. a His mandā-
tis, eum ab se dimittīt. Postquām omnes Belgārum copias, in unum locum coactas, ad se venīre b vidit, neque jam longè abesse ab his, quos misērat, exploratoribus, c et ab Remis cognōvit, flumen d Axōnam, quod est in extrēmis Remō-
rum finibus, exercītumā transducēre maturāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. 1 Quae e res et latus unum castrōrum ripis fluminis muniēbat, et post eum quae f essent tuta ab hostibus reddēbat, et, commeātus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum portāri possēt, g efficiēbat. In eo flum-
mine pons erat. Ibi præsidium ponit, et in altērā parte flu-
minis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex co-
hortibus reliquit: castra in altitudīnem pedum duodecim vallo, h fossāque duodevīnti pedum, i munīre jubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum, nomine k Bibrax, abērat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinēre magnō impētu h Belgē oppugnāre cæpērunt. Ægrā eo die l sustentātum est. m 4 Gallōrum eādem atque n Belgārum oppugnatio est hæc. Ubi, circumspectā multitudīne hominum totis mēnibus o undique lapīdes in murum jacī cæpti sunt, murasque defendo-
soribus p nudātus est, testudine factā portas q succēdunt murumque subruunt. 5 Quod tum faciālē fīebat. Nam, cum tanta multitudō lapīdes ac tela conjicerent, in muro consistēndi potestas erat nullī. r Cūm finem oppugnāndi nox fecisset, Icicius, Remus, summā nobilitāte i et grātiā inter suos, qui tum oppīdo praērēt, unus ex his qui legāti de pace ad Cæsārem venērant, nuncios ad eum mittit, s nisi subsidium sibī o submittātur, sese diutius sustinēre non posse.

7. Èo 8 de mediā nocte Cæsar, iisdem ducībus usus qui nuncii ab Icicio venērant, Numidas et Cretas sāgittarios, et

---

a 79. b 89, 3. c § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.) d 119, 1. e 38, 2. f § 99, Obs. 1 4th, (loca)m 66. g § 140, 1, 3d. h § 129, R. i § 106, R. VII. k § 128, R. l § 131, R. XLI. m § 149,Obs. 6. n § 126, R. III. o § 126, R. V. p § 126, R. V. q § 112, Obs. 4. r § 112, R. II. s 94, 4.
funditores Baleares, subsidio a oppidânis mittit: quorum adventu et Remis, b cum spe defensionis, studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus c eâdem de causâ spes potiundi d oppidi discessit. Itaque, paulisper apud oppidum morâti, e agrós-que Remôrum depopulât, e omnibus vicis ædificiisque, f quos adire poterant, incensis, et ad castra Cæsâris omnibus copiis contendôrunt, 2 et ab g millibus h passuum minûs duóbus castra posuerunt; quæ castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus h passuum octo in latitudînem patêbant.

8. Cæsar primò, et propter multitudinêm hostium, et propter eximiam opinionem virtûtis, 3 prælio supersedêre statuit; quotidie tamen equestrîbus præliis, quid hostis virtûte posset, et quid nostri audûtrent, 4 solicitationibus periclitabant. Ubî nostros non esse inferiôres intellexit, loco i pro castris, ad aciern instruendam naturâ opportûno atque idoneo (quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paulûm ex planitie editus, tantum k adversus in latitudiném patêbat, quantum loci l acies instructa occupâre poterat, atque ex utrâque parte latéris dejectus habêbat, e et, frontem leniætor fastigâtus, paulâtim ad planitiem rediabat), ab utrâque latère ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum a quadrîngentôrum; et 7 ad extrêmâs fossas castella constituit, ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cûm aciem instruxisset, hostes, 9 quod tantùm multitudinêm poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes b suos circumvenire possent. g Hoc facto, duâbus legionibus, r quas proxímè conscripsërât, in castris reliquis, ut, 10 si quà opus esset, subsidio a duci possent, a reliquis sex legiônes pro castris in aciæ constituit. Hostes item suas cœpìas ex castris eductas instruxërunt.

---

a § 114, R. & Obs. 1. b § 112, R. IV. c § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.) d § 112, 5. e § 99, Obs. 6, & f § 99, Obs. 6, & g § 105, 1. h § 120, R. & 6, 3. i § 136, Obs. 5, (in) j § 136, R. LII. k 44, 5. l § 136, R. LII. m § 128, Exc. n § 106, R. VII. o § 106, R. VII. p 101, 1. q § 140, 1, 2d. r 109, 2.
9. 1 Palus erat non magna inter nostrum a atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transierent, hostes b expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos c aggrederentur, b parati in armis erant. Interm praelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. d Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, 3 secundióre equitum praelio nostris, e Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contendérunt, quod esse post nostra castra 4 demonstrátem est. Ibi vądis f repertis, partem suárum copiārum transducére conáti sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, g castellum, cui h præerat Quintus Titurius legátus, expugnèrent, pontemque interscindérunt; 4 si minús potuissent, h agros Remórum popularentur; i qui magno nobis k usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatüque nostros prohibérunt.

10. Caesar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitátum, et levis armatūræ l Numídas, funditóres m sagittariosque, pontem transducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acréter in eo loco pugnátem est. d Hostes 6 impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numèrum occidérunt. Per eorum corpóra reliquis, audacissimè transire conantes, multitúdine telórum repulérunt; prímos, qui transiérant, equitátu circumventos interfecérunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando n oppído, et de fluníne transeundo, 11 spem se fessellisse intellexérunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem proegrídi pupnandi causá vidérunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria desícere cæpít, concilio convocáto f constituérunt, optimum esse, dum suam quemque reverti, ut, 7 quorum in fines primùm Romāni exercitum introduxissent, p ad eos defendendos undique convenírent, q et potius in suis, quàm in aliēnis finibus, decertarent, r et domesticis copiis s rei frumentariae ueterentur. t
Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, 1 hæc quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiácum atque Æduos finibus Bellova-corum appropinquare* cognoverant. 2 His persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur, neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

11. Eā re constitutā, secundā vigiliā d magnō cum strepitu ac tumultu castris ecesserunt, 3 nullo certo ordine neque imperio, 4 cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret, et domum 2 pervenire properaret, necrirunt, ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hāc statim Cæsar, per speculatōres cognitā, 5 insidias verītus, quod, quā de causā discedērunt, nondum perspexerat; exercītum equitatumque castris continuāt. Primā luce, d confirmātā re āb exploratoribus, omnem equitātum, qui novissimum agmen agmine, non poterat, praemittēt. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legātos praecepsit. Titum Labiēnum legātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsēqui jussit. Hi, novissimos adorti, et multa milliā 1 passuum prosectūti, magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt, 6 cum ab extrēmo agmine, ad quos m ventum erat, 7 consistērent, 8 fortiterque impētum nostrōrum militum sustinerent; 9 prioresque (quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ullā necessitāte neque imperio continerent), exaudito clamōre, h perturbātīs ordinibus, h omnes in fugā sibi præsidium ponērunt. 10 Ita sine ullo periculo, 7 tantum eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfecerunt, quantum fuit diedi spatium: sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque in castrā, ut erat imperātum, recepērunt.

12. Postridie ejus diedi Cæsar, priusquam se hostes ex terrōre ac fugā recipērunt, 5 in fines Suessiōnum, qui proximi. Remis erant, exercītum duxit, et, magnō itinēre confecto, ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinēre oppug-

---

*Note: The text includes historical and geographical terms, possibly requiring a context-specific understanding or a map to fully comprehend.
nāre conātus, quōd 1 vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiēbat propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnāre non potuit. Castris munītis, 2 vineas agēre, quāque ad oppugnandum usu 3 erant, comparāre coēpit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multītūdo in oppidum proxīmā nocte convēnit. Celerīter vineis b ad oppidum actis, 3 aggēre jacto, 4 turribusque constitūtis, magnitudine 5 opērum, quā neque vidērant antē Galli neque audiērant, et celeritāte Romanōrum permōtī, legātos ad Čaesar rem de deditiōnemittunt, et, 6 petentibus Remis b ut conservarentur, 4 6 impētrant.

13. Čaesar, obsidībus b acceptis, primis c civitātis atque ipsius 6 Galbæ regis duōbus filiis, armisque b omnibus ex oppido tradītis, in deditiōnem Suessiōnes accēpit, exercitumque in Bellovācos duxit. Qui 6 cūm se sūaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, 6 atque ab eo oppido Čaesar cum exercitu circīter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes 7 majores natu, ex oppido egressi, manus ad Čaesarrem tendēre, et voce significāre cæpērunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestātem venire, 1 neque contra Populum Romanum armis contendēre. Item, cūm ad oppidum accessisset, 6 castrāque ibi ponēret, puēri mulieresque ex muro 8 passis manibus, 6 suo more, c pacem ab Romanīs k petiērunt.

14. Pro his Divitiācus (nam post diessērum Belgārum, dimissis Ėduōrum copiis,b ad eum revertērat) 9 facēt verba: Bellovācos omni tempōre in 10 fide atque amicitiā civitātis Ėduae fuisse: m impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicērent, 1 Ėduos, a Čaesāre in servitūtem redactos, omnes indignitātes contumeliaeque perferre, 1 et ab Ėduis defecisse m et Popūlo Romāno bellum intulisse. m Qui 6 hujus consilii

---

\[a \text{§ 114, Obs. 4. (ei.)} \quad b \text{109, 2.} \quad c \text{§ 129, R.} \quad d \text{§ 140, 1, 31.} \quad e \text{§ 97, R. & 19.} \quad f \text{32.} \quad g \text{30, 6.} \quad h \text{§ 140, Obs. 4. &} \quad i \text{37, 1st. (eos.)} \quad k \text{§ 124, Obs. 2.} \quad l \text{§ 145, R. LVIII.} \quad m \text{98, 2.} \quad n \text{§ 140, 6.} \quad o \text{37, 1st. (eos.)} \]
principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aedorum auctoritate apud omnes Belgas amplificatum; quorum auxiliiis atque opibus, si qua bella incidirent, sustentare consuerint.


16. Cûm per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inueniēbat ex captīvis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse, adventumque ibi Romanorum expectāre, unà cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, finitīmis suis (nam his utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam experirent): expectāri etiam ab his Aduatuco rum copias, at-

---

a § 140, 5. b § 141, Obs. 7. c § 140, 1, 3d. d § 145, R. LVIII. e § 140, III. 2. f § 141, Obs. 7. g § 106, Obs. 2. h 100, 2. i § 128, R. j 31, 5, Note. k § 112, R. II. l § 129, R. m § 106, R. VII. n 90, 4. o § 141, R. III. p § 141, R. III. q § 132, R. r 63, 3.
que esse in itinere: mulières, quique a per ætatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, b in eum locum conjecisse, quod proper paludes exercitui c aditus non esset.

17. His rebus cognitiis, exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. d Cùmque ex décitis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complüres, Cæsarem secüti, una iter facèrent; e quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, f eòrum dieorum g consuetudine f itinéris g nostri exercitú perspectá, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt, atque iis h demonstrárun, inter singúlas i legiones impedimentórum magnùm numérùm intercedére, 3 neque esse quicquam negotii, k cùm prima legio in castra venisset, l reliquæque legiones magnus spatium m abessent, hanc sub sacrinis adorír: n quâ pulsâ, f impedimentisque direptis, futúrum, ut reliquæ contrá consistent non audérent. o t Adjuvábát p etiam eòrum consilium qui rem deferébant, quod Nervii antiquitús, cùm equitatu a nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus b ei rei student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestríbus valent copios), quod facilius finitimórum equitátum, si prædandi causâ ad cos venisset, t impedirent, u tenéris arboríbus f 7 incisis atque inflexis, crebris in latitudinem ramis t et rubis sentibusque interjectís efficérent, ut instar v muri hæ sepe¿ munimenta præberent; quod non modò w intrári, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cùm iter agniensis nostri impediret, non omissendum sibi consilium Nerviæ estimavérunt.

18. g Loci natura erat hæc, quem x locum nostri castris de- legérant. Collis, ab summo æqualiter declivis, ad flumen Sabim, quod suprà nominavimus, vergébat. Ab eo flumine pari

---

a 37, 1st.  b § 141, Obs. 7.  c § 112, R. II.  d § 141, Obs. 2.  4th.  e § 44, II.  f 109, 2.  g § 106, Obs. 2.  h 63.  i 26, 5.  k § 106. R. VIII.  l 80, 3.  m§ 132, R. XLII.  n § 144, R. LVI.  o § 140, 1, 4th.  p 51.  q § 129, R.  r § 116, Obs. 3.  s 37, 8, Note. 2. & r.  t § 140, 2.  u § 140, 1.  v § 136, Obs. 5. (ad)  w§ 134, Obs. 5.  x 37, 6, Note. 1
acclivitatem collis nascebatur, adversus huic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infima apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facilè introrsus perspici posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco, secundum flumen, paucæ stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur omnibus copiis: sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat, ac Belgæ ad Nervios detulérant. Nam, quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Cæsar sex legiones expeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duas legiones, quæ proximè conscriptæ erant, totum agmen claudebant, præsidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitatu prælibium commiserunt. Cum se illi idemdem in silvas ad suos recipierent; ac rursus ex silva in nostros impētum facerent, neque nostri longius, quàm quem ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinēbant, cedentes insēqui auderent: interim legiones sex, quæ prima m venerant, opère dimenso, castra munire cæpérunt. Ubì prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his, qui in silvis abditi latēbant, visa sunt (quod tempus inter eos committendi prælii convenièrat), ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituìerant, atque ipsi sese confirmavérant, subitò omnibus copiis provolavérunt impetumque in nostras equites fecérunt. His facilè pulsis ac proturbātis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decurrērunt, ut pæne uno tempore et ad silvas, et in flumine, et jam in manibus nostri hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritatem adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos, qui in opère occupati erant, contendērunt.
20. Caesari a omnia uno tempore erant agenda: b 1 vexillum proponendum, b quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurreret: signum tuba dandum: b ab opere revocandi b milites: c qui paulo longius c aggerris petendi causa processerant, arcessendi: c acies instrueda, c milites cohortandi, c signum dandum: b quam d erum magnam partem temporis brevitatis, et a successus et incursus hostium impediébat. His difficulatibus c duae res c erant subsidio c scientia atque usus militum, quod, superioribus praeliis exerçitati, quid fieri oportaret, c non minus commode ipsis ibi b præscribere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere d singulisque e legionibus e singulos d legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris, vetuerat. Hi, propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, e nihil jam Cæsaris imperium spectabant, sed 7 per se, quæ b videbantur, administrabant.

21. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, g quam k in partem fors obtulit, decurrit, et ad legionem decimam devinit. Milites non longiore oratiœ c cohortatus, quam uti sua pristina virtutis memoriam retinerent, m neun 10 perturbarentur m animo, hostiumque impetus fortiter sustinierent; m quod non longius hostes aèrrant, quam quod telum adjici posset, c prœlii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus, pugnantibus p occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit c exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, q sed etiam ad galeas induen das q scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuerit. r Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devinit, quæque prima signa conspexit, ad hæc constituï, ne, in quærendo suos, pugnandi tempus dimitteret. s

---

a § 126, Obs. 3.  

b 108, 2.  

c § 120, Obs. 5.  

d 38.  

e § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)  

f § 114, Obs. 4. nostris. m§ 140, 1, 3d.  

h 63.  

i 26, 5.  

k 37, 2d, 5. Note. 1.  

l § 129, R.  

m § 140, 1, Ist.  

n § 93, 1, (and not,)  

o § 140, 5.  

p § 112, R. IV. & 19.  

q 112, 7.  

r § 140, 1, 1st.  

s § 140, 1, 2d.
22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura, dejectusque collis, et necessitas temporis, quàm ut rei militāris ratio atque ordo postulābat, cūm diversis locis legiūnes, alīa aliā in parte, hostibus resistērunt, sepibusque densissimis, ut antē demonstrāvīmus, interjectis prospectus impedīrētur: neque certa subsidia collocāri, neque quid in quāque parte opus esset providēri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrāri poterant. Itāque, in tantā rerum iniquitāte, fortūnā quōque eventus variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiūnis nonae, et decimae milītes, ut in sinistrā parte acie constitērant, pilis emissīs, cursu ac lassitudinē examinātos, vulneribusque confectos, Atrebātes (nam his ea pars obvenērat), celerīter ex loco superiōre in flumen compulerunt; et, transīre conantes insecūti gladiīs, amplam partem eōrum impedītām interfecerunt. Ipsi transīre flumen non dubitāvērunt; et, in locum inīquum progressī, rursus regresī ac resistentes hostes, redintegrāto prōlio, in fugam dedērunt. Item aliā in parte diverse duae legiūnes, undeō, et ōctava, profligātīs Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressī, ex loco superiōre in ipsīs fluminis ripās prōelībantur.

24. Eōdem tempore equītes nostri, levisque armātūra pedītes, qui cum iis una fuerunt, quos primo hostium impētu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra recipērunt.
sis hostībus occurrēbant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant: et 1 calōnes, qui ab 2 decumānā portā, ac summo jugo collis, nostros  a victōres flumen transisse  b conspexērunt, prædandi causā egressi, cūm respexissent et hostes in nostri castris  c versāri  c vidissent,  d præcipītes  d fugē sese manda-bant. Simul eōrum, qui cum impedimentis venēbant, clamor fremitusque oriebātur, alique aliam  e in partem perterrī ferebant.  f Quibus  g omnībus rebus permōti equītes Trevīri, quorum inter Gallos virtūtis opinio est singulāris, qui auxiliī causā ab civitāte missi ad Cēsārem venērunt, cūm multitudīne  h hostium castrā  a nostra complēri,  c legiōnes  a premī  c et pæne circumventas tenērī, calōnes,  a equītes, fundītōres, Numīdas,  s diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugēre  e vidissent,  i desperātās nostrīs rebus, domum contendērunt: Romānos  a pulsos  b superatosque, castrīs  k impedimentisque eōrum hostes potitos,  b civitāti renunciāverunt.

25. Cēsar, ab decimā legiōnis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos  a urgerī,  c signisque in unum locum collātis duodecimā legiōnis confertos militēs  sibi  m ipsos  l ad pugnam esse impedimento;  m quartāe cohortis omnibus centurionibus occīsīs, signiferōque interfecto, signo amissō, reliquārum cohortium omnībus ferē centurionibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in his 7 primopīlo, Publio Sextio Bacūlo,  n fortissīmo viro,  b multis gravibusque vulneribus  s confection, ut jam se sustinēre non posset;  o reliquis  a esse tardīōres,  et nonnullōs ab novissimis desertos  p prelio  q excedēre ac tela vitāre; hostes  a neque  q a fronte ex inferiōre loco 10 subeuntes intermittēre,  c et ab utroque latēre instāre;  c et rem  a esse  c in angusto vidīt, neque ullum esse  c subsidium, quod submitti posset:  s scuto ab novissimis uni militī  d-
tracto (quod ipse eò sine scuto venérat), in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominátim appelláts, reliquos cohortátus milites, signa inferre et manipúlos laxáre jussit, quod facilius gladiís uti possent. 2 Cujus adventu spe illátà militibus, ac redintegráto animo, cum pro se quisque, in conspectu imperatóris, et jam in extrémis suis rebus, opéram naváre cupérunt, paulum hostium impétus tardátus est.


27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti proculuisserant, scutis innixi, prælium redintegrārent; tum calónes, perterritos hostes conspicáti, etiam inermes armátis occurrérunt; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte delérunt, omnibus in locis pugnæ se legionariis militibus præferrent. At hostes, etiam in extrémâ spe salútis, tantam virtūtem præstit-
erunt, ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insistèrent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his dextissimis, et coacervatis cadaveribus, \( ^1 \) qui\(^a\) superessent,\(^b\) ut ex tumulo, tela in nostros conciccerent,\(^c\) et pila intercepta remittissent:\(^c\) ut non nequinquam tantae virtutis homines judicari debuerent\(^e\) ausos esse\(^f\) transire latissimum flumen,\(^g\) ascendente altissimis ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo\(^3\) redegerat.

28. Hoc praedio facto,\(^h\) et \(^4\) prope ad internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto,\(^h\) majores natu, quos\(^1\) una cum puìris mulieribusque in \( ^5 \) aestuaria ac paludes collectos\(^f\) dixeramus, hoc pugnà nunciátà,\(^h\) cum victoribus\(^6\) nihil\(^k\) impedìtum,\(^l\) victis nihil\(^k\) tum\(^l\) arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt; et, in commemorandâ\(^m\) civitatis calamitate, ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent,\(^a\) sese redactos esse\(^f\) dixerunt. \( ^7 \) Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus\(^o\) misericordiâ videretur,\(^e\) diligentissimè conservât, suisque finibus et oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis\(^p\) imperavit, ut ab iniurià et maleficio se susoque prohiberent.\(^q\)

29. Aduatûci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio\(^r\) Nervis venièrent, hoc pugnà nunciâtà, ex itinere domum revertérunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum, egregiè naturà munîtum, contulérunt. Quod\(^s\) cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus, in latitudinem non amplissì ducentorum pedum, relinquebatur: quem\(^t\) locum duplì altissimo muro muniérent; tum magni pondéris\(^d\) saxa et præcûtas trabes

\( ^a \) § 136, R. LII.  
\( ^b \) § 140, Obs. 8.  
\( ^c \) § 140, 1, 1st.  
\( ^d \) § 106, R. VII.  
\( ^e \) § 140, 1, 2d.  
\( ^f \) 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.  
\( ^g \) § 112, 8.  
\( ^h \) 109, 2.  
\( ^i \) § 145, Obs. 2.  
\( ^j \) § 145, R.LVIII. (esse)  
\( ^k \) § 140, 1, 3d.  
\( ^l \) § 103, R.  
\( ^m \) § 114, R.  
\( ^n \) § 141, Obs. 7.  
\( ^o \) § 145, Obs. 3.  
\( ^p \) 63, 3.  
\( ^q \) 38, 1, (oppidum.)
in muro collocārunt. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prog-
nāti; qui, cūm iter in provinciam nostram atque Italianam fa-
cērent, īīs impedimentis, quae sēcum agēre ac portāre non potērant, citra flumen Rhenum depositīs custodīā ex suis ac præsidio sex millia homīnum reliquērunt. Hi, post eō-
rum obitum, multos annos a finītīmis exagitāti, cūm aliās bellum inferrent, aliās illātum defendērent, consensu eōrum omnium pace factā, hunc sibi domicilio locum delegē-
runt.

30. Ac primo adventu exercītūs nostri crebras ex oppīdo excursīōnes faciēbant, parvuīisque prōliis cum nostris con-
tendēbant: postea, vallo pedum duōdecim, in circuitu quīndēcim milliūm, crebrisque castellis circummunitī, oppīdo sese continēbant. Ubi, vineis actīs aggēre extructo, turrim procul constituit vidērunt, primūm irridēre ex muro, atque increpitāre vocībus, quō tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instituerētur? quibusnam manibus aut viribus, praeertim homīnes tantūlē statūrāe (nam plerunque homīnibus Gallis prae magnitudīne corpōrum suōrum, brevītās nostra contentui est), tanti onēris turrim in muros sese colloca confidērent?

31. Ubi verō movēri, et appropinquāre mānibus vidē-
runt, novā atque inusitātā specie commoti, legātos ad Cæ-
sārem de pace misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī: "Non se existimāre Romānos sine ope divīnā bellum gerēre, qui tantā altitudinis machinatiōnes tantā celeritāte promove, et ex propinquāte pugnāre, possent: se suāque omnia eōrum potestāti permettēre," dixērunt. "Unum petēre ac deprecāri: si fortē, pro suā clementiā ac mansuetudīne, quam ipsi ab aliis audīrent, statuisset, Aduatūcos
esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: sibi omnes ferè finitimos esse inimicos, ac suæ virtutii invidere; a quibus se defendere, traditis armis, non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciátum interfici, inter quos dominari consuèssent.

32. Ad hæc Cæsar respondit: "Se magis consuetudine suà, quam merito eorum, civitatem conservaturum, si prius, quam murum aries attigisset, se dedissent: sed deditiïnis nullam esse conditionem, nisi armis traditis: se id, quod in Nerviis fecisset, factum, finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam deditiïnis Populi Romani injuriam inferrent." Re nunciâtâ ad suos, "quæ imperarentur, facère" dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudo de muro in fossam, quæ erat anteoppidum, jactâ, sic ut propè summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adæquarent; et tandem circiter parte tertiae, ut postea perspectum est, celâtaque in oppido retentâ, portis patefactis, eo die pace sunt usi.

33. Sub vespèrum Cæsar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidâni ab militibus injuriam accipère Illi, ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod, deditiïone factâ, nostros præsidia deductûros, denique indulgentiûs servaturos, credîrânt, partim cum his, quæ retinuérant et celâvérant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intestis, quæ subítâ (ut tempôris exiguitas postulabat), pellibus induxérânt, tertìâ vigiliâ, quà minímè arduus ad nostras munitiônes ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repente ex oppido eruptionem fecérunt. Celeriter, ut antè Cæsar imperárat, ignibus..."
significatione factâ, ex proximis castellis eò concursum est, pugnatumque a ab hostibus 1ita acrier, ut b a viris fortibus, in extrêmâ spe salutis, inique loco, contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jaèrent, c pugnâri debuit, d cùm in una virtute omnis spes salutis consistëret. e Occisis 2ad hominum millibus f quatuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diei, refractis portis, f cùm jam defendëret e nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris, 3sectiônum ejus oppidi universam Cæsar vendidit. Ab his, qui emèrant, 4capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

34. Eodem tempore g a Publio Crasso, quem cum legiône unâ misérat ad Venétos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedônes, quae sunt maritimae civitates 5Oceanumque attingunt, 6 certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Popûli Români esse redactas. h

35. His rebus g gestis, omni Galliâ f pacâtâ, tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab his nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incolèrent, 1mitterentur k legati ad Cæsarem, quæ se l obsides datûras, m imperâta factûras, polliceron- tur: 1 quas n legatioes Cæsar, quod in Italian Illyricumque properabat, inià proximá æstâte o ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnûtes, Andes, Turonesque, quae p civitates propinque his locis q erant, ubi bellum gessérat, legionibus f in hiberna deductis, in Italian prefectus est, ob easque res, ex literis Cæsâris, q d iès r quindécim supplicatio decreta est, quod s ante id tempus accidit nulli. t
BOOK III.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. War with the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni—Chap. 1-6.
II. War with the Veneti—Chap. 7-16. III. War with the Unelli—Chap. 17-19. IV. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania—Chap. 20-27. V. Expedition of Cæsar against the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 28-29.


2. Cūm dies hibernōrum complūres transissent, frumentumque eō comportāri jussisset, subītō per exploratōres certior factus est, ex eā parte vici, quam Gallis concessērat, omnes noctū discussisse, montesque, qui impendērent, a

---

a 17, 2. e § 140, 1, 3d. i § 38, 2.
b § 145. R. LVIII. f 109, 2. k § 123, R.
c 94, 3. g 32, 3, (constituit.) l 27, 10, Obs.
d 63. h § 103, R. m 98, 2.
maximâ multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum tenēri. a Id alīquot de causis accidērat, ut subītō Galli belli renovandi b legionisquē opprimendā b consilium caperent: c primūm, quōd legiōnem, 1 neque eam plenissīmam, detractis cohortibus duābus, et compluribus d singillātim, qui commeātus petendi causā missi erant, absentībus, propter paucitātem despiciebant: tum etiam, quōd, propter iniquītatem locī, cūm ipsī ex montībus in vallem 3 decurrērent, e et tela conjicērent, e ne primum quidem posse impētum sustinēre f existimābant. g Accedēbat, quōd suōs ab se libēros absībant: et Romānos g non solum itinērum causā, sed etiam perpetuē possessionis, culmina Alpium occupāre conāri, et ea loca finitīmē provinciēs adiungēre, sibi i persuāsum habēbant.

3. His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cūm neque opus hibernōrum, munitionēsque plenē essent perfectae, 7 neque de frumento reliquōque commeātū satis esset provīsum, k quōd, de ditiōne factā, obsidibusque acceptīs, 8 nihil de bello timendum existimavērāt, consilio celeriter convocāto, sententias exquirēre cēpit. Quo 1 in consilio, cūm tantum repentīni periūlī prāter opinionēm accidisset, ac jam omnīa serē superiōra loca multitudine m armātōrum compleā consipercētur, 9 neque subsidio o venīri, neque commeātus supportāri interclūsis itinerūibus p possent, prope jam desperātā salūte, p nonnullē hujusmōdi sententiē dicebantur, ut, impedimentīs p relictīs, eruptionē factā, iisdem itineribus, q quibus q eō pervenissent, ad salūtem contendērent. a 10 Majōri tamen partī r placuit, hoc p reservāto ad extrēmum s consilio, intērim rei eventum experiri et t castra defendēre.

---

a § 96, 2.
b 112, 5.
c § 140, 1, 4th.
d 19, (milītibus.)
e § 140, Obs. 3, &
f § 45, II. 1.
g § 145, R. LVIII.
h 98, 2.
i § 126, R. III.
j 65.
k 38.
l § 126, R. V.
m § 126, R. V.
n § 140, 1, 1st.
o § 136, Obs. 5. cum.
p 109, 2.
q § 129, R.
r § 113, R.
s 19, (casum.)
t § 149, R.
4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituisserunt, collocandis atque administrandis temporibus, hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere, lapides gæsâque in vallum conjicière: nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ulla frustra telum ex loco superiore mittère: utque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbâtur, eò occurrère, et auxilia sciretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere, lapides Sgaesque in vallum conjicere: nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque quæque pars castrorum nudi defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere, et auxilium ferre:

5. Cùm jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnarétur, ac non solùm vires, sed etiam tela, nostris desicere, atque hostes acrìus instárent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindère, et fossas compleître, cœpisset, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio quem Nervico prælio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et itém Caius Volusènus, tribûnus militum, vir et consilii magni atque virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse speram salutis docent, si eruptione factâ, extrêmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celerriter milités certiores facit, paulisper intermittère prælia, ac tantummòdò tela missa excipère, sequer ex labóre resicère; pòst, dato signo, ex castrâ erumpère, atque omnem speram salutis in virúte ponèrent.

6. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subitò omnibus portis eruptione factâ, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui
DE BELLO GALLICO.

colligendi, hostibus a facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata fortunâ, b eos, qui in spem potiumdorum c castrorum venient, undique circumventos interficiant, et, d ex hominum millibus amplius d triginta, quem e numérum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, f plus d tertiâ parte interfectà, reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistère patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis a 3 fusis, armisque exútis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo f prælio facto, quod sæpius fortunam tentare Galba nolèbat, atque a 4 alio e sene in hiberna consilio venisse h memínèrat, aliis f occurrisse b rebus viderat, maximè frumenti commeatúsque inopia permótus, postèro die l omnibus ejus vici ædificiis b incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente, aut iter demorante, incoluimem legiönem in Nantuâtes, inde in Allobrôgas, perduxit, ibique hiemàvit.

8. His rebus b gestis, cùm f omnibus de causis Cæsar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superâtis Belgis, b expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedûnis, atque ita, inítâ hiëme, b in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque natiônes k adire, et regiönes cognoscère, volèbat, subítum bellum in Galliâ coortum est. Ejus bellii hæc fuit causa. Publius Crassus adoleścens cum légione septimâ proximus 6 mare 1 Oceànum in Andibus hiemárat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, 7 præfectos tribunosque milium complures in finitiës civitâtés, frumenti commeatûsque petendi 6 causa, dimísit: quo in numéro erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios; Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolítas; Quintus Velanius, cum Tito Silio, in Venetos.

8. Hujus est civitatis longè amplissíma auctoritates omnis ora m maritimæ regionum eàrum; quod et naves habent Ve-

---

a § 123, R. c § 37, 2d, & Note. 1. e § 131, R. XL. b 109, 2. f 38, 3. h § 136, R. LII. e 112, 5. g § 98, Obs. 12. i § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.) d § 120, Obs. 3. k § 107, R. X. Exp.
nēti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigäre consuérunt, et 1 scientiā atque usu nauticārum rerum reliquos antecēdent, et, 2 in magno impētu maris atque aperto, paucis portūbus interjectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes ferē, qui eo mari utī consuérant, habent vectigāles. Ab iis fit initiūm retinendi d Siliī atque Velanii, quōd per eos suos se obsīdes, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperatūros existimābant. Horum auctoritāte finitīmi adductī (6 ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia), eādem de causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retīnent, et, celeriter missis legātis per suos principes inter se conjūrant, nihil nisi commūni consilio actūros, eunodemque omnis fortūnā exitum esse latūros; reliquāque civitātes solicitant, ut in ea libertāte, quam a majoribus acceptāre, permanēre, quam h Romanōrum servitūtem perturre, mallent. Omnia marītima celeritēr ad suam sententia perducta, commūné legationem ad Publium Crassum mittunt, "si velit suos recipēre, obsīdes sibi remittat."

9. Quibus de rebus Cēsar ab Crasso certior factus, quōd ipse abērat longīs, naves intērim longas ēdificārī in flumen Ligēri, quod infuit in Oceānum, remīges ex Provinciā institūti, nautas gubernatoresque comparāri jubet. His rebus celeritēr administrātis, ipse, cum primūm per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venēti, reliquae item civitātes, cognīto Cāsāris adventu, simul quōd, quantum in se faciūs admisset, intelligentēbant (legātos, quod nomen apud omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula conjectos), pro magnitudine pericūli bellum parāre, et maxīmē ea, quae ad usum navium pertīnent, providēre instituunt; hoc majōre spe, quōd multūm naturā locī confidēbant. 13 Pedestria

---

\( a \) § 123, R.  \( e \) § 109, 2.  \( m \) § 28, Foot note, t
\( b \) § 116, Obs. 4.  \( h \) § 149, Obs. 1.  \( n \) § 140, 5.
\( c \) 32, 3.  \( i \) § 140, 1, 3d, &  \( o \) 37, 2d, 4, &
\( d \) 112, 5.  \( j \) § 137, Obs. 1.  \( Note. 1. \)
\( e \) 100, 2.  \( k \) 30, 2.  \( p \) § 121, Obs. 2.
\( f \) § 103, Obs. 2.  \( l \) 90, 1.  \( q \)
esse itinera concisa a estuariis, 1 navigationem d impeditam a propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant: 2 neque b nostros exercitus d propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse, confidiebant: ac jam, ut omnia contra 3 opinionem accidissent, c tamen se d plurimum navibus posse: e Romanos d neque ulla facultatem habere e navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, f vada, portus, insulas novisse: g ac d longè aliam esse i navigationem in concluso mari, atque h in vastissimo atque aperissimo Oceano, perspiciebant. His initis consiliis, oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gesturum k constabat, quam l plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambilatios, Morinos, Diablantes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, acressunt.

10. 8 Erant hæ difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus; sed multa m Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: 6 injuria n retentorum o equitum Romanorum; 7 rebellio facta post deditionem; defectio n datis obsidibus; tot civitatum conjuratio; n in primis, 8 ne, hac parte neglecta, reliquæ nationes 9 idem p sibi licere arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intelligeret, omnes fere Gallos d10 novis rebus q studere, 1 et, ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, e omnes autem homines 11 natura libertati q studere, et 12 conditionem servitutis odisse; priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, r partiendum d sibi s ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

11. Itaque Titum Labiênum legatum in Trevisos, qui proximi Rheno flumini sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat;
Germanosque, qui a auxilio a Belgis arcessit b dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. c Publius Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodécim, et magnò numero equitâtus, in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur; d ac tantâ nationes conjungantur. d Quintum Titurium Sabinum legárum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolitas, Lexoviosque mittit, e qui eam manum distinendam f curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jussérat, præficit, et, cùm primùm possit, g in Venêtos proficisci jubet. Ipse eò pedestribus copiis contendit.

12. Erant eujusmődi ferè s situs oppidórum, ut, posita 4 in extremis lingúlis promontoriisque, neque pedibus 1 aditum habérrent, h bùm ex alto se aestus incitavisset, g quod bis accidit semper horárum viginti quatuor spatio, neque navibus, quòd, rursus 6 minuente aestu, 7 naves in vadis afflictarentur. k Ita s utraque re oppidórum oppugnatio impediebátur; ac, si quando magnitudine 1 opérís fortes superáti, extruso mari aaggére 1 ac molibus, atque his fermeoppidi mènibus m adaequáris, suis fortúnis 4 desperáre cæpérant, magnò numero navium 10 appulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habébant, sua deportábant omnia, seque in proxima oppida recipiébant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus 1 loci defendébant. Hac eo facilius magnam partem 9 aestátis faciébant, quòd nostræ naves tempestatibus 1 detinebantur; summáque erat vasto atque aperto mari, n magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portùbus, d difficutas navigandi.

13. Namque ipsórum naves ad hunc modum 12 factæ armatæque erant. Carinae 13 aliquanto planiores, quàm p nos-

\[ \text{a § 114, R. & Obs. 4.} \quad \text{f 108, 4.} \]
\[ \text{b 92, 2.} \quad \text{g § 140, Obs. 4.} \]
\[ \text{c § 140, 1, 3d.} \quad \text{h § 140, 1, 1st.} \]
\[ \text{d § 140, 1, 2d.} \quad \text{i § 123, R.} \]
\[ \text{e § 141, Obs. 2, 4th, k § 139, 2, & 76, 2.} \quad \text{l § 129, R.} \]
\[ \text{m § 126, R. III.} \quad \text{n § 136, Obs. 5.} \]
\[ \text{o § 131, R. XLI.} \quad \text{p § 149, R. Sup. rína} \]
trārum navium, quo faciliūs vada ac decessum āestus\(^1\) excipere possent\(^2\) prorae admōdum erectae, atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodātēs: navies totae factae ex robōre,\(^2\) ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam: \(^3\) transtra \(^3\) pedalibus in latitudinem tradībus\(^3\) confixa clavis ferreis, \(^4\) digitī pollicis crassitudine: \(^4\) anchōrāe, pro funibus, ferreis catēnis revinctēs: \(^5\) pelles pro velis, alutāque tenuiter confectae, sive propter lini inopiam atque ejus usūs inscientiam, sive eo,\(^7\) quod est magis verismile, quōd tantas tempestātes \(^7\) Oceānī tantosque impētus ventōrum sustinēri,\(^8\) ac tanta onera navium \(^8\) veli non satis commōdē, arbitrabantur. \(^7\) Cum his navibus nostreae classi\(^1\) ejusmōdi congressus erat, ut una celeritāte\(^7\) et pulsu remōrum præstāret,\(^8\) reliqua, pro loci naturā, pro vi tempestātum, illis\(^1\) essent aptēra et accommodatiōra: \(^3\) neque enim his\(^1\) nostrae rostro\(^3\) nocēre potērant; tanta in eis erat fērmitūdō: neque propter altitudinem facilē telum adjiciēbātur; et eādem de causā minus commōdē\(^1\) copūlis\(^3\) continebantur. Accedēbat, ut, cūm\(^1\) sēvīre ventus cepisset et se vento dedissent, et\(^6\) tempestātem ferrent faciliūs, et\(^6\) in vadis consistērent\(^7\) tutiūs, et, ab āestu derelictae, nihil\(^7\) saxa et cautes timērent: quārum rerum omnium nostris navibus\(^5\) casus erant extimescendi.

14. Complurībus expugnātīs oppidīs, Cæsar, ubi intellexit, frustra tantum labōrem\(^6\) sumi, neque hostium fugam\(^5\) captis oppidīs reprīmi, \(^3\) neque his nocēri posse,\(^4\) statuat expectandum classem. Quae ubi convenit, ac primūm ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentae et viginti naves eōrum\(^1\) paratissimae, atque omni genēre\(^6\) armōrum ornatissimae, profectae ex portu, nostris\(^1\) adversae constitērunt: neque satis

\(^{a}\) § 140, 1.  
\(^{b}\) § 123, Obs. 2.  
\(^{c}\) 112, 7.  
\(^{d}\) § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.  
\(^{e}\) § 124, 3.  
\(^{f}\) § 129, R.  
\(^{g}\) § 145, R. LVIII.  
\(^{h}\) 94, 3.  
\(^{i}\) § 112, R. II.  
\(^{k}\) § 123, R.  
\(^{l}\) § 111, R.  
\(^{m}\) § 112, R. V.  
\(^{n}\) § 129, R.  
\(^{o}\) 124, 1.  
\(^{p}\) § 140, 1, 4th.  
\(^{q}\) § 122, Obs. 6.  
\(^{r}\) § 126, Obs. 3.  
\(^{s}\) § 113, R. & Obs. 1.
Bruto, qui classi præerat, vel tribünis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attribütæ, constabat, quid agerent, aut quam rationem pugnae, insistērent. Rostro enim nocēri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitātis, tamen has altitūdō puppium ex barbaris navibus superābat; ut neque ex inferiōre loco satīs commōdē tela adjici possent, et missa ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magnō usui res preparata a nostris, falces præcūtæ, insertae affixaque longuriiis, non absimili formā muralium falcium. His cūm funes, qui antennae ad malos destinābant, comprehensī adductīque erant, navigio remis incitāto prærumpebantur. Quibus abscissis, antennae necessariō concidēbant, ut, cūm omnis Gallīcis navibus spe in velis armamentisque consistēret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium uno tempōre eriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen posītum in virtūte, quà nostri milītes facīlē superābant, atque eo magis, quōd in conspectu Cæsāris atque omnis exercītūs res gerebātur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latēre posset: omnes enim colles ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercītū tenebantur.

15. Dejectis, ut diximus, antennis, cūm singulas binæ ac ternae naves circumstetērant, milītes summā vi transcendērē in hostium naves contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarīs sērī animadvertērunt, expugnātis compluribus navibus, cūm ei rei nullum reperirētur auxilium, fugāe salūtem petēre contendērunt: ac, jam conversis in eam partem navibus, quō ventus sērēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquilliūtas, extītīt, ut se ex loco movēre non possent. Quæ quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maximē fuit opportūna: nam singulas nostri consectāti expugnavērunt, ut perpaucē
ex omni numéro, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenérint, cùm a ab horá ferè quartá usque ad solis occultum pugnaré tur.

16. Quo b pælio bellum Venetórum totiusque orbis mari- tii-mæ conjectum est. Nam, cùm omnis Juventus, omnes etiam gravióris ætatis, c in quibus aliqua consilii d aut dignitátis fuit, eò convenérent; tum, navium quod e ubique fuit, unum in locum coëgérant: quibus f amissis, reliqui, neque quò se recipérent neque quemadmödum oppida defendérunt, f habébant. Itáque se suáque omnia Cæsari dedidérunt. 2 In quos eo graviús Cæsar vindicandum b statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbáris jus legatórum conservaretur. I Itáque, omni senátu f necáto, reliquis g sub corónâ vendidit.

17. Dum hæc in Venétis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Cæsáre accépérat, in fines Unel- lórum pervénit. His præerat Virídovix, ac summam imperii tenébat eàrum omnium civitátum, quæ defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coëgerat. 4 Atque his paucis diēbus k Aulerci Eubòvices, Lexoviíque, senátu f suo interfecit, quòd auctóres belli esse nólebant, portas clausérunt seque cum Viridovice conjunxérunt; magnáque præterea multitúdo undique ex Galliâ perditòrum homínum latronumque convenérent, quos spes prædandi, studiumque bellandi; ab agricultúra et quotidiano labore revocábant. Sabinus idoneo l omnibus rebus loco m castris se sé tenébat, cùm Viridó- vix contra eum dúrum millium spatio consédisset, quotidié- que productis copiis f pugnandi potestàtem facéret; n ut jam non solùm hostibus a in contentiónem Sabinus veníret, o sed etiam nostrórum militum vocibus 6 nonnihil carperétur: tan- tamque opiniónum timóris præbuit, ut jam ad vallum cas- trórum hostes accédère audérent. p Id eá de causá faciébat,
quod cum tantâ multitudine hostium, præsertim ēo absente, qui summam imperii tenēret, nisi æquo loco, aut opportunitāte ali quà data, legāto dimicandum non existimābat.


Quod ubi audītum est, conclamant omnes, occasionem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse, 5 ad castra iri oportēre. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīni cunctatio, perfūgē confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, cui rei parum diligentur ab iis erat provisum, spes Venetici belli, et quod fere libenter homīnes id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus adductī, non priūs Viridovīcem reliquoque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quàm ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā re concessā, lēti, ut explorātā victoriā, sarmentīs-virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum editus, et paulātim ab imo acclivis circēter passus mille. Huc magnō cursu contendērunt, ut quàm minimum spatii ad se colligendos armandosque Romānīs darētur, examinatique pervenerunt. Sabīnus, suos hortātus, cupiēntībus signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea, quæ fērēbant, onēra, subitō duābus portis erup-
tiōnem fīri jubet. Factum est opportūtāte loci, hostium inscientiā ac desfatigatiōne, virtūte militūm, superiōrum pugnārum exercitatiōne, ut ne unum quidem nostrōrum impētum ferrent, a ac statim terga vertērent. Quos b impeditos 1 intēgris viribus c militēs nostri consecūti, magnum numērum eōrum occidērunt; reliquos equēs consectāti, paucos, qui ex fugā evasērant, reliquērunt. Sic, uno tempōre, et e de navāli pugnā 2 Sabinus, et de Sabīni victoriā Cæsar certior factus; civitātēsque omnes se statim Titurio dedidērunt. Nam, ut f ad bella suscipienda 3 Gallōrum alācer ac promītus est anīmus, sic mollis ac 3 minimē resistens ad calamitātes perferendas g mens eōrum est.

20. Eōdem fere tempōre, Publius Crassus, cūm in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quā pars, h ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum latitudīne, i et multitudīne homīnum, 4 ex tertiā parte Galliāe est æstimanda, cūm intellīgēret in his locis sibi k bel lum gerendum, ubi paucis antē annis Lucius Valerius Præconinus, legātus, exercītu pulso, interfēctus esset, l atque unde Lucius Manilius, proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset, l b non mediōcrem sibi diligentiam m adhibendam n intellīgēbat. Itāque re frumentāriā provisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparāto, o multis prāterea viris fortībus Tolōsā, p Carcasōne, et Narbōne, quāe sunt civitātes Galliāe Provinciāe, finītūmā his regionibus, nominātim evocātis, in Sotītām fines exercitum introductīvit. Cujus adventu cognīto, Sotītēs, magnis copiis coactis, equitātūque, o quo plūrimùm valēbant, in itinēre agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre prōelium commisērunt: deinde, equitātu suo pulso, atque insequentiōbus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocāvērant, ostendērunt. Hi, nostros disjectos adorti, prōelium renovārunt.

a § 140, 1, 4th. f 124, 20. l § 141, Obs. 8.
b 38. g 112, 7. m § 143, R.
c § 129, R. h 37, 2d, 4, Note. 1. n 108, 4.
d 105. i § 128, R. o § 98, Obs. 4.
e 124, 1. k § 147, R. LXI. p § 136, R. LII.
21. Pugnātum est diu atque acrīter, cūm Sotiātes, superiōribus victorīis \textsuperscript{a} freti, in suā \textsuperscript{b} virtūte totius Aquitaniae saltem posītum putārent; \textsuperscript{c} nostri autem, quid sine imperatōre, et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescēntūlo duce,\textsuperscript{d} efficēre possent, perspici cupērent.\textsuperscript{e} Tandem, confecti vulneribus, hostes terga vertēre.\textsuperscript{e} Quorum\textsuperscript{f} magno numero interfecit, Crassus ex itinēre oppidum Sotiātum oppugnāre cēpit. Quibus\textsuperscript{g} fortīter resistērībus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, aliās eruptionē tentātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggērem\textsuperscript{h} vineasque actīs (\textsuperscript{i} cujus rei\textsuperscript{b} sunt longē peritiissīmi Aquitāni, propterēa quōd multis locīs apud eos \textsuperscript{2} earērie sectūrā sunt), ubi dili-gentīa nostrōrum\textsuperscript{3} nihil\textsuperscript{1} his rebus profīcī posse\textsuperscript{k} intellexērunt, legātōs ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā\textsuperscript{f} re impetrātā, arma tradere jussi, faciunt.

22. Atque, in ēa re omnium nostrōrum intentis anīmis, aliā ex parte oppīdī Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenēbat, cum sexcentis devōtīs, quos illī soldurīos appellānt (\textsuperscript{4} quorum haec est conditīo, uti omnībus in vitā commōdis\textsuperscript{i} unā cum his fruantur,\textsuperscript{m} quorum se amicitia\textsuperscript{o} dediderint; \textsuperscript{n} si quid iis per vim accidat, ut eundem casum unā ferant,\textsuperscript{m} aut\textsuperscript{sibī} mortem conscīscant:\textsuperscript{m} neque adhuc homīnum memorīa repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecēt, cujus se amicitia\textsuperscript{o} devovisset, mortem recusāret),\textsuperscript{p} cum iis Adcantuannus, eruptionēm facēre conātus, clamōre ab eā parte munitiōnis sublāto, cūm ad arma militēs concurrīssent,\textsuperscript{c} vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset,\textsuperscript{e} repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eādem deditiōnis conditīōne\textsuperscript{4} uterētūr,\textsuperscript{s} ab Crasso impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs, Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum verō\textsuperscript{6} barbīri commōtī, quōd oppīdum,\textsuperscript{7} et natūrā\textsuperscript{s} locī et manu\textsuperscript{s} munītum,
paucis diebris, quibus eò ventum erat, expugnatum cognovérant, legatós quoquo-versus dimittére, conjuráre, obsídes inter se dare, copias paráre cæpérunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitátes legáti, quæ sunt citerioris Hispaniæ, finitímae Aquitaniæ: inde auxilia ducesque accessunt. Quorum adventu magná cum auctoritáte, et magná cum homínum multitúdine, bellum gerére conantur. Duces verò iii deliguntur, qui una cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos fuérant, summamque scientiam rei militáris habére existimabantur. Hi consuetudine Popúli Romání loca capère, castra muníre, commetáitus nostros interclúdere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguítem non facíle didúci, hostem et vagári et vias obsidére et castris satis præsidii relinquére, ob eam causam minus commodè frumentum comematumque sibi supportári; in dies hostium numerum augéri; non cunctandum existimavit, quin pugná decentaret. Hác re ad consilium delatá, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, postérum diem pugnæ constituit.

24. Primà luce, productis omnibus copiis, duplíci acie institútâ, auxiliis in medium aciem conjectis, quid hostes consilií caperent expectábatur. Illi, et si propter multitúdimem, et vetérem belli gloriam, paucitatemque nostrórum, se tutò dimicáturos existimábant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeáti interclúsó, sine ullo vulneré victoriá potiri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Románi sese recipere cæpíssent, impeditos in agrímine et sub sacrínis, inferiöres animó, adoríri cogitábant. Hoc consilio probató ab dúcibus, productis Romanórum copiis, sese castris tenebant. Hác re perspectá Crassus, cùm suá cunctatiöne atque opinioöe timóris hostes nostros milites alacri-

---

*§ 131, R. XLI. Obs. 3.*
*§ 131, R. XLI.*
*§ 140, 5.*
*67, 5, Note.*
*94, 3.*
*96, 2.*
*100, 1.*
*§ 96, R. XII.*
*§ 98, Obs. 6.*
*§ 108, R. XII.*
*§ 126, R. III.*
*§ 140, 2.*
*§ 128, R.*
*§ 111, R.*
*§ 140, 3.*
*§ 131, R.*
*§ 106, R. VIII.*
*§ 136. Obs. 5, (in.)*
ores ad pugnandum\(^a\) effecissent;\(^b\) atque omnium voces audirentur,\(^b\) expectâri\(^c\) diutius non oportære, quin \(^d\) ad castra iretur;\(^c\) cohortâtus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cùm ali\(^e\) fossas complîrent,\(^b\) ali\(^e\) multis telis conjectis, defensores vallo\(^f\) munitionibusque depellîrent, auxilaresque, quibus\(^g\) ad pugnam non multûm Crassus confidebat, lapidibus\(^h\) telisque subministrandis,\(^i\) et ad aggîrem cessâtibus comîtandis, speciem atque opinione pugnantium\(^k\) præbèrent;\(^b\) cùm item ab hostibus \(^1\) constanter ac non timîdè pugnaretur;\(^b\) telâque ex loco superiôre missa non frustra accidîrent;\(^b\) equites, circumâtis hostium castris, Crasso renunciavêrunt, non ëándem esse diligentiâ ab \(^2\) decumânà portâ castra\(^1\) munita, facilemque aditum habërè.

26. Crassus, equitum præfectos cohortâtus, ut magnís præmîis\(^h\) pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperâtûm, educitis quatuor cohortiibus, quæ, præsidio\(^m\) castris\(^m\) relictâ, \(^3\) intrîtæ ab labóre erant, et \(^4\) longiôre\(^n\) itinère\(^h\) circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent,\(^o\) omnium oculus méntibusque ad pugnam intentis, celerître ad eas, quas diximus, munitiônes pervenèrent, atque, his prorûtis, priùs in hostium castris constiterunt, quâm \(^5\) planè ab iis vidêri,\(^r\) aut, quid reip germanè,\(^s\) cognoscì\(^t\) posset. Tum vero, clamôre ab ea parte audîto, nostri redintegrâtis viribus,\(^h\) quod\(^s\) plerumque in spe victoriae accidère consuêvit, acrius impugnâre cæpèrent. Hostes undique circumventi, desperâtis omnibus rebus,\(^i\) se per munitiônes dejicère et fugâ\(^h\) salûtem petère\(^6\) intende-runt. Quos\(^u\) equitâtus apertissìmis campis\(^v\) consectâtus,
ex millium quinquaginta numero, quae\textsuperscript{a} ex Aquitani\ae\ Can-
tabrisque convenisset\textsuperscript{b} constabat, vix quartâ parte relictâ
\textsuperscript{1} multâ\textsuperscript{c} nocte\textsuperscript{d} se in castra recēpit.

27. Hác auditâ pugnā\textsuperscript{e}, magna pars Aquitaniae sese Cras-
so\textsuperscript{f} dedidit, obsidesque ulterum misit: quo\textsuperscript{g} in numero fuērunt
Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Preciāni, Vocātes, Tarusātes, Elusā-
tes, Garītes, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzātes, Cocosātes. Paucae
ultimae nationes, anni tempore\textsuperscript{h} confise, quod hiems subē-
rat, hoc facere neglexērunt.

28. Eodem ferè tempore\textsuperscript{i} Cæsar, etsi prope exacta jam
æstas erat, tamen, quod, omni Galliā\textsuperscript{j} pacatā, Morīni Menap-
ique\textsuperscript{k} superērant, qui\textsuperscript{l} in armis essent,\textsuperscript{k} neque\textsuperscript{l} ad eum
unquam legātos de pace misissent,\textsuperscript{k} arbitrātus, id bellum ce-
leriter confici posse, eò exercitum adduxit: \textsuperscript{3} qui longè alia
ratione, ac reliquim Galli, bellum agere instituuerunt. Nam
quod intelligēbant, maximae nationes,\textsuperscript{m} quae praelio conten-
dissent,\textsuperscript{o} pulsas\textsuperscript{b} superatasque esse,\textsuperscript{b} \textsuperscript{4} continentessque silvas
ac paludesc habēbant, eò se suāque omnia contulērunt. Ad
quarum\textsuperscript{g} initium silvārum cum Cæsar pervenisset,\textsuperscript{p} castrae-
que munīre instituisset,\textsuperscript{p} neque\textsuperscript{l} hostis interim visus esset,\textsuperscript{p}
dispersis in opere nostris,\textsuperscript{i} subitò ex omnibus partibus silvæ
evolavērunt et in nostros\textsuperscript{d} impētum fecērunt. Nostri\textsuperscript{g} ce-
leriter arma cepērunt, eosque in silvas repulērunt, et, com-
pluribus\textsuperscript{e} interfectis, \textsuperscript{5} longius\textsuperscript{f} impeditioribus locis secūti,
paucos ex suis desperiderunt.

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus\textsuperscript{g} Cæsar silvas cædēre instit-
tuit, et, ne, quis \textsuperscript{6} inermibus imprudentibusque militibus\textsuperscript{g} ab
latere impētus fieri\textsuperscript{m} posset,\textsuperscript{a} omnem eam\textsuperscript{7} materiam, quae

\begin{tabular}{llllll}
\textsuperscript{a} & § 145, R. & Obs. 2. & \textsuperscript{h} & § 121, Obs. 2. & \textsuperscript{p} & § 140, Obs. 4. \\
\textsuperscript{b} & 98, 2. & & \textsuperscript{i} & 109, 2. & & \textsuperscript{q} & 19, 2. \\
\textsuperscript{c} & 17, 1. & & \textsuperscript{k} & § 141, R. V, (soli.) & & \textsuperscript{r} & 22, 1. \\
\textsuperscript{d} & § 131, R. XL. & & \textsuperscript{l} & § 93, 1. & & \textsuperscript{s} & § 131, R. XLI. \\
\textsuperscript{e} & 109, 2. & & \textsuperscript{m} & § 87, 6. & & \textsuperscript{t} & § 126, R. III. \\
\textsuperscript{f} & § 123, R. & & \textsuperscript{n} & § 145, R. & & \textsuperscript{u} & § 140, 1, 2d \\
\textsuperscript{g} & 38. & & \textsuperscript{o} & § 141, Obs. 7. & &
\end{tabular}
erat cæsa, 1 conversam ad hostem collocābat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incredibīli celeritāte 2 magnō spatio 3 paucis diēbus 4 confecto, cūm jam pecus atque 5 estra 6 impedita ab nostrīs tenerentur, 7 ipsī 8 densiōres silvas petērent; ejusmōdi sunt tempestātes consecūtae, utī opus necessariō intermitterētur, 9 et, continuatiōne 10 imbrīum diūtius 4 sub pelliībus milītes continēri 11 non possent. 5 Itā- que vastātis omnībus eōrum agrīs, 3 vicis ædificiīisque incensis, Cæsar exercītum reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviīs- que, reliquis item civitātībus, 5 quae proxīmē bellum fecérant, in hibernis collocāvit.

\[a \text{§} 129, \text{R.} \quad d \text{17, 2.} \quad e \text{§} 140, \text{1, 1st.} \]
\[b 109, 2. \quad e \text{§} 140, \text{Obs. 4.} \quad h 87, 6. \]
\[c \text{§} 131, \text{R. XLI.} \quad f 32, 3. \]
BOOK IV.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. War with the Usipetes and Tenchtheri—Chap. 1-15. II. Caesar's bridge over the Rhine, and his crossing into Germany—Chap. 16-19. III. Caesar passes into Britain.—A battle—surrender of the Britains, and subsequent revolt.—Chap. 20-36. IV. War with the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 37-38.

1. Aea, quae secuta est, hieme, a qui fuit annus b Cneio Pompeio, c Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germâni, et item Tenchthéri, magna cum multitudine hominum, flumen Rhe-num transierunt, non longè a mari, d quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quòd, ab Suevis complures annos e exagitati, bello premebantur et agricultüra d prohibebantur. Suevorum gens est longè maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum e omnium. Hi centum pagos habère dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula f millia armatorum bellandi causâ ex sinibus edücent. Reliqui, g qui domi manserint, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remânant. Sic neque agricultüra, g nec ratio atque usus belli, intermissitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est; neque longiüs anno h remanère uno in loco incolendi causâ licet. Neque multûm frumentum, i sed maximam partem k lacte atque pecore l vivunt, multûmque sunt in venationibüs; quæ res et cibi genère, l et quotidianà exercitatiöne, et libertate vitae (quòd, a puëris m nullo officio aut disciplinâ assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntâtem faci-ant), n et vires alit, et immâni corpœrum magnitudine n hom-înes effict. Atque in eam o se consuetudînem adduxérunt,

---

a § 131, R. XL.  
b § 110, Obs. 1, & 2.  
c § 131, R. XI.  
d § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)  
e § 106, Obs. 3, (gens)  
f 26, 1.  
g § 141, R. III.  
h § 120, R.  
i § 121, Obs. 2.  
j § 136, Obs. 5, (Sc.)  
k § 136, Obs. 5, (cundum.)  
l § 129, R.  
m § 140, Obs. 2.  
n § 106, R. VII. &  
o § 31, Obs. 2, &  
p 6, 1.  
q 28, 1.
ut locis frigidissimis, neque vestitūs, praeter pelles, habeant quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corpōris pars aperta), et laventur in fluminibus.

2. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello cepērunt, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent: quinetiam jumentis, qui-bus ināximē Gallia delectātur, quāque impenso parant pretio, Germani importātis non utuntur: sed quae sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, hæc quotidiānā exercitatiōne, summi ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Equestribus praeliis sāpe ex equis desiliunt, ac pedibus prēliantur; equosque eōdem remanēre vestigio assuefaciunt; ad quos se celeriōter, cūm usus est, recipiunt: neque eōrum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur, quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum, quamvis pauci, adīre audent. Vinum ad se omnīno importāri non sinunt, quod esse ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines, atque effemināri, arbitrantur.

3. Publicē maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissimē a suis finibus vacāre agros: hac re signifiōrī, magnum numerum civitatiōne suam vim sustinēre non posse. Itaque, unā ex parte, a Suevis, circīter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubīi (quorum fuit civitās ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanōrum), et paulo quam sunt ejusdem generis cērēi humanōres; propterea quōd Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatóres ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitātem Gallīcis sunt morībus assuefacci. Hos cūm Suēvi, multis sāpe bellis experti, propter amplitūdīnem gravitatemque civitatiōnis, finibus expellēre non potuissent, tamen vectigāles sibi fecērunt, ac multō humiliōres insirmioresque redegērunt.
4. In eādem causā fuĕrunt Usipĕtes et Tenchṭhēri, quos supra dixĭmus, qui complūres annos a Suevōrum vim sustinuĕrunt; ad extrēmum b tamen, agris c expulsi, et multis Germaniāe locis d triennium a vagāti, ad Rhenum pervenērunt: quas e regiones Menapii incolēbant, et ad utramque ripam flūmīnis agros, ãdificiā, vicosque habēbant; sed tantā multitūdīnis adītu f perterrītī, ex his ãdificiis, quā trans flumen habuĕrunt, demigrāvērunt, et, cis Rhenum dispositīs præsidīis, s Germānos transīre prohibēbant. Illī, omnia expertī, cūm neque vi f contendēre propter inopiam, neque clam transīre propter custodias Menapiōrum, possent, h revertī se in suas sedes regionesque simulāvērunt; et, 4 trīdui viam progressī, rursus revertērunt, atque, omni hoc itinere unā nocte equītātu i confectō, inscio inopinantesque Menapiōs oppressērunt, qui, de Germanōrum discessu per exploratōres certōres factī, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigrāvērunt. His s interfectīs, navibusque eōrum occupātīs, s priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citra Rhenum quīēta in suis sedībus erat, certior fīrēt, k flumen transitum, atque, omnībus eōrum ãdificiis e occupātīs, s reliquam partem a hiēmis se eōrum copiis aluĕrunt.

5. His de rebus Cæsār certior factus, et e infirmitātem Gallōrum verītus, l quōd sunt in consiliis capiendīs mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus m student, 7 nihil his n commiṭten-dum existimāvit. 8 Est autem hoc Gallīcāe consuetūdīnis, o utē et viatōres, etiam invītos, consistēre cogant; p et, quod quisque eōrum de quāque re audiērī n aut cognovērīt, quæ-rant; p et mercatōres in oppīdis vulgus circumsistat, p quibusque ex regionībus veniant, q quasque ibi res cognovērint, pronunciāre cogant. P His rumoribus atque auditionibus per-

a § 131, R. XLI. e § 109, 2. m § 112, R. V. b § 19, (tempus.) h § 140, Obs. 4. n § 126, R. III. c § 136, R. LII. i § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.) o § 108, R. d § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) k § 140, 4. p § 145, Obs. 5. e 37, 2d, 4, Note 1. l 106, 1. q § 140, 5. f § 129, R.
mōtī, de 1 summis sēpe rebus consilia inuent, quorum a eos 
2 e vestigio pœnitēre necesse est, 3 cūm incertis rumoribus b 
3 serviant, c et plerique ad voluntātem eōrum fita respondeant. c

6. Quā consuetudine cognitātā, Cēsar, 4 ne d graviōri bello e 
3 occurrēret, maturius quām consuerat ad exercitum proficisci 
tur. Eō cūm venisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, 5 facta  
cognōvit; missas f legatiōnes a nonnullis civitātibus ad Ger-
3 mānos, invitatosque f eos, utī ab Rhenō discedērent; g om-
3 niāque quae postulāssent, h ab se fore parāta. Quā i spe ad-
ducti Germānī latīūs jam vagabuntur, et in fines Eburōnum 
et Condrusōrum, qui sunt Trevirōrum clientes, pervenērant. 
Principūs Gallūs evocātīs, Cēsar ea quae cognōverat 6 dis-
simulanda k sibi l existimāvit, eorumque animis permulsis et 
confirmātīs, equitatuqūe imperāto, bellum cum Germānis 
gērē constitūt.

7. Re m frumentariā comparātā, equitibusque delectis, ite 
3 in ea loca facēre cēpit, quibus n in locis esse Germānos au-
dīēbat. A quibus cūm paucōrum diērum iter o abesset, le-
gāti ab his venērunt, quorum hāc fuit oratio: "Germānos p
3 neque priōres q Popūlo Romāno bellum inferre, neque tamen 
recusāre, r si laccēsantur, quin armis contendant; s quōd Ger-
3 manōrum consuetūdo hāc sit t a majoribus tradīta, quicum-
3 que bellum infērant, h 7 resistēre, neque deprecāri: hāc ta-
3 men dicēre, venisse f invītos, q ejectos domo." Si s suam gra-
tiam Romānī velint, posse eis utiles esse amīcos: vel sibi 
agros attribuānt, vel patientur g eos tenēre quos armis pos-
sedērint. * Sese unis Suēvis 10 concedēre, quibus ne Dii qui-
dem immortāles pares esse possint: reliquum quidem 11 in 
terris esse nemīnem, quem non superāre possint."

---

a § 113, Ex. II. b § 141, Obs. 8. p § 145, R. LVIII.
b § 112, R. V. i 38. q § 98, Obs. 10.
c § 140, Obs. 3. k § 108, 4. r 94, 3.
d § 140, 1, 2d. l § 126, Obs. 3. s § 140, 3.
e § 112, R. IV m 109, 2. t § 140, 6.
f 98, 2. n 37, 6, Note. 1. u § 136, R. LII.
g § 140, 1, 3d. o 132, R. XLII. v § 141, Obs. 3.
8. 1 Ad hæc Cæsar, quæ visum est, respondit; sed 2 exi-
tus fuit orationis: "Sibi a nullam cum his amicitiam esse
posse, si in Galliâ remanerent: neque 3 verum esse, qui b
suos fines tuëri non potuërint, c aliënos occupâre: 4 neque
ullos in Galliâ vacâre agros qui dari, tantæ præsertim multi-
tuëni, d sine inüriâ possint." Sed licëre, si velint, in Ubi-
orum finibus considère, quorum sint f legâti apud se, et de
Suevorum inüriiis querantur, f et a se auxilium petant: hoc
se ab ipsis impetrâturum. 78

9. Legâti hæc se ad suos relâturos 8 dixërunt, et, re delib-
erâtâ, post diem tertium ad Cæsarem reversûros: interea ne
propriûs se h castra movëret, i petiërunt. Ne id quidem k Cæ-
sar ab se impetrâri posse dixit: cognovërat enim, magnam
partem equitâtûs ab ipsis aliquot diëbus 4 antæ prædandi fru-
mentandique causâ ad Ambivarëtos trans Mosam missam.
Hos m expectâri equites, atque ejus rei causâ moram m inter-
pôni, arbitrabâtur.

10. Mosa profuit ex monte Vosëgo, qui est in finibus Lin-
gönum, 6 et, parte quâdam ex Rheno receptâ, quæ appellâ-
tur Vahûlis, n insulam effìcit Batavoûrum, neque longiûs ab
eo milîibus o passuum octoginta in Oceänûm transit. Rhe-
nûs autem orûtor ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incólunt, et longo
spatio p per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiûrum, Sequanûrum,
Mediomatricûrum, Tribocûrum, Trevirûrum citàtûs q furtur; f
et, ubi Oceânû 8 appropinquat, 6 in plures diffuit partes, mul-
tis ingentibusque insûlis effectis, quaurm pars magna a feris
barbarisquè nationibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt, qui pisci-
bus a atque ovis avium vivère existimântur), 7 multisquè cap
itûbus in Oceänûm influit.

a § 112, R. II.  b § 138, Obs. 5, (ad.)  c § 132, R. XLII.
b 37, (cos.)  i § 140, 1, 3d.  k § 98, Obs. 10.
c § 141, Obs. 3.  k 121, Note. 2.  l § 104, R.  
d § 126, R. III.  l § 131, R. XLI.  n § 112, R. IV.
e § 141, R. I. & Obs. 1.  m § 145, R.  o § 120, R. XXIV.
f § 141, Obs. 7.  n § 103, R.  p § 102, R. II.
s § 100, 2.  o § 121, Obs. 2.  q § 121, Obs. 2.
11. Cæsar cūm ab hoste non amplius passuum duodécim millibus abesset, ut erat constitūtum, ad eum legāti rever- tuntur: qui,\(^a\) in itinère congressi, magnopère, ne longiùs progrederētur,\(^b\) orābant. Cūm id non impetrāssent,\(^c\) petē- bant, utī ad eos equītes, qui agmen antecessissent, præmit- tēret,\(^d\) esoeque pugnā\(^e\) prohibēret; sibique utī potestātem facēret, in Ubios legātos mittendi: quorum\(^f\) si Prīncipes ac Senātus\(^g\) sibi jurejurando\(^h\) fidem fecissent, ea conditiōne,\(^i\) quæ a Cæsāre fεrrētur, se usūros ostendēbant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret.\(^j\) Hae omnia Cæsar \(^k\) eōdem illo pertinēre\(^l\) arbitrābatur, ut, tridui morā interpo- sitā, equītes eōrum, qui abessent,\(^m\) reverterentur:\(^n\) tamēn sese non longiùs millibus passuum quatuor aquatōnīs causā processūrum eo die dixit: huc postēro die\(^o\) quām frequenti- sīmi convenirent,\(^p\) ut de eōrum postulātis cognoscēret.\(^q\) In- tērīm ad præfectos, qui cum omni equitātū antecesserant, mittit, qui\(^r\) nunciarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent,\(^s\) et, si ipsi lacesserentur,\(^t\) sustinērent, quoad ipsa cum exercītu propīsi accessisset.\(^u\)

12. At hostes, ubi primūm nostros equītes conspexērunt, quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cūm ipsi non am- plius\(^v\) octingentos equītes habērent, quōd ii, qui frumentandī causā iērānt trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs,\(^w\) quōd legāti eōrum paulo ante a Cæsāre disces- sērant, atque is dies induciis\(^x\) erat ab eis petitus, impētu facto, celerītus nostros perturbāvērunt. Rursus resistentibus nostrīs,\(^y\) consuetūdīne suā\(^z\) ad pedes desiluērunt, subfossis- que equis, compluribusque nostriis dejectis, reliquis in fugam convecērunt, atque ita perterritos egērunt, ut non priūs fugā\(^{\sim}\) desistērent,\(^{\sim}\) quàm in conspectu agminīs nostri venissent.

\(^{a\text{39, 5.}}\)
\(^{b\text{§ 140, 1, 3d.}}\)
\(^{c\text{§ 140, Obs. 4.}}\)
\(^{d\text{§ 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)}}\)
\(^{e\text{39.}}\)
\(^{f\text{§ 129, R.}}\)
\(^{g\text{§ 121, R. XXVI.}}\)
\(^{h\text{96, 2.}}\)
\(^{i\text{§ 141, Obs. 3.}}\)
\(^{j\text{§ 140, 4.}}\)
\(^{k\text{§ 140, 1, 2d.}}\)
\(^{l\text{§ 131, R. XL.}}\)
\(^{m\text{§ 141, Obs. 2, 4th.}}\)
\(^{n\text{§ 140, 1, 1st.}}\)
\(^{o\text{§ 120, Obs. 3}}\)
\(^{p\text{109, 1.}}\)
\(^{q\text{§ 114, R. & Obs. 4.}}\)
\(^{r\text{§ 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)}}\)
In eo prælio ex equitibus a nostris interfectur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso, Aquitanus, b amplissimo genere b natus, cujus avus in civitate suâ regnum obtinuerat, amicus c ab Senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cùm fratri d interclúsù ab hostibus auxilium ferret, e illum ex pericullo f eripuit: ipse, equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissimè restitit. Cùm circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset, e atque id frater, qui jam prælio g excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo h obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc facto prælio, Cæsar neque jam sibi h legátos i audiendo, k neque conditiones accipiendas k arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petitâ pace, ultro bellum intulissent: i expectare m verò, dum hostium copiæ augerentur, n equitatusque reverterētur, 4 summæ dementiæ o esse p judicábât; et, cognitâ Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno prælio auctoritātis q essent consecūti, sentiēbat: quibus r ad consilia capienda nihil s spatii dandum exsistimabat. Hic constituētis rebus, et consilio cum legátis et quæstōre communicāto, 5 ne quem diem pugnæ præterminēret, opportunissima res accidit, quòd postridie eum dies s manē, eàdem et perfidiâ et simulātōne usi Germāni, frequentes, 6 omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibītis, ad eum in castra venērunt; simul, ut dicebātur, 7 sui purgandi causā, quòd 8 contrà atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent, prælimium pridie commississent; simul ut, si quid posissent, de induciis fallendo impetrārent. 9 Quos sibi Cæsar oblátos gavisus, illico retinēri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quòd recenti prælio perterrītum esse existimābat, agmen subsēqui jussit.

a § 107, Obs. 8. g § 136, R. LII. n § 140, 4. b § 119, R. & 6, 5. h § 126, Obs. 3. o § 108, R. c § 103, R. i § 145, R. (esse.) p § 94, 3. d § 123, R. k 108, 4. q § 106, R. VIII. e § 140, Obs. 4. l § 141, Obs. 8. r 39, &§126, R. III. f § 123, Obs. 1. m§ 144, R. LVI. s § 135, XLVI.
14. Acie tripli-ci instituitâ, et celeriter octo millium\textsuperscript{a} itinere confecto, priùs ad hostium castra pervenit, quàm, quid ageretur, \textsuperscript{b} Germani sentire possent.\textsuperscript{c} Qui,\textsuperscript{d} omnibus rebus subito perterrítī, et celeritate adventūs nostri, et discessu suorum, neque consili habendi\textsuperscript{e} neque arma capiendi\textsuperscript{f} spatio dato,\textsuperscript{1} perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educère, an castra defendère, an fugâ salûtem petère, præstāret.\textsuperscript{b} Quorum\textsuperscript{g} timor cùm fremitu et concursu\textsuperscript{2} significarētur, milîtes nostri,\textsuperscript{3} pristīni dīēi perfidiā incitāti, in castrâ irrupērunt. Quorum\textsuperscript{h} qui\textsuperscript{i} celeriter arma capère potuērunt, paulisper nostri restitērunt, atque inter carros impedimentâque prælium commisērunt: at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulie- rumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transiērunt), passim fugère cēpit; ad quos\textsuperscript{j} consequentivos Cæsâr equitātum misit.

15. Germani, post tergum\textsuperscript{k} clamōre audīto, cùm suos\textsuperscript{l} interficī vidērent, armīs abjectīs, signisque militari bus relictīs, se ex castris ejecerunt: et, cùm\textsuperscript{m} ad confluentem Mosæ et Rhenī perveniērunt,\textsuperscript{6} reliquā fugā desperātā, magno numere interfecēro, reliqui se in flumen præcipitavērunt, atque ibi timōre,\textsuperscript{l} lassitudīne,\textsuperscript{j} vi fluminīs oppressī, perierunt. Nostri ad unum\textsuperscript{n} omnes incolūmes, perpaucis vulnerātis,\textsuperscript{7} ex tanti belli timōre, cùm hostium númerus capítum quadrīngentōrum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Cæsâr his,\textsuperscript{o} quos in castris retinuērât,\textsuperscript{8} discendēndi potestātem fecit: illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallōrum verēti,\textsuperscript{9} quorum agros vexavērunt, remanēre se apud eum velle dixerunt. His\textsuperscript{p} Cæsâr libertātem concessit.

16. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Cæsar statuit, sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quorum\textsuperscript{p} illa fuit justissima, quòd, cùm vidēret, Germanōs tam facilē impelli,
ut in Galliam venīrent, 1 suis quoque rebus 2 eos timēre voluit, cūm intelligērent, 2 et posse et audēre Popūli Romāni exercītum Rhenum transīre. 3 Accessit etiam, quōd illa pars equītātūs Usipētum et Tenchtherōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi, præandi 4 frumentandīque causā Mosam transīsse, neque prælio 4 interfuisse, post fugam suōrum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrōrum receperat seque cum iis conjunxėrat. Ad quos 6 cūm Cāsar nuncios misisset, qui 1 postulārent, eos, qui sī 7 Galliāeque bellum intulissent, sībi 7 dedērent, 6 respondērunt: "Popūli Romāni imperium Rhenum 1 finire: si, se invīto Germānos in Galliam transīre non aquum existimāret, 4 cur sui 7 quicquam 7 esse imperii 1 aut potestātis trans Rhenum postulāret?" 8 Ubīi autem, qui uni ex Transrhenānis ad Cāsarem legātos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dedērunt, magnopēre orābant, "ut sībi 7 auxilium ferret, 6 quōd gravīter ab Suēvis premerentur; 9 vel, si id facēre 5 occupationibus reipublicāe prohiberētur, exercītum modō Rhenum transportāret: 6 id 1 sībi 4 ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporīs satīs futūrum: tantum esse nomen atque opinīōnem ejus exercītūs, Ariovisto pulso, et hoc novissīmo praelio facto, etiam ad ultīnas Germanōrum natiōnes, ut opinīōne 6 et amicitīā Popūli Romāni tuti 9 esse possint." 9 Navium magnum copiam ad transportandum exercītum pollicebantur.

17. Cāsar his de causis, quas commemorāvi, Rhenum transīre decrevērat; sed navibus transīre, neque satis tum esse 4 arbitrabātur, 6 neque sua 7 neque Popūli Romāni dignitātīs 7 esse statuēbat. Itāque, etsi summa difficūltās faciēndi pontis 7 proponebātur, propter latitudīnem, rapiditātem, altitudīnemque flūminis, tamen id 1 sībi 4 contendendum, aut

---

1: § 140, 1, 1st.
2: § 123, R.
3: § 141, Obs. 7.
4: § 112, R. XVII.
5: § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.
6: § 129, R.
7: § 112, 1.
8: § 145, R.
9: § 103, Obs. 6.
10: § 112, R. I.
11: § 108, R. XII.
12: 51, 5.
13: § 106, R. VIII.
14: 29, 1.
15: § 140, 6.
16: § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
17: § 140, 6.
PLAN OF THE BRIDGE MADE OVER THE RHINE BY CAESAR, IN TEN DAYS.

A. Tigna bina sesquipedalia: Two piles each a foot and a half thick, joined together at the distance of two feet. H. One of the piles detached. K. Form of the two piles braced together. B. Two opposite piles similarly joined together, and at the distance of forty feet down the river from the other. C. Trabs bipedalis: Large beam two feet square, extending from the upper to the lower piles. I. The same beam detached. D. Fibulae bine: Two braces fastening each pair of piles together, as seen at L., one on each side, (atrimque) — the one below, supporting the beam, (trabs,) the other above it. M. Form of the brace detached. E E. Matertes: Timbers laid from beam to beam, (directa,) lengthwise of the bridge. N. Largurii: Spars laid across the timbers. O. Crates: Hurdles laid over the spars. F. Subliche: Stakes sunk in the river as buttresses, and fastened (constricta,) to each lower pair of piles. G. Alia subliche: Other stakes driven in above the bridge, and separate from it, as a fence against trunks of trees, &c. sent down the river.
aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. 1 Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. 2 Tigna bina 3 sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo præcūta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo 4 pedum duōrum inter se jungēbat. 5 Hae cūm 6 machinationibus 7 immissa in flumen defixērat, fistucisque 8 adgē- rat, 4 non sublicē modo 9 directa 10 ad perpendicūlum, sed prōna 7 ac fastigāta, ut secundum natūram fluminis procumbērent; 5 iis 8 item contraria bina, 3 ad eundem modum junc- ta, intervallo 4 pedum quadrāgēnām, ab inferiōre parte, con- tra vim atque impētum fluminis conversa statuēbat. 6 Hae- utrāque insūper bipedalibus trabibus 9 immissis quantum 1 eōrum tignōrum junctūra distābat, binis utrāque fibūlis 3 ab extrēmā parte, distinēbantur: 7 quibus 1 disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat opēris firmitudō, atque 8 ea 7 rerum natūra, ut, 9 quo 1 major vis aquae se inci- tavisset, 6 hoc 7 arctius illigāta tenerentur. 10 Hae directā ma- terie 7 injectā contextebantur, et 11 longuriis 4 cratibusque consernebantur: 12 ac nihilo secius sublicē et ad inferiōrem par- tem fluminis obliquē agebantur, quae, 13 pro pariēte subjectae, et cum omni opēre conjunctae, vim fluminis excipērent: 14 et aliae item supra pontem mediōcri spatio, 15 ut, siarbōrum trunci, sive naves 15 dejiciendi opēris essent a barbāris missae, his de- fensoribus 3 eōrum rerum vis minuerētur, 16a ponti 10 nocērent.

18. Diēbus 17 decem, 16 quibus materia cępta erat comportāri, omni opēre effecto, exercītus transducītur. Cæsar, 17 ad utramque partem pontis firmo præsidio 16 relictō, in fines Sī- gambrōrum contendit. Intērim a compluribus civitātibus ad eum legāti veniunt, 20 quibus 21 pacem atque amicitiam pe-
tentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adducit\(^a\) jubet, At Sigambri, ex eo tempore quo\(^b\) pons institui captus est, fugā comparātā, \(^1\) hortantibus iis\(^c\) quos ex Tenchthēris atque Usipetibus apud se habēbant, finibus\(^d\) suis-accesserant, suasque omnia exportāvērant, seque \(^2\) in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

19. Caesar, paucos dies\(^e\) in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicis aëdificiisque incensis,\(^f\) frumentisque succisis,\(^g\) se in fines Ubiōrum recepit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus. si ab Suevis premerentur,\(^h\) hac ab iis cognōvit: Suevos, posteaquam per exploratōres pontem fiēri comperissent,\(^i\) more suo concilio habito, nuncios in omnes partes dimissēs, uti de oppidis demigrārent,\(^k\) libēros, uxōres, suaque omnia in silvas deponērent,\(^k\) atque omnes qui arma ferre possent\(^l\) unum in locum convenīre:\(^k\) a hunc esse delectum medium \(^m\) ferē regionum eārum quas Suevi obtinērent:\(^n\) hic Romanōrum adventum expectāre atque ibi decertāre constituiisse.\(^o\) Quod ubi Cæsar compērit, omnibus his rebus conjectis, quorum reum causā transducēre exercitum constituērat, ut Germānis metum injicēret,\(^k\) ut Sigambros\(^j\) ulciscerētur,\(^k\) ut Ubios obсидiōne liberāre,\(^k\) diēbus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumtis,\(^s\) satis et ad laudem et ad utilitātem profectum\(^o\) arbitrātus, se in Galliam recepit, pontemque rescīdit.

20. Exigua parte æstātis reliquā, Cæsar, etsi in his locis, quōd omnīs Gallia ad septentriones vergit,\(^6\) matūræ sunt hiēmes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quōd, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis,\(^9\) hostibus nostris\(^r\) inde subministrāta auxilia intelligēbat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficēret,\(^x\) tamen magno sibi\(^u\) usui fore arbitrabātur, si modō insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca,

\(^a\) 90, 4.
\(^b\) § 131, R. XL.
\(^c\) 109, 1.
\(^d\) § 136, R. LII.
\(^e\) § 131, R. XLI.
\(^f\) 104, 1.
\(^g\) § 140, 4.
\(^h\) § 129, R.
\(^i\) § 140, 1, 2d.
\(^j\) § 141, Obs. 3.
\(^k\) § 97, R. Exp.
\(^l\) \(\text{Obs. 5, (in.)}\)
\(^m\) § 140, 6.
\(^n\) 93, 2.
\(^o\) 38, 4.
\(^p\) § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)
\(^q\) § 126, R. III.
\(^r\) § 114, R.
portus, aditus cognovisset: quae omnia ferè Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim 1 temere praeter mercatóres illò adit quisquam, 2 neque iis ipsis a quicquam, praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset b insulæ magnitúdo, neque quæ c aut quantæ c nationes incolèrent, b neque 3 quem c usum belli habèrent, b aut quibus c institútis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majórum navium multitúdinem idonei d portus, reperiére poterat.

21. Ad hæc cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitrátus e Caíum Volusínum, cum navi longà præmittit. Huic f mandat, uti, explorátis omnibus rebus, ad se quamprimum revertátur: g ipse cum omnibus copiis in Mórimos profiscícitur, quòd inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transjectus. Huc naves undique ex finitímis regionibus et, quam h superióre aestate ad Venetícum bellum fecerat, classem jubi conveniendum. i Inteðim, consilio ejus cognito et per mercatóres perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulæ civitátiibus ad eum legáti veniunt, qui policieantur k obsides dare, atque imperio l Popúli Románi obtémperáre. Quibus m audítis, liberalitér polliciérus, hortatusque ut 4 in eà sententia permanèrent, 8 eos domum n remittit, et cum his unà Commintium, quem ipse, Atrebatibus superátis, regem ibi constituérat, cujus et virtútem et consilium probábat, et quem sibi fidélem arbitrabátur, cujusque auctorités in ipsis regionibus magni o habebátur, mittit. Huic impérat, quas possit adeat b civitátes, 6horteturquè g ut Popúli Románi 6fídem sequantur; 5 sequé celeriter eò ventúrum nunciet. g Volusénus, perspectis regionibus, 7 quantum ei facultátis dari potuit, 6qui navi egrüdi ac se barbários committére non audéret, p quinto die ad Cæsárem revertébatur; quæque ibi perspexisset renunciat.

a § 126, R. XXXIII.  7 63, & § 123, R.  8 § 112, R. V.
b § 140, 5.  d e § 140, 1, 3d.  9 43.  10 § 130, 4.
c 48, & § 34, Obs. 1.  i 90, 4.  11 § 126, R. II.
d § 103, Obs. 2.  o 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  12 § 141, R. III.
e 106, 1.  k
DE BELLO GALlico.

22. Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandaruni a causâ morâtur, ex magnâ parte Morinòrum ad eum legâti venârent, qui b se 1 de superiöris tempôris consilio excusârent, b quôd homînes barbâri, et nostrae consuetudinis c imperîti, bellum Popûlo Româno fecissent, d seque ea, quæ imperâsset, e factûros pollicerentur. b Hoc sibi f satis opportûnè Cæsar acci-disse arbitrâtus, quôd neque post tergum hostem relinquerê volêbat, neque belli gerendi, a propter anni tempus, facultâtem habêbat, neque 2 has tantulârum rerum occupationes sibi h Britanniœ 1 anteponendas judicabat, magnum his k obsidum numêrum impérât. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recêpit. a Navibus circiter octoginta coactis contractisque, quot 3 satís esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium m longârum habêbat, quaestôri, legâtis, praefectis distribuit. Huc accedêbant octodécim onerarîæ naves, quæ ex eo loco ab n millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minûs in eundem portum pervenire possent. a Has equitûs distribuit; reliquum exercîtum Quinto Titurio Sabîno et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottæ, legâtis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legâti non venérant, deductum p dedit. Publíum Sulpitium Rûfum, legâtum, cum eo præsidio quod satís esse arbitrabâtur, portum tenère jussit.

23. His constitûtis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum 4 tempestâtèm, 4 tertiâ ferè vigiliâ s solvit, equitesque in ulter-iôrem portum progrêdi, r 6 et naves conscendère, r et se sequi r jussit: a quibus 4 cum id paulo tardius esset administrâtum, ipse 7 āorâ diei circiter quartâ cum primis navibus Britanniam attîgit, atque ibi in omnibus collîbus 8 exposîtas hostium

---

a 112, 5.
b § 141, Obs. 2, 4.
c § 107, R. IX.
d § 141, Obs. 7.
e § 141, Obs. 3.
f § 112, R. IV.
g § 145, R.
h § 126, Obs. 3.
i § 126, R. III.
j § 123, R. & 5, 1.
k § 123, R. & 5, 1.
l 46, 2.
m § 106, R. VIII. & Obs. 10.
no § 132, Obs. 5.
o § 140, 1.
q 107, 1.
r 90, 1.
s 38.
copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci hæc erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in littus telum adjici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequàquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquæ naves eò convenirent, ad horam nonam in anchòris expectavit. Intèrìm legàtis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quæ ex Volusèno cognósset, et quæ fìèri vellet, ostendit, monuit-que (ut rei militàris ratio, maximè ut marìtùmæ res postula- rent, ut quæ celèrem atque instabilem motum habèrent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo, et sublàtis anchòris, circìter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano lìttòris naves constituìt.


25. Quod ubi Cæsar animum advertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris insitiatior, et motus ad usum expeditor, paulum removéri ab onerariis navibus, et
DE BELLO GALlico.


a 90, 4. b § 114, R. c 109, 1. d 37, 3. e § 112, R. XVII. f 105, 2. g § 28,Obs. 5. h § 140, 1, 3d, & 121. i § 112, R. IV. j 87, 7. k § 99, Obs. 7. l § 136, R. LII. m 37, 7, Ncte. 2, & n 124, 13, (Sup. ac.)
equites 1 cursum tenère atque insulam capère non potuérant. Hoc unum ad pristínam fortúnam Cæsāri defuit.

27. Hostes prōlio superāti, simul atque se ex fugā recepérunt, statim ad Cæsārem legātos de pace misérunt: obsides datūros, quāque imperāssēt 2 sese factūros, pollícīti sunt. Unā cum his legātis Commius Atrēbas venit, quem 3 suprà demonstravēram a Cæsāre in Britanniam præmissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cūm ad eos 4 oratōris modo imperātōris mandāta perferret, comprehendērant, atque in vincūla conjecérant: tum, prōlio facto, remísērunt et in petendā pace ejus rei 4 culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignoscerētur, petivērunt. Cæsar questus, quōd, cum ultro in continentem legātis missīs pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignoscēre imprudentiā 6 dixit, obsidesque imperāvit: quorum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem, ex longinquioribus locis arcessītām, paucis diēbus 1 sese datūros dixērunt. Interea suos remigrāre in agros jussērunt, principesque undīque convenire, et se civitatesque suas Cæsāri commendāre cœpērunt.

28. His rebus pace confirmātā, post diem quartum, quātum est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodēcim, de quibus suprà demonstrātum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiōre portu lenī vento solvērunt. 10 Quae 1 cūm appropinquārent Britanniaë, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subitō coorta est, ut nulla eārum cursum tenère posset, sed alīae eōdem, unde erant prefectae, referrentur; alīae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, 11 quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum pericūlo dejicerentur: 12 quae 1 tamen, anchōris jactis cūm fluctibus completerunt, 13 necessariō adversā nocte in altum propectae, continentem petiērunt.

---

1 124, 18. 2 § 140, Obs. 4. 3 39, 6, or 1. 4 80, 1. 5 § 141, Obs. 7. 6 § 107, R. X. 7 § 112, R. V. 8 § 140, 1, 1st. 9 145, R. & 91, 4. 10 § 131, R. XXI. 11 136, Obs. 5, (ad.) 12 § 38. 13 § 147, R. LXII. 14 67, 5, Note.
29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset a luna plena, 1 qui b dies maritimōs aestus maxīmos in Oceāno efficere consuēvit; 2 nostrisque c id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempōre et longas naves, quibus d Ĉæsar exercitum transportandum curavērat, quasque ad anchōras erant delicātās, tempestas 4 afflictabat; neque ullā nostri f facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabātur. Complūrībus navībus g fractis, reliquēs cūm essent, funībus, ã anchōris, reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod h necesse erat accidēre, totius exercitūs perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant alīae, quibus reportāri possent; 1 et omnia deērant, quāe ad resiciendas eas usui k sunt, et, quōd omnībus h constābat hiemāri in Galliā oportēre, frumentum 6 his in locis in hiēmem provīsum non erat.

30. Quibus™ rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post prōlium factum ad ea, quāe jussērat Ĉæsar, facienda convenērunt, inter se collocūtī, cūm equītes n et naves et frumentum Romanīs de esse intellīgērunt, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exigūitāte cognoscerent, quāe hoc erant etiam angustīōra, quōd sinc impedimentis Ĉæsar legiōnes transportāverat, optīnum factu  p esse duxērunt, rebellīōne s factā, frumento 4 commeatūque nostros prohibēre, et 7 rem in hiēmem producēre, quōd, iis superātis, aut reditū q intercūlīsis, neminem postea belli inferendi causā in Britanniam transitūrum confidēbant. Itāque, rursus conjuratiōne f factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdēre, ac suos clam ex agris deducēre cōprérent.

31. "At Ĉæsar, etsi nondum eōrum consilia cognovērat, tamen et 8 ex eventu navium suārum, 9 et ex eo, quōd obsīdes dare intermisērant, fore r id, n quod accidit, suspicabātur.

---

a 140, 1, 4th.     b 99, Exc. 1. & 37, 4.     c 111, R.     d 129, R.     e 19, (locum.)

f 126, R. III.     g 109, 2.     h 37, 9, Note. 3.     i 141, Obs. 1.     k 114, Obs. 4.     l 113, R. & 19.     m 38, 3.

n 145, R.     o 112, R. I.     p 114, 2.     q 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)     r 100, 12.
Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et, quae gravissimè afflicte erant naves, eārum materiā atque āre ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportāri jubēbat. Itaque, cūm id summō studio a militibus administrārētur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigāri commōdē posset, effecit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetudine unā frumentum missā, quā appellabātur septima, neque ullā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interposītā, cūm pars homīnūm in agrīs remanerēt, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, ii, qui pro portis castrōrum in statīōne erant, Cāsāri renunciārunt, pulvērem majorem, quām consuetūdo ferret, in ea parte vidēri, quam in partem légio iter fecisset. Cāsar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliōquē novī a barbarīs initiō consiliī, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem pro- fiscisci, duas ex reliquis in statīōnem succedēre, reliquas armārī et confestim sese subōque jussit. Cūm paulō longius a castrīs processisset, suōs ab hostībus premī, atque agrē sustinēre, et, confertā legiōne, ex omnībus partibus tela conjici, anīmum advertis. Nam quōd, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes, huc nostros esse ventūros, noctū in silvis delituērant: tum dispersos, depositīs armīs, in metendo occupātos, subitō adorti, paucis interfēctis, reliquios incertīs ordinībus perturbāvērant: simul equitātū atque essēdis circumdeērant.

33. Genus hoc est ex essēdis pugnā: primō per omnes partes perequētānt, et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrōre equōrum, et strepitu rotārum, ordīnes plerumque perturbānt;
et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverint, ex essèdis desiliunt, et pedibus præliantur. Aurigæ interim paulātim ex prælio excédent, atque ita curru se collòcant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem pedītum, in præliis præstant: ac tantum usu quotidiäno et exercitatioine efficiunt, ut, in declivi ac præcipiti loco, inci-tatos equos sustinère, et brevi moderāri ac flectère, et per temōnem percurrère, et in jugo insistère, et inde se in cur-rus citissimè recipère consuèrunt.


35. Cæsar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diēbus accusē-rat, fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritāte periculum effugērent; tamen nactus equītēs circīter triginta,
quos Commius Atrēbas, de quo 1 antè dictum est, 6 secum transportavērat, legiōnes in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso praelio, diutius nostrōrum militum impētum hostes ferre non potuērant, ac terga vertērunt. Quos 1 tanto spatio 6 secuti, quantum 4 cursu 1 et virībus efficère potuērant, complūres ex iis occidērunt; deinde, 2 omnībus 6 longē latēque afflictis incensisque, se in castra receperunt.

36. Eōdem die legāti, ab hostibus missī ad Čæsārem de pace, venērunt. His 6 Čæsar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperavērat, duplicāvit, eosque in continentem addūci 1 jussit, quod, propinquā 3 die 1 æquinocītii, infirmis navībus, 4hiēmi 4 navigationem subjiciendam 1 non existimābat. Ipse, idoneam tempestātem nactus, paulō post medium noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolūmes ad continentem pervenērunt; sed ex his onerāriē duē 5 eosdem, quos reliquā, 6 portus capēre non potuērant, et paulo infrā delātē sunt.

37. 6 Quibus 6 ex navībus cūm essent expositi milītes circiter trecenti, atque in castra contendērent, Morīni, quos Čæsar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacatos reliquērat, spe 6 praeðāe adducti, primō 7 non ita magno suōrum numĕro circumstetērunt, ac, 8 si sese interfīci nollent, 6 arma ponēre jussērunt. Cūm illi, 9 orbe facto, sese defendērent, celerīter ad clamōrem homīnem circumcēr milliā sex convenērunt. Quā 6 re nunciātā, Čæsar omnem ex castris equītātum suis 6 auxilio 6 misit. Intērīm nostri milītes impētum hostium sustinuērunt, atque amplīus horī 9 quatuor fortissimē pugnavērunt, et, paucīs vulnerībus acceptīs, complūres ex iīs occīdērunt. Postea verō quàm equītātus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectīs armīs 10 terga vertērunt, magnīsus eōrum numerus est occīsus.
38. Cæsar postéro die Titum Labiēnum legátum, cum iis legionībus, quas ex Britanniā reduxerat, in Morīnos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui, cūm propter siccitātes palūdum, quō se reciperent, non habērent (quo perfugio superiore anno fuērant usi), omnes ferē in potestātem Labiēni venērunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legāti, qui in Menapiōrum fines legiōnes duxerant, omnībus eōrum agris vastātis, frumentis succisis, ādificiis incensis, quōd Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdidērant, se ad Cæsārem receperunt. Cæsar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitātes ex Britanniā obsīdes misérunt; reliquae neglexérunt. His rebus gestis, ex litteris Cæsāris diērum viginti supplicatio a Senātu decreta est.

\[\text{a} \] 39, 5.  \[\text{c} \] § 140, Obs. 4.  \[\text{e} \] § 106, R. VII.  
\[\text{b} \] § 140, 5.  \[\text{d} \] § 121, R. XXVI.
BOOK V.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Cæsar's second expedition into Britain—Chap. 1-23. II. War with Ambiorix—Chap. 24-54 III. Insurrection among the Tre- viri repressed—Chap. 55-58.

1. Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio, consulibus, discēdens ab hibernis Cæsar in Italiam, ut quotannis facère consuérat, legātis impērat, quos legionibus præsecērat, ut, 2quamplūri-mas a possent, hiēme b naves ædificandas c veteresque refici- endas c curārent. Eārum modum formamque demonstrat. 3Ad celeritātem onerandi subductionesque paulō facit humil-iōres, quàm quibus d in 4 nostro mari uti consuevīmus ; atque id eo e magis, quōd propter crebras commutatio-nes æstuum minus magnos ibi fluctus siēri cognovērat : ad onēra et ad multitudīnem jumentorum transportandum paulō latiōres, quàm quibus d in reliquis utīmur marībus. Has omnes 5actuarias impērat siēri, quàm ad rem multitūm humiltās 6adjūvat. Eā, quā sunt usui 7ad armandas naves, ex Hispaniā apportāri jubet. Ipse, convenībībus Galliā citeriōris peractis, in Illyricum proficisciētur, quōd a Pirustis finiūmam partem Provinciae incursionibus vastāri audiēbat. Eō cūm venisset, civitātibus f militēs impērat, certumque in locum convenire jubet. Quā 8re nunciātā, Pirustae legātos ad eum mittunt, qui h doceant, nihil ēārum rerum publico factum consilio, sesēque parātos esse demonstrant, 9omnībus rati-onibus 1 de injuriis satisfacēre. Acceptā oratīōne eōrum, Cæsar obsēdes impērat, eosque ad certam diem addūci jubet: nisi ita fecērint, sese bello civitātem persecutūrum de-
monstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperavērat, arbitros inter civitātes dat, 1 qui litem æstāment 2 pænamque constituant. 3

2. His confectis rebus 4 conventibusque peractis, in ceteriorum Galliarum revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulariter milītum studio, in summa omnium rerum inopīā, circiter sexcentas ejus genēris, cujus 2 supra demonstrāvīmus, naves et longas viginti octo invēnit 5 instructas, 4 neque multām abesse ab eo, quin paucis diēbus dedūci possent. Collaudeātis militibus 6 atque iis 7 qui negotio præfuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubes, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam 6 transmissum 5 esse cognovērat, circiter millium passuum 5 triginta a continentī. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militūm, 6 reliquit: ipse cum legionibus 6 expeditis quattuor et equitiibus octingentis in fines Trevirōrum proficiscitur, quōd hi neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperio 8 parēbant, Germanosque transrhenānos sollicitāre dicebantur.

3. Hāec civitates longē plurīmum totius Galliæ equitātu valet, magnasque habet copias peditūm, Rhenumque, ut suprā demonstrāvīmus, tangit. In ea civitāte duo 1 de principātū inter se contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cingetōriēx: ex quibus 7 alter, simul atque 8 de Cæsāris legionumque adventu cognītum est, ad eum venit: se suoques omnes in officio futūros, neque ab amicitia Popūli Romānī defectūros confirmāvit: quæque in Trevirīs gererentur, 1 ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitātum peditatumque cogēre, m iisque, 4 qui per ætātem in armis esse non potērant, in 8 silvam Ar둔nam abdītis, quæ ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirōrum a flumīne Rheno ad initium Remōrum pertinēt, bellum parāre 5 instituit. Sed postea quām nonnulli principes ex

152

DE HELLO GALlico.

\[\text{\textsuperscript{a}} \text{§ 141, Obs. 2, 4th.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{b}} \text{§ 99, Exc. 2.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{c}} \text{§ 145, R.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{i}} \text{19, 1.} \]
\[\text{\textsuperscript{d}} \text{§ 109, 2.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{f}} \text{§ 106, R. VII.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{k}} \text{124, 18.} \]
\[\text{\textsuperscript{e}} \text{§ 140, 3.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{g}} \text{§ 106.R.VIII.Obs.10.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{l}} \text{§ 140, 5.} \]
\[\text{\textsuperscript{h}} \text{112, R. V.} \quad \text{\textsuperscript{m}} \text{§ 144, R. LVII.} \]
ea civitate, et familiaritatis Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Cæsarem venérunt, et de suis privātīm rebus ab eo petère cæpérunt, quoniam civitāti consulēre non possent: a Indutiomārus, verītus b ne c ab omnībus deserērētur, legātōs ad Cæsarem mittit; d sese idcirco ab suis discēdēre atque ad eum venīre noluisse, quō faciliūs civitātem in officio continēret, ne omnis nobilitātis diessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberētur. Itāque esse civitātem in suā potestāte, seque, si Cæsar permittēret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suas civitatīsque fortūnas ejus fidēi permissūrum.

4. Cæsar, etsi intelligēbat, quā de causā ea dicerentur, quæque eum res ab instituto consilio deterrēret, e tamen, ne aestātem in Trevīris consumère cogerētur, f omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparātīs, Indutiomārum ad se cum ducentis obsidībus venīre jussit. His adductīs, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnībus, quos nominātīm evocāverat, consolātus h Indutiomārum hortatusque est, ut in officio permanēret: nihilō tamen secius, principibus Trevirōrum ad se convocātīs, hos singillātīm Cingetorigi conciliāvit: quod cum1 merītō ejus ab se fieri intelligēbat, tum1 magnī interesse arbitrābatur, ejus auctoriātem inter suos quamplurīmūm valēre, cujus tam egregian in se voluntātem perspexisset. 1d factum gravītēr tulit Indutiomārus, 4suam gravītēm inter suos minui; et, qui m jam antē inīmīco in nos anīmo fuisset, 5multō graviūs hoc dolore exarsit.

5. His rebus constitūtīs, Cæsar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervēnit. Ibi cognoscit, quadrāginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte ejectae. 6cursum tenēre non potuisse, atque eōdem, unde erant prosectae, revertītēs: reliquas parātas ad navigandum atque omnībus rebus in-

---

*a § 140, Obs. 2. b 106, 1. c § 140, 5. d § 140, Obs. 6, & 121. e 90, 4. f § 140, 1, 21. g 94, 4, & § 115, R. h 115, 1. i 124, 8. k § 113, Exc. I. l § 141, Obs. 7. m § 141, R. III.
structas invénit. Eódem totius Galliæ equitátus convénit, numéro a millium quatuor, principesque omnibus ex civitati-bus: ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexérat, relinquère in Galliâ, reliquis obsúdum loco a secum dúcère, decrevérat; quòd, cùm ipse abisset, motum Galliæ verebátur.

6. Erat una cum catéris Dumnöríx Æduus, de quo ab no-bis 1 antea dictum est. Hunc secum habére in primis con-stituérat, quòd eum 2 cupidum rerum b novárum, cupídum imperii, magni anímí, c magnæ inter Gallos auctoritátis, c cognovérat. Accedébat huc, quòd jam in concilio Æduórum Dumnöríx dixérat, sibi 4 a Cæsáre regnum civitátiis deférri: quod 6 dictum Ædui gravitér ferébant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa légátos ad Cæsárem mittère audébant. 3 Id factum ex suis hospitiis Cæsar cognovérat. Ille om-níbus primó precíbus 4 petère contendit, ut in Galliâ relin-querétur; partim, quòd insúetús navigating b mare timéret; f partim, quòd religioníbus sese dicéret impedíri. Postea-quam id obstinátè sibi d negári vidit, omni spe impetrandi adentá, principes Galliæ solícitáre, sevocáre singúlos hor-tarique cápit, uti in continentí remanérent; 5 metu territáre non sine causa fiéri, ut Galliæ omni nobilitáte b spoliáretur: id esse consílium Cæsáris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliæ in-terficëre veréretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necáret: 6 fidem reliquis interponére, jusjurandum poscère, ut, 7 quod 1 esse ex usu Galliæ intellexissent, commúni consílio administrárent. Hæc a compluríibus ad Cæsárem de-ferebantur.

7. Quâ c re cognítâ, Cæsar, 8 quòd tantum civítáti Æduae dignitátitis k tribuérat, coërcendum 1 atque deterrendum, 1 quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnoriígem statuébat; quòd 9 lon-giús ejus amentiam progrédi vidébat, 10 prospiciéndum, m

---

*a § 136, Obs. 5, (de.)
b § 107, R. IX.
c § 106, R. VII.
d § 126, R. III.
* e 38.
f § 141, Obs. 7.
g § 140, 1, 3d.
h § 126, R. V.
i 37, 2.
j § 106, R. VIII
k § 106, R. VIII
l 108, 4.
m 113, 5.
ne quid a sibi b ac rei publicae nocere posset. Itaque dies c circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod d Corus ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem e omnis tempōris in his locis flare consuevit, dabat opēram, ut in officio Dumnorīgem continēret, d nihil tamen secius omnia ejus consilia 3 cognoscēret: d tandem, idoneam nactus tempestātem, militēs equitesque conscendēre naves jubet. At, 4 omnium impeditis animis, Dumnōrīx cum equīūibus Æduōrum a castris, inscentē Cæsāre, domum e discēdēre cēpit. Quā re nunciātā, Cæsār, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rebus postpositīs, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahīque f impērat: si vin faciat neque g pareat, interfīcī jubet: nihil hunc b se absente pro sano factūrum arbitrātus, qui praeśentis imperium neglexisset. i Ille enim revocātus resistēre ac se manu defendēre suo rumque fidem implorāre cēpit, sēpe clamitāns, “libērum se liberāque civitātīs k esse.” Illī, ut erat imperātum, circum sistunt atque homīnem interficiunt; at Æduī equīes ad Cæsārem omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestīs, Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legionibus et equīūm millībus duōbus relictō, ut portus tuerētur d et rem frumentarium providēret, d quaeque in Galliā gerentur 1 cognoscēret, d 7 consiliūmque pro tempōre et pro re capēret, d ipse cum quinque legionibus et h pari numero equīūm quem in continentī relinquēbat, solis occāsū m naves solvit, et, lenī Afrīcō provectus, mediā circītēr nocte m vento intermissō, cursum non tenuit, et, k longiūs delatūs āestu, ortā luce, sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus, aestus commutātiōnem 10 secūtus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insūlāe capēret, d quā optimum esse egressum superiōre aēstāte cognovērat. Quā in re admōdum fuit

\[\text{References:}\]
\[\text{a § 116, Obs. 3.} \quad \text{c § 130, 4.} \quad \text{i § 141, R. III.}\]
\[\text{b § 112, R. V.} \quad \text{f 90, 4.} \quad \text{k § 108, R. XII.}\]
\[\text{e § 131, R. XLI.} \quad \text{g § 93, 1, (and not.)} \quad \text{l § 140, 5.}\]
\[\text{d § 140, 1. 2d.} \quad \text{h § 145, R.} \quad \text{m§ 131, R. XL.}\]
militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navi-giis, nou intermisso remigandi labōre, longarum navium cur-sum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiāno ferē tempōre: neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Cæsar ex captīvis compērit, cum magnae manus eō convenissent, multitudīne navium perterré (quae cum annotīnis privatisque, quas sui quisque commō-dī fecērat, amplīūs octingentis uno erant visī tempōre), a littōre discessērunt ac se in superiōra loca abdidērunt.

9. Cæsar, exposito exercitu et loco castrīs idoneo capto, ubi ex captīvis cognōvit, quo in loco hostium copiē consentissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equībus trecentis, quī præsidio navibus essent, de tertiā vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quōd in littōre molli atque aperto deligātas ad anchōram relinquēbat; et præsidio navibus Quintum Atrium prēfēcit. Ipse, noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim, hostium copiās conspicātus est. Illi, equitātū atque essēdis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiōre nostros prohibēre et prēlium committēre cēperunt. Repulsi ab equitātu, se in silvas abdidērunt, locum nacti, egregiē et naturā et opēre munītum, quem domestīci belli, ut videbātur, causā jam antē præparāverant: nam crebris arboribus succīsis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnābant, nostrosque intra munitōnes ingrēdi prohibēbant. At militēs legiōnis septimāe, testudine factā, et aggēre ad munitiones adjecēto, locum cepērunt eoque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longīūs Cæsar prosēqui vetuit, et quōd loci naturām ignorābat, et quōd, magnā parte diēi consumtā munitioni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

---

a § 67, 5, Note.  
b § 140, Obs. 3.  
c § 140, 5.  
d § 106, Obs. 3. (causā)  
e § 114, R.  
f § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  
g § 106, Obs. 3. (causā)  
h § 112, R. XVII.  
i § 136, Obs. 5, (cum)  
j 109, 2.  
k § 110, R. XV.
10. Postridie ejus diei\textsuperscript{a} mane \textit{tripartitò} milites equitesque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eos, qui fugērant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itinēris\textsuperscript{b} progressis, cūm jam extrēmi\textsuperscript{c} essent in prospēctu, equītes a Quintō Atrio ad Cæsārem venērunt, quī\textsuperscript{d} nunciārent, \textit{superiōre} nocte, maxīmā coārtā tempestātē, prope omnes naves \textsuperscript{3} afflictas\textsuperscript{e} atque in littōre ejectas esse;\textsuperscript{f} quōd neque anchōrāe funesque \textsuperscript{4} subsistērent,\textsuperscript{g} neque nautāe gubernatoresque vim pati tempestātis possent: \textit{itāque} \textsuperscript{5} ex eo concursu navium magnum esse \textit{incommōdum} acceptum.\textsuperscript{e}

11. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar legiōnes equitatumque re-vocāri atque itinēre desistēre jubet: ipse ad naves reverti-tur: eādem ferē, quae ex nuntiis literisque cognovērat,\textsuperscript{7} co-ram perspīcit, sic ut, amissī circūtē quadrāginta navībus, reliqua tamen refīci posse magno negotio viderentur.\textsuperscript{8} Itā-que ex legionibus fabros delēgit, et ex continentī alios ar-cessīri jubet; Labiēnō\textsuperscript{h} scribit, ut, quàm plurīmas posset, iīs legionibus\textsuperscript{i} quae sint\textsuperscript{k} apud eum, naves instituāt. Ipse, etsi\textsuperscript{6} res erat multae opērae\textsuperscript{l} ac labōris, tamen commodissīmum esse statuīt, omnes naves\textsuperscript{9} subdūcī\textsuperscript{m} et cum castrīs unā munitīōne conjungi. In his rebus circūtē dies decem consū-mit, ne nocturnī\textsuperscript{n} quidem temporībus ad labōrem militūm intermissīs. Subductis navībus castrisque egregiē munitīs, easdem copias, quas antē, præsidio navibus reliquit: ipse eōdem, unde rediērat, proficiscītur. Eō cūm venisset, ma-jōres jam undique in eum locum copiē Britannōrum convenērant,\textsuperscript{10} summa imperii bellique administrandī communī consilio permissa Cassivellau-no,\textsuperscript{o} cujus fines a maritimīs civitatibus flumen dividīt, quod appellātur Tamēsīs, a mari circūtē millia passuum octoginta. Huic\textsuperscript{p} \textit{superiōre} tempōre cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercessē-

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{a} § 135, R. XLVI.
\item \textsuperscript{b} § 106, R. VIII.
\item \textsuperscript{c} Sup. \textit{fugientium}.
\item \textsuperscript{d} § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.
\item \textsuperscript{e} 93, 2.
\item \textsuperscript{f} § 141, Obs. 7.
\item \textsuperscript{g} § 140, 1, Ist.
\item \textsuperscript{h} § 123, R.
\item \textsuperscript{i} § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)
\item \textsuperscript{j} § 141, Obs. 8.
\item \textsuperscript{k} § 141, Obs. 7.
\item \textsuperscript{l} § 106, R. VII.
\item \textsuperscript{m} 94, 3.
\item \textsuperscript{n} 121, Note. 2.
\item \textsuperscript{o} § 126, R. III.
\item \textsuperscript{p} § 112, R. IV.
\end{itemize}
rant: sed nostro adventu permōti Britanni hunc totī bello imperiuōque præfecerant.

12. Britanniē pars interior ab iis incolītur, 1 quos b natos in insulā ipsā, memoriā prodītum dicunt: marītima pars ab iis, qui prædā ac belli inferendi causā ex Belgis transīrant; qui omnes ferē iis nominibus civitātum appellantur, quibus c orti ex civitātibus eō pervenērunt, et 2 bello illātō ibi remansērunt atque agros colēre cēpērunt. Honīnūm est infīnīta multitūdō, 3 creberrīmaque āedificia, 4 ferē Gallīcis d consimilia: pecōrum magnus numērus. Utuntur aut ëre, e aut 5 taleis ferreis, ad certum pondus examinātis, pro nummo. Nasciūt ibi 6 plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in marītīmis ferrum; sed ejus exigua est 7 copia: ære e utuntur importāto. 8 Materia cujusque genēris, ut in Galliā, est, prāter fagum atque abītem. Lēpōrem et gallīnam et ansērem gūstre, fas non putant; haec tamen alunt 9 anīmi voluptatisque causā. 10 Loca sunt temperatiōra, quām in Galliā, 11 remissiōribus.

13. Insulā naturā 12 triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliām. Hujus latēris alter angūlus, qui est 13 ad Cantium, quo ferē omnes ex Galliā naves appelluntur, ad orientem solēm; inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet cirŭiter milliā passuum quingenta. Altērum vergit 14 ad Hispa- niam atque occidentem solēm, quā ex parte est Hibernia, 15 dimidio h minor, ut āstimātur, quàm Britannia; 16 sed pari spatio k transmissus, atque 1 ex Galliā, est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insulā, qua appellātur 17 Mona; compūres prēterea minōres objecta insulā existimantur; de quibus c insulīs nonnullī scripsērunt, 18 dies m continuōs triginta sub brumā, esse noctem, b Nos nihil de eo percontātionibus reperiebāmus, 19 nisi certīs ex aquā mensūris brevitē-
res esse, quàm in continente, noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitúdo latérís, ut fert illórum opinio, 1 septimegentórum millium. Tertium est 2 contra septentriones, cui partí nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angúlus latérís máximè ad Germaniam spectat: huic 3 milliá 4 passuum 5 octingenta in longitudínem esse existimátor. Ita omnis insula est in circuítu vicies centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longè sunt 4 humanissími, qui Cantium incólunt, quæ regio est maritíma omnis; neque multum a Gallicâ différunt consuetudine. Interiöres pleríque fru menta non serunt, sed lacté et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes verò 5 se Britanni vitro inscianunt, quod cœruleum efficit colorém, atque hoc horri dióre sunt in pug-ná aspectu: 6 capillióque sunt promiso atque omni parte corpóris rasá, praeter caput et labrum superius. Úxores habent 7 deni duodenique inter se commūnes, et máximè fratres cum fratríbus parentesque cum libéris; sed, si qui sunt ex his nati, eórum habentur libéri, 8 quo k primùm virgo quæque deducta est.

15. Equités hostium essedariique acrítiter prælio cum equi tátu nostro in itinère conlixérunt, 9 tamen ut nostri omnibus partíbus superióres fuérint, atque eos in silvas collesque compulérint: sed compluríibus interféctis, cupiidiús' insecútí, nonnullus ex suis amisérunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, irrationalibus nostris atque occupátis in munitiöne castrórum, subítò se ex silvis ejecérunt, impetúque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocáti, acrítiter pugnavérunt: duabusque 10 submissis cohortíbus a Cæsáre, atque his pri mis legiónum 11 duárum, cúm hæ, perexíguo intermisso loci spatio inter se, 11 constitissent, novo genère pugnæ perterrítes nostris, per medios audacissímæ perrupérunt, sequé inde in-
colūmes recepērunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tri-
būnus militūm, interficētur. Illi, plurībus immissīs cohortī-
bus, repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genēre pugnā, 1 cūm sub oculīs omnium
ac pro castrīs dimicarētur, 2 intellectum est, a nostros b pro-
ter gravitātēm armātūrē, quōd neque insēqui 3 cedentes pos-
sent, neque ab signis discedēre audērent, minūs aptos esse
ad hujus genēris hostem; equītes b autem magno cum peri-
cūlo dimicāre, c propterēa quōd illī etiam consultō plerumque
4 cedērent, d et, cūm paulūm ab legiōnibus nostros removis-
sent, ex essēdis desilirent 5 et pedībus e dispāri prēlio con-
tendērent. Equestrīs autem prālii ratio et cedentībus f et
insequentībus par atque idem pericūlum inferēbat. Acce-
dēbat hic, ut, nunquam 6conferti, sed rari magnīque inter-
vallīs 8 prēliarentur, h stationesque dispositas habērent, h at-
que 7 alios alii deinceps excipiērent, integriēque et recentes
defatigātīs succedērent.

17. Postēro die procul a castrīs hostēs in collībus consti-
tērunt, rarīque se ostendēre et 8 leniūs, quàm pridie, nostros
equītes prēlio lacessēre cœpērunt. Sed meridie, cūm Cæ-
sar pabulandi causā tres legiōnes atque omnem equītātum
cum Caio Trebonio legāto misisset, repentē ex omnibus par-
tībus ad pabulatōres advolavērunt, sic, 9 uti ab signīs legiō-
nibusque non absistērent. Nostri, acrīter in eos impētu
facto, repulērunt, neque finem sequendi fecērunt, quoad sub-
sidio i confīsi equītes, cūm post se legiōnes vidērunt, precip-
itēs hostēs egērunt: magnōque eōrum numēro interfecto,
neque sui colligendi, neque consistendi, aut ex essēdis de-
siliendi facultātēm dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā protīnus, quæ
undique convenērant, auxilia discēssērant: 10 neque post id
tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiēs hostēs contendē-
runēt.

a 51, 2. d § 140, 6. s § 132, R. XLII.
b § 145, R. e § 129, R. h § 140, 1, 4th.
c 96, 2. f 19, & § 123, R. i § 112, R. V.
18. Cæsar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamēsin in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod ad flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc ægrè, transīri potest. Eo cùm venisset, animadvertit, ad altēram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa autem erat acūtis sudibus præfīxis munita; ejusdem ġenērīs sub aquā defixa sudes flumīne tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Cæsar, præmisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed ea celeritāte atque eo impētu milītes iērunt, cùm capite solo ex aquā exstarent, ut hostes impētum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre non possent, ripāque dimittērent ac se fugā mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā demonstrāvīmus, omni depositā spe contentiōnis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quatuor essedariōrum relictis, itinēra nostra servābat, paululumque ex viā excederebat, locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultābat, atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter factūros cognōverat, pecōra atque homīnes ex agris in silvas compellebāt: et, cùm equitātus noster, liberius prædandi vastandique causā, se in agros effundēret, omnibus viis notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittēbat, et magnō cum pericūlo nostrōrum equītūm cum iis conßigēbat, atque hoc metu latiūs vagāri prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longiūs ab agmīne legiōnum discēdi Cæsar paterētur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocērēt, quantum labōre atque itinēre legiōnāriī milītes efficēre potērant.

20. Interim Trinobantes, propē firmissima eārum regiōnum civitas, ex qua Mandubratius adolescens, Cāsāris fidem secūtus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venērat (cujus pater Imanuentius in eā civitāte regnūm obtinuērat, intersec-
tusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugā mortem vitavērat), legātos ad Cāsārem mittunt, pollicenturque, sese ei deditūros atque imperāta factūros: petunt, ut Mandobratium ab injuriā Cassivellauni defendat, a atque in civitātem mittat, qui præsit b imperiumque obtineat. c His c Āesār impērat obsīdes quadraginta frumentumque exercitui, d Mandobratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperāta celerīter fecerunt, obsīdes 2 ad numērum frumentāque misērunt.

21. Trinobantībus defensīs atque ab omni milītum injuriā 3 prohibītis, Cenimagnī, Segontiāci, Ancalītes, Bibrōci, Cassī, legationībus missīs sese Cāsāri dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longē ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis paludibusque munītum, quo f satis magnus homīnun pecoris-que numērus convenērit. (4 Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cūm silvas impeditas vallo atque fossā muniērunt, g quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causa convenīre consuērunt.) Ėō proficiscītur cum legionībus: locum repērit egregiē naturā atque opēre munītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partībus oppugnāre contendit. Hostes, paulisper morāti, milītum nostrōrum impētum non tulērunt, sesēque aliā ex parte oppīdi ejecērunt. Magnus ibi numērus pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehensi atque interfeci.

22. Dum hēc in īsōs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod h esse 5 ad mare suprā demonstrāvimus, qui- bus 1 regionībus k quatuor reges præérant, Cingetōrix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segōnax, nuncios mittit, atque āsimpērat, uti, coactis omnībus copiis, castra navalia de improvi-so 1 6 adoriantur atque oppugnent. Iī cūm ad castra veniserent, nostri, eruptione factā, multis eōrum 6m interfescit, capto etiam nobīli duce Lugotorige, suōs incolūmes reduxērunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc prēlio nunciāto, tot detrimentis accep-

---

a § 140, 1, 3d.  e § 129, R. 1 37, 1, (regiones.)
b § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.  f § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) k § 112, R. I.
c § 123, R. & 5, 1.  g § 140, Obs. 3. l § 90, 6.
d § 110, R. XV.  h § 145, R. & 91. m§ 107, R. X.
tis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defsectione civitatium, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditio ad Cæsarem mittit. Cæsar, cum statuisset a hiemem in continentem propter repentinum Galliarum motus agere, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facilis extrahi posse intelligeret, obsides imperat, et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis b Populo Romano Britannia pendebat, c constituit; interdictum atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubrato, neu Trinobantibus bellum faciat. d

23. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invénit refectas. His deductis, quod et e captivorum magnum numérum habebat, et nonnulla tempestáte deperiérant naves, duobus commetáibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numéro, tot navigationibus, neque hoc, neque superiore anno, f ulla omnino navis, quæ milités portarent, g desiderarétur: h at ex iis, quæ inânes ex continentem ad eum remitterentur, i et 7 priores commeâtus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labiënus faciendas curaverat numéro sexaginta, k perpacæ locum caperent; k reliqua fere omnes rejicerentur. k Quas i cùm aliquamdiu Cæsar frustra expectasset, a ne anni tempore a navigatio excluderéntur, quod aquinoctium suberat, 9 necessario angustiis militibus collocavit, ac, summam tranquillitatem consecutât, secundam inítia cum solvisset vigiliâ, primâ luce terram attigit, omnesque incolúmes naves perduxit.

24. 10 Subductis navibus, concilióque Galliòrum Samaro brívæm peracto, quod eo anno 11 frumentum in Galliâ propter siccitátés angustiis provenérat, coactus est aliter, ac superioribus annis, f exercitum in hibernis collocáre, legionesque in plures civitátes distribuère: ex quibus unam in Morinos duendam Caio Fabio legato dedit; altéras in Nervios

---

a § 140, Obs. 4.  e 124, 1.  i § 141, Obs. 3.
b § 106, R. VIII.  f § 131, R, XL.  k Sup. accidit ut.
c § 140, 5.  e § 141,R.I. & Obs.1.  l 38.
d § 140, 1, 3d.  h § 140, 1, 4th.  m § 130, R. XXXVI.
Quintio Cicerōni; tertiam in Essuos Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Trevirōrum hiemāre jussit; tres in Belgio collocāvit: his Marcum Crassum, quāestōrem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium, legātōs, prāfēcit. Unam legiōnem, quam proxīmē trans Padum conscripsērat, et cohortes quinque in Eburōnes, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorīgis et Cativolci erant, misit. His mīlitibus Quintum Titurium Sabīnum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam, legātōs, prāesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus, facillīmē inopīae frumentariae sese medērī posse existimāvit: atque harum tamen omnium hiberna (prāeter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dedērat), mīlitibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiōnes collocāsset munītāque hiberna cognovisset, in Galliā morārī constituit.

25. Erat in Carnūtibus summo locō natus Tasgetius, cujus majōres in suā civitāte regnum obtinuerant. Huic Cāsar, pro ejus virtūte atque in se benevolentiā, quōd in omnibus bellis singularī ejus operā fuērat usus, majōrum locum restituērat. Tertium jam hunc annum regnantem inimīci palam, multis etiam ex civitāte auctorībus, interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Cāsārem. Ille verītus, quōd ad plures pertinēbat, ne civitas eōrum impulsu deficēret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgio celere firmiter in Carnūtes proficiisci jubet, ibique hiemāre; quorumque operā cognoverit Tasgētium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittēre. Intērim ab omnibus legātīs quāestoribusque, quibus legiōnes transdīdera, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum lo- cumque hibernis esse munītum.

26. Diēbus circīter quindēcim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentīni tumultūs ac defectionīs ortum est ab

---

*a § 97, Obs. 2. d § 19, (legiōnum.) e § 131, R. XLI.
b § 112, R. I.  e § 140, 4. h § 140, Obs. 68&121, 6.
c § 112, R. V. f § 119, R. i 67, 5, Note.
Ambiorīge et Cativolco: 1 qui a cūm ad fines regni sui Sabīno b Cottæque præstū fuissent, frumentumque in hiberna com-
portavissent, Indutiomāri Trevīri nunciis impulsi, suos con-
citāverunt, subitūque oppressīs ligantūris, magnā manu castra oppugnātum c venērunt. Cūm celerīter nostri arma 
cepissent vallumque ascendissent, atque, unā ex parte His-
pānis equītūs emissī, equestri prēlio d superiōres fuissent, 
desesperāta re, hostes suos ab oppugnatiōne reduxerunt. Tum 
suo more conclamāverunt, ut ālīqui ex nostrīs e ad collo-
quium prodirērent; habēre se, quā 3 de re commūni dicēre 
vellent, f quibus rebūs controversiās 4 minuī posse sperārent. f

27. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causā Caius Arpineius, 
eques Romānus, familiāris Quintii Titurii et Quintus Ju-
nius ex Hispaniā quidam, qui jam antē 5 missū Caesāris ad 
Ambiōrigem ventitāre consuevērat: apud quos Ambiōrīx 6ad 
hunc modum locūtus est: 7 "Sese pro Caesāris in se benefi-
ciis 8 plurīnum ei consītēri debēre, quōd ejus operā stipen-
diō 8 liberātus esset, f quod Aduatūcis finiūmis suis pendēre 
consuēsset: f quōdque ei et filiūs et fratris filiūs ab Caesāre 
remissi essent, quos Aduatūci, obsūdum numēro missos, 
apud se in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent: f neque id, quod 
fecērit 9 de oppugnatiōne castrōrum, aut judicio h aut volun-
tāte suā fecisse, i sed coactū h civitātīs; 10 suāque esse ejus-
mōdi imperia, ut non minus habēret k juris in se multitūdo, 
quām ipse in multitūdīnem. Civitāti l porro hanc fuisse bellī 
causam, quōd repentiāe Gallōrum conjuratiōni resistère non 
potuērit: id se factīlē 11 ex humiliātē suā probāre posse, quōd 
non adeo sit f imperitus rerum, ut suis copiīs h Popūlum Ro-
mānum se superāre posse confīdat: sed 12 esse Galliā com-
mūne consiliūm; omnībus hibernis Caesāris oppugnandis 
hunc esse dictum diem, ne quā legio altērē legiōni m subsidio

a 39, 6.  c § 107, Obs. 8.  i § 145, Obs. 3. 
b § 135, R. XLVII.  f § 141, Obs. 7.  k § 140, 1, 1st. 
c § 148, 1.  g § 126, R. V.  l § 112, R. II. 
d § 128, R.  h § 129, R.  m § 114, R.
venire posset: a non facilè Gallos Gallis b negare potuisse, præsertim cùm de recuperandâ commūni libertāte consilium inītum viderētur. "Quibus c quoniam pro pietāte satisfecērit, habēre se nunc rationem officii pro beneficiis Cæsāris; monēre, orāre Titurium d 2 pro hospitio, ut suæ ac militum salūti consulat: magnam manum Germanōrum conductam Rhenum transīsse; e hanc f affōre biduo. "Ipsōrum esse consilium, velintne g priús, quàm finitīmi sentiānt, h ducēs ex hibernis milītes aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum deducēre, quorum alter illia millia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulō amplius ab his absit. Illud se pollicēri et jurejurando confirmāre, tutum iter per fines suos datūrum; 4 quod k cùm faciat, et l civitāti sese consulēre, quōd hibernis levētur, et l Cæsāri pro ejus meritis gratiam referre." Hāc oratione habītā, discēdit Ambiōrix.

28. Arpineius et Junius, quae audiērunt, ad legātos deferunt. Illi, repentīnā re perturbāti, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, non tamen negligenda existimābant: magnīque hāc re permovebantur, quōd, civitātem ignobiliem atque humīlem Eburōnum suā sponte Popūlo Romāno bellum facēre assam, vix erat credendum. m Italique ad consilium rem deferunt magnāque inter eos existīt controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribūni militum et primōrum ordīnum centuriōnes nihil temēre agendum, m neque ex hibernis injussu Cæsāris discedendum, m" existimābant: "quanta vis magnas etiam copias Germanōrum sustineri posse munītis hibernis," docēbant: 7 "rem esse testimonio," quōd primum hostium impētum, multis ultro vulneribus illātīs, fortissīmē sustinuērint: o re frumentariā non premi: interea et ex proxīmis hibernis et a Cæsāre conventūra subsidia

---

a § 140, 1, 2d. e 98, 2.
b § 112, R. V. f § 145, R. & 19.
c 39, & § 112, R.III. g § 140, 5.
d § 124, R. & h § 140, 4.
§ I16, Exp. i 27, 10, Obs. k 38, 4.

l 124, 1. m 108.
n § 114, R. & Obs. 4. o § 140, 6.
postremo, "quid esse levius aut turpius, quàm, auctòre hoste, de summis rebus capère consilium?"

29. Contra ea Titurius, "serò factúros," clamitábat, "cum majóres hostium manus, adjunctis Germānis, convenissent: aut cùm aliúndam calamitātis in proxímis hibernis esset acceptum, brevem consulendi esse occasiōnem: Æ-sārem b arbitrári profectum c in Italiá: neque aliter Carnūtes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisset captūros, neque Eburōnes, si ille adesset, tantá cum contentióne nostri ad castra ventūros esse: non hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germānis dolori Ario-visti mortem b et superiōres nostras victorias: aardēre Galliām, tot contumeliis acceptis sub Populi Romāni imperium redactam, superiōre gloriā rei militāris extinctā." Postrēmo, "quis hoc sibi persuadēret, sine certā re Ambiorigmem ad ejusmōdi consilium descendisse?" Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nil sit durius, nullo pericūlo ad proxīmam légionem perventūros; si Gallia omnis cum Germānis consentiat, unam esse in celeritāte posītam salūtem. Cōttæ quidem atque eōrum, qui dissipèrent, consilium quem habēret exitum? In quo si non presens pericūlum, at certè longinquā obsidiōne fames esset pertimescenda."

30. Hác in utramque partem disputatiōne habītā, cùm a Cottā primisque ordinibus acriter resisterētur, "Vincīte," inquit, "si ita vultis," Sabīnus, et id clariōre voce, ut magna pars militūm exaudīret: "neque is sum," inquit, "qui gravissīmē ex vobis mortis pericūlo terrear: hi sapient, et si gravius quid accidērit, abs te rationem reposcent: qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proxīmis hibernis conjuncti, commūnem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, nec rejecti et relegāti longē ab cētēris aut ferro aut fame intereant.
31. 1 Consurgitūr a ex consilio; comprehendunt 2 utrumque et orant, "ne suā dissensiōne et pertinaciā rem in summum periculum deducant:b facilem esse rem, seu maneant,c seu proficiscantur,d si modò unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contrà in dissensiōne nullam se salūtem perspicēre." 3 Res disputatiōne ad medium noctem perducitur. Tandem 4 dat Cotta permōtus manus; supērat sententia Sabini. 5 Pronunciātur, d primā luce itūros: consumītur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cùm sua quisque miles circumpīcēret, 6 quid secum portāre posset, 6 quid ex instrumento hibernōrum relinqüère cogeret. 7 Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculō maneātur et languōre militūtum et 8 vigiliis periculum augeātur. Primā luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, 9 ut quibus 10 esse persuāsum, 8 non ab hoste, sed ab homīne amicissimō Ambiorīge consiliōm datum, h longissimō agmine 1 maximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eōrum sensērunt, collocaēs insiđiis bipartitō in silvis opportūno atque occulto loco, a k millībus passuum circiter duōbus, Romanōrum adventum expectābant: et, cūm 10 se major pars agminis in magnam convallam demisisset, ex utrāque parte ejus vallis subītō se ostendērunt, novissimosque premēre et primos prohibēre ascensu atque iniquissimō nostris 1 loco prōelium committēre cæpērunt.

33. Tum demum Titurius, 11 ut quī nihil antē providisset, trepidāre, c concursāre, cohortesque disponēre; 12 hēc tamen ipsa timiđè atque ut 11 eum omnia deficēre viderentur: quod 13 plerumque iis p accidēre consuevit, qui 13 in ipso negotio consiliēm capēre coguntur. At Cotta, qui 5 cogitāsset, hēc posse in itinēre accidēre, atque ob eam causam profectionis

---

a 67, 5. Note.  
b § 140, 1, 3d.  
c § 140, 6.  
d 51, 2.  
* § 140, 5.  
< § 126, R. III.  
§ 141, Obs. 4.  
§ 129, R.  
§ 132, Obs. 5.  
§ 111, R.  
§ 144, Obs. 6.  
§ 140, 1, 2d, (īlā.)  
37, 9, Note. 3.  
§ 112, R. IV.
1 auctor non fuisset, nullā in re commūni salūti a deōrat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus, imperatōris; et in pugnā, militis officia præstābat. Cūmque propter longitu-
dīnem agmīnis b minus facile per se omnia obīre, et, quid quoque loco c faciendum esset, b providēre possent, s jussērunt pronuntiāre, ut impedimenta reliquērent atque d in orbem consistērent. Quod d consilium ētis in ejusmōdi casu repre-
hendendum non est, tamen s incommōdē accidit: nam et nostris militibus e spem minuit, et hostes ad pugnam alacri-
ōres effēcit, quōd non sine summo timōre et desperatiōne id factum videbātur. Præterea accidit, quod f siēri nesseser-
erat, ut vulgō milītes ab signis discedērent, h quae quīsque eōrum g carissīma habēret a ab impedimentis petēre atque abripēre properāret, h clamōre ac fletuomnia complerentur.

34. At s barbāris a consilium non defuit: nam duces eōrum totā acie pronuntiāre jussērunt, “ne quis ab loco discedēret 9 illōrum k esse prādam, atque illis reservāri, quācūmque Romāni reliquisserant: proinde omnia in victoriā posīta exis-
timārent.” 10 Erant et virtūte et numéro pugnando 1 pares nostro, tamen ētsi ab duce et a fortūnā deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte ponēbant, et, quoties quāe cohors procurrēret, ab ea parte magnus hostium numerus cadēbat. Quā d re animadversā, Ambrōrix pronuntiāri jubet, ut procul tela conjiciant, ne propīus accēdant, et, quam in partem Romāni impētum fecērint, 11 cedant (levitāte armō-
rum et quotidiānā exercitatiōne 12 nihil iīs nocēri posse m): rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

35. Quod d praecepto ab iīs diligentissīmī observāto, cūm quāpiam cohors ex orbe excessērat atque impētum fecērat, hostes velocissīmī refugiēbant. Intērim eam partem nudāri nesse erat et ab latēre aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cūm

---

a § 112, R. I.  
e § 123, R.  

b § 140, 5.  
f 37, 9, Note. 3.  

c § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)  
g § 107, R. X.  

d 38.  
h § 140, 1, 4th.  

1 § 141, Obs. 8.  
k § 108, R. XII.  

i § 128, R.  
m 66, & 68, 2.
170
DE BELLO GALlico.

in eum locum, unde erant progressi, reverti cæpérant, et ab iis, qui cessérant, et ab iis, qui proximi a stetérant, circum-
veniebantur; sin autem 1 locum tenère vellent, nec virtūti b
locus relinquebātūr, neque ab tantā multitudīne conjecta tela
conferti vitāre potērant. Tamen tot incommōdis conflictāti,
multis vulnerībus acceptis, resistēbant et, magnā parte diēī
consuntā, cūm a primā luce 2 ad horam octāvam pugnarē-
tur, nihil, quod ipsis c esset indignum, committēbant. Tum
Tito Balventio, d qui superiōre anno primum pilum duxērat,
viro forti et magnæ auctoritātīs, 3 utrumque semur tragūlā
transjicitur. Quintus Lucanius, ejusdem ordinīs, e fortissi-
mē pugnans, dum circumvento filio f 4 subvēnit, interficētur:
Lucius Cotta, legātus, omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans,
5 in adversum os fundā vulnerātur.

36. His rebus permōtus Quintus Titurius, cum procul
Ambiorīgēm suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpōs-
seum, Cneium Pompeium, ad eum mittit, rogātum, g ut sibi h
militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: "si velit
secum collōqui, licēre; sperāre, a multitudīne impetrāri
posse, quod h ad milītum salūtem pertineat; i 6 ipsi k
vero nihil nocītum iri, inque cam rem se l suam fidem inter-
ponēre." Ille cum Cottā saucio communīcat, "si videātur,
pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge unā colloquantur:
sperāre, ab eo de suā ac milītum salūte impetrāre posse." Cotta se ad armātum hostem itūrum negat 7 atque in eo
constītīt.

37. Sabinus, quos 8 in præsentia tribūnos milītum circum
se habēbat et primōrum ordinum centurionēs, se sequi ju-
bet, et, cum propiōs Ambiorīgēm m accessisset, jussus arma
abjicēre, imperātum facit, suisque, ut idem faciant, impērat.
Interim, dum de conditionibus inter se agunt, longiorque

---

a § 98, Obs. 10. e § 106, R. VII. i § 140, 6.
b § 126, R. III. f § 112, Obs. 5, 2d. k 66, 7.
c § 119, R. g § 148, 1. l § 145, R.
d § 110, Obs. 1. h 37, 2. m § 136, Obs. 5,(ad.)
consultò ab Ambiorīge institūtur sermo, paulātim circum-
ventus interficiitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclā-
mant atque ululātum tollunt, impeitūque in nostros facto,
ordīnes perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficiitur
cum maxīmā parte militum, relīqui se in castra recipiunt,
unde erant egressi: ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilīfer,
cūm magnā multitudīne hostium premerētur, aquīlām intra
vallum projēcit, ipse pro castrīs fortissīmē pugnāns occidī-
tur. 2 Illī ægrē ad noctem oppugnationēm sustīnent: noctu
ad unum a omnes, desperātā salūte, se ipsī b interficiunt.
Pauci ex prēlio elapsī, incertis itineribus c per silvas ad Ti-
tum Labiēnum legātum in hiberna perveniunt attque eum
de rebus gestīs certōrem faciunt.

38. Hāc victoriā e 4 sublātus Ambiōrīx, statim cum equi-
tātu in Aduatūcos, qui erant ejus regno fīniīmi, profisci-
tur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque se
subsēquī jubeat. Re demonstrātā, Aduatucisque concitātis,
postēro die in Nervios pervēnit, hortaturque, “ne sui e in
perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendī e Romānos, pro iis,
quas accepērint, h injuriis, occasiōnem dinnant: interfectos
esse i legātos duo magnamque partem exercitus interisse” 1
demonstrat; “nihil esse negotii, subitō oppressam legiō-
inem, quae cum Cicerōne hiēmet, k interfici; 6 se ad eam rem
profītētur adjutōrem.” 1 Facīlē hāc oratione Nerviis per-
suādet.

39. Itāque, confessim dimissīs nuncīs ad Ceutrōnes, Grū-
dios, Levācos, Pleumoxios, Geidūnos, qui omnes sub eōrum
imperio sunt, quàm maxīmas manus possunt, cogunt, et de
improvīso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advōlant, nondum ad eum
famā de Titurīi morte perlātā. 7 Huic quoque accēdit, quod m
fuit necesse, ut nonnulli militēs, qui līgnatiōnis munitionis-

---

a 19, (hominem.)  b 33, l.  c § 129, R.  d § 111, R.

---

i 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2.  k § 140, 6.  l § 97, R.

---

m 37, 9, Note 3.
que causā in silvas discessissent, a repentinaequītum adven-
tu interciperentur. b His circumventis, magnā manu Ebu-
rōnes, Nervii, Aduatūci atque horum omnium socii et cli-
entes, legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt: nostri celerīter ad
arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. 1 Aēgrè is dies sus-
tentātur, quōd omnem spem hostes in celeritāte ponēbant,
atque, hanc adeptī e victoriam, in perpetuum se fore vicīo-
res d confidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Cæsărem confestim ab Cicerōne lītērāe,
magnis 2 propositīs præmiis, si pertulissent. Obsessis omni-
bus viis, missi e intercipiuntur. Noctu ex eā materiā, quam
munitiōnis causā comportavērunt, 3 turres admodum centum
et viginti excitantur incredibili celeritāte: quae f deesse opē-
ri g videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postēro die, multo ma-
JORibus copiis coactis, castra oppugnānt, fossam complent.
Ab nostris ēadem ratiōne, h quā pridie, resistītur: 1 hoc idēm
deinceps relīquis fit diēbus. Nulla pars nocturnī tempōris
ad labörem intermittītur: non wēgris, k non vulnerātis, facul-
tas quīētis datur: quācunque 1 ad proxīmi diēi oppugnatiō-
nem opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multa 4 præustā sudes,
magnus muralium pilōrum numērus instituitur; 5 turres
contabulantur, pinnā loricāque ex cratibus attexuntur.
Ipse Cicēro, 6 cūm tenuissīmā valetūdīne m esset, ne noctur-
num nquidem sibi tempus ad quīētem relinquēbat, ut 6 ultro
militum concursu ac vocībus 7 sibi p parcēre cogerētur.

41. Tunc duces principesque Nerviōrum, qui 8 alīquem
sermōnis adītum causamque amicitāe cum Cicerōne habē-
bant, collōqui sese velle dicunt. 9 Factā potestāte, cādem, quā
Ambiōrix cum Titurio egērat, commēmorant, "omnem
esse in armīs Galliām, Germanōs Rheum transisse, Cæsār-

---
a § 141, R. I.  
b § 140, 1, 4th.  
c 105, 1.  
d § 103, R.  
e 19, (homīnes.)  
f 37, 2.  
g § 112, R. I.  
h § 129, R.  
i 37, 8, Note. 2.  
j § 106, R. VII.  
k § 126, R. III. & 19.  
l 67, 1.  
m § 112, R. V.  
n 121, Note. 2.  
o § 140, 1, Ist, (ita.)  

is reliquirumque hiberna oppugnāri." Addunt ētiam de Sabini morte. 1 Ambiorīgem ostentant fidēi faciendae causā: "errāre 2 eos" dicunt, "si quicquam ab his prāsidii sperent," qui suis rebus 3 diffidant; 4 sese tamen 5 hoc esse in Cicerōnem Populumque Romānum anīmō, 6 ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent 7 atque hanc inveterascēre consuetūdīnem nolint: 8 licēre illīs 9 incolumībus per se ex hibernis discedēre, et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficiisci." Cicerō ad hāc unum modō respondit. 9 "Non esse consuetūdīnem Popūli Romānī, ullam accipēre ab hoste armāto conditōnem: si ab armis discedēre velint," se 10 adjutōre utantur, 11 legatosque ad Csesarem mittant; 12 sperare, 13 pro ejus justitiā, quā petiērint, 14 impetratūros."

42. Ab hāc spe repulsi Nervīi, vallo 15 pedum undēcim et fossā pedum quindēcim hiberna cingunt. Hāc et superōrum annōrum consuetūdīnem 16 a nostris cognovērunt, et, quasdam de exercītū nacti captūvōs, ab his docebantur: 17 sed, nullā ferramentōrum copiā, 18 quae sunt ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis 19 cespitēm circumcidēre, manibus 20 sagulisque 21 terram exhaure intrinsecōbantur. Qua 22 quidem ex re hominum multitūdō cognoscī potuit: nam minus horīs tribus 23 millium decem in circuitu munitionēm perfecérunt: reliquisque diēs bus turres ad altitudīnem valli, 24 falces testudinesque, quas iūdem captivi docuērunt, parāre ac facēre cœpērunt.

43. Septīmo oppugnatiōnis die, maxīmo coortō vento, 25 ferventes fusili ex argillā 1 glandes fundis et 26 fervēfacta jacūla in casuās, quae more 27 Gallicō stramentis erant tectae, jacēre cœpērunt. Hāc celerītē ignem comprehendērunt et venti magnitudīnem 28 in omnem castrōrum locum 29 distulērunt. Hostes, maxīmo clamōre 30 insecurī, quasi partā ājam atque explorātā victoriā, turres testudinesque 31 agēre et scalis val-
lum ascendere cœpérunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea præsentia aními fuit, ut, cùm undique flammâ torrerentur, ñ maximâque telôrum multitudine premerentur, suâque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrâre intelli-
gèrent non modô 1 demigrandi causâ de vallo decedèrent nemo, sed pæne ne respicérêt quidem quisquam; ac tum omnes ñ acerrîmè fortissimèque pugnârent. Hic dies nostris ñ longè gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus hostium numèrús vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut ñ se sub ipso vallo constipavèrent re-
cessumque primis ñ ëultimì non dabant. Paulum quidem in-
ternissâ flammâ, et quodam loco 4 4 tûrri adactâ et contin-
gente vallum, tertiæ cohortis centuriônes ex eo, quò 5 stabant, loco recessèrent suasque omnes removèrent; nutu vocibusque hostes, "si introire vellent," vocâre cœpérunt, quorum progrêdi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidôbus ñ conjectis deturbâti, turrisque succensa est.

44. Erant in ea legiône fortissimi viri centuriônes, 7 qui jam primis ordinibus 1 appropinquarent, Tito Pulfio et Lucius Varênus. Hi perpetuas controversias inter se habèbant, quinam anteferrêtur, omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus contendêbant. Ex iis Pulfio, cùm acerrîmè ad munitiônes pugnarêtur, "Quid dubitas," inquit, "Varêne? aut quem locum probandæ virtûtis tuae spectas? hic, hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabít." Hæc cùm dixisset, procedit extra munitiônes, quàque pars hostium consertissîma visa est, in eam irrumpit. Ne Varênus quidem tum vallo sese contînet, sed omnium verítus existimationem subsecûtur. Tum, mediocrì spatio 6 relictò, Pulfio pilum in hostes mittit atque unum ex multitudine 10 procurament transjicit, quo 6 percusso et examinâto, 11 hunc scutis protê-
gunt hostes, 1 in illum tela universi conjiciunt neque dant
regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulfiôni a et
verütum in balteo desfigitur. Avertit hic casus vagina et
gladium educere conantib dextram moratur manum; impe-
ditum e hostes circumstunt. 2 Succurrit inimicus illi d Va-
renus et laborantie e subvênit. Ad 3hunc se confessim a Pul-
fione omnis multitudo convertit, 4 illum verûto transfixum
arbitrantur. Occursat oicûs gladio cominusque rem gerit
Varènus atque, uno interfecto, reliquis paulum propellit:
dûm cupidiûs instat, 5in locum dejectus inferiorem concidit.
Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulflo atque ambo
incolûmes, compluribus interfectis, summâ cum laude sese
intra munitones recipiunt. Sic fortûna 6 in contentione
et certamìne utrumque versâtit, ut alter alteri d inimicus aux-
ilio f salutique esset, neque diûdicâri posset, uter utri g vir-
tûte h anteferundus viderûtur.

45. 7 Quanto i erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppug-
natìo, et maxîmè quod, magnà parte militum confecta vul-
neribus, res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto i
crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Cæsarem mittebantur: quo-
rum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum
cruciatu necabantur. Erat 8 unus intus Nervius, nomine
Vertìco, 9 loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Cice-
rònem perfugérat, suamque eifidem præstiterat. Hic 10 servò k
spe libertatis magnisque persuasit præmiis, ut litteras ad
Cæsarem deférât. Has ille in jaculo illigâtas effert, et,
Gallus inter Gallos sine ullâ suspicione versâtus, ad Cæsâr-
em pervénit. Ab eo 1 de 11 pericûlis Cicerônis legionisque
cognoscitur.

46. Cæsar, acceptis litteris 12 horâ circiter undecimà diëi,
statim nuncium in Bellovços ad Marcum Crassum quæs-

---

a § 110, Obs. 1,  e § 112, R. V.  i § 132, R. XLIII. Obs.
b 19, (et,) & a.  f § 114, R.  6, & 44, 8, & 47.
c 19, (eum.)  g § 126, R. III.  k 63, & § 123, R.
d § 111, R.  h § 128, R.  l 67, 1.
torem mittit; cuius hiberna abērant ab eo millia passuum vinti quinque. Jubet mediā nocte legiōnem profisci, a ce leriterque ad se venire. Exiit cum nuncio Crassus, Altērum ad Caium Fabium legātum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legiōnem addūcat, c 1 qua sibī iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēno, si reipublicā commōdo facēre posset, cum legiōne ad fines Nerviōrum veniat: c reliquam partem exercītūs, quōd paulō abērat longius, non putat expectandum; e equītes circīter quadringentos ex proxīmis hibernis cogit.

47. Horā circīter tertiā ab antecursorībus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia passuum viginti progre-ditur. Crassum Samarobrīvās praeācit, legiōnemque ei attribuit, quōd ibi impedimenta exercītūs, obsīdes civitātum, litterās publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eō tolerandā hiēmis causā devexērat, relinquentēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, non ita multum morātus, in itinēre cum legiōne occurrīt. Labiēnus, interītū Sabīni et cæde cohortium cognitā, cūm omnes ad eum Treviōrum copiā venissent, h verītus, ne, si ex hibernis fugae similēm profectionem fecissent, hostīum impētum sustinēre non posset, præsertim quos recenti victoriā efferri sciret, litterās Cæsāri remittit, quanto cum pericūlo legiōnem ex hibernis eductūrus esset: i rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit: docet, omnes peditātūs equitātūsque copias Treviōrum tria millia passuum longē ab suis castrīs consēdisse.

48. Cæsar, consilio ejus probāto, etsi, opiniōne trium legiōnum dejectus, ad duas rediērat, tamen unum communīs salūtis auxilium in celeritāte ponēbat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviōrum fines. Ibi ex captīvis cognoscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantōque in pericūlo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitāibus Gallis magnis præmiis persuādet,
uti ad Cicerōnem epistolam deśerat. Hanc Græcis conscriptam litēris mittit, ne, interceptâ epistolâ, nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur.\(^a\) Si adire non possit, monet, ut tra-gūlam cum epistolâ, \(^b\) ad amentum deligatâ, intra munitio-nes castrōrum abjiciat.\(^b\) In litēris scribit, se cum legionibus prosectum celeritēr affōre: hortātur, ut pristinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus, periculum veritus, ut erat præceptum, tra-gūlam mittit. Hac \(^a\) casu ad turrim adhæsit, neque \(^c\) ab nostris biduo animadversa; tertio die a quodam milite conspicītur; demta ad Cicerōnem defertur. Ille \(^h\) perlectam in conventu militum recitât, maximâque omnes lætitiā afficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationēm adventūs legiōnum expūlit.

49. Galli, re cognītā per exploratōres, obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Cæsārem omnībus copiis contendunt; ea erant armatōrum circīter millia \(^d\) sexaginta. Cicēro, datā facultāte, Gallum ab eōdem Verticōnē, quem suprā demonstravimus, repētit; qui litēras ad Cæsārem referat; e\(^a\) hunc \(^f\) admōnet, iter caute diligenterque faciat:\(^e\) perscribit in litēris, hostes ab se discussisse, omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus \(^h\) litēris circīter mediā nocte Cæsar allātis suos facit certiōres, eosque ad dimicandum animō confirmat: postēro die luce primâ movet castra, et circīter millia\(^1\) passuum quatuor progressus, trans vallēm magnam et rivum multitūdinem hostium conspicātur. Erat magni pericūlī \(^k\) res, cum tantis copiis iniquo locō\(^1\) dimicāre. Tum, quoniam liberātum obsidiōne \(^m\) Cicerōnem sciēbat, eoque omnīno remittendum de celeritāte existimābat, consēdit, et, quàm eōquissīmo potest locō\(^1\) castra commūnit. Atque hae, etsi erant exigua per se, vix homīnum\(^k\) milliōnum septem, præsertim nullis cum impedimentīs, \(^e\) tamen angustīs viārum

\(^a\) § 140, 1, 2d. \(^c\) § 141, Obs. 2 4th. \(^i\) § 132, R. XLII. 
\(^b\) § 140, 1, 3d. \(^f\) § 124, R. \(^k\) § 106, R. VII. 
\(^c\) § 93, 1. \(^g\) § 140, 1,3d,&Obs. 5. \(^l\) § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) 
\(^d\) § 136, R. XLVIII. \(^h\) 38. \(^m\) § 126, R. V.
quam maximè potest, conträhit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemtionem hostibus a veniat. Intěrim, speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis, explōrat, quo commodissimo b itinère vallem transire possit.

50. Eo die, parvulis equestrībus prēliis ad aquam factis, utrique sese suo loco contīnent; Galli, quôd ampliores copias, quæ nondum convenērant, expectābant; Cæsar, si forté timōris simulatiōne hostes in suum locum elicēre posset, ut citra vallem pro castris prēlio contendēret; c si id efficēre non posset, ut, explorātis itineribus, minōre cum pericūlo vallem rivumque transiret. Primā luce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit, prēliumque cum nostris equībus committit. Cæsar consultō equītes cedēre, d seque in castra recipēre jubeat; simul ex omnībus partībus castra altiore vallo munīri, d portasque obstruī, atque in his administrandis rebus quam maximē concursāri et cum simulatiōne timōris agi jubeat.

51. Quibus omnībus rebus hostes invitāti copias transducunt, aciemque inīquo loco constituent; nostris verò etiam de vallo deductis, propriūs accēdunt, et tela intra munitiōnem ex omnībus partībus conjiciunt; præconibusque circummīssis pronuntiāri jubeant, "seu quis Gallus seu Rōmanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine pericūlo licēre; post id tempus non fore potestātem:" e ac sic nostros contemserunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singūlis ordinibus cespitum, quōd eā non posse introrumpēre videbantur, alii vallum manu scindēre, alii fossas complēre incipērent. Tum Cæsar, omnībus portis eruptione factā equitātūque emissō, celeriōter hostes dat in fugam, sic, uti omnīno pugnandi causā resistēret nemo; magnumque ex eis numĕrum occīdit, atque omnes armī f exuit.

52. Longiūs prosēqui veritus, quōd silvae paludesque intercedēbant, neque etiam parvūlo detrimento 9 illōrum locum

a § 110, Obs. 1.  b § 98, Obs. 10.  c § 140, 1, 2d.  d 90, 4.  e 109, 2.  f § 125, R.
relinqui vidēbat, omnībus suis incolūmis copiis eōdem die 
ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtas turres, testudīnes, mūnitionesque hostium admirātur: 1 productā legiōne cognoscit, 
non decīmum quemque esse relictum milītem sine vulnere. Ex his omnībus judīcāt rebus, quanto cum pericūlo et 
quanta cum virtūte res sint a administrātē: Cicerōnem 2 pro 
ejus merito, legiōnemque collaudat: centuriōnes singillātim 
tribunosque milītum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse vir-
tūtem testūmonio Cicerōnis cognōverat. De casu Sabīni et 
Cottāe certīōs ex captīvis cognoscīt. Postero die concīōne 
habitā 3 rem gestam propōnit, milītes consolātur et confir-
mat: quōd detrimentum 4 culpā et temeritāte legāti sit b ac-
ceptum; hoc aequōre anīmo ferendum docet, 6 quōd, bene-
ficio Deōrum immortātilium et virtūte eōrum 7 explāto incom-
mōdo, neque hostībus diūtīna lāetatio, neque ipsis longīor 
dolor reliquātur.c

53. Interim ad Labīēnum per Remos incredībīli celeri-
tāte de victoriā Cāsāris fama perfertur, ut, cūm ab hibernis 
Cicerōnis abesset millia passuum circīter sexaginta, eōque 
8 post horam nonam diēī Cāsār pervenisset, ante medium 
octem ad portas castrōrum clamor orīētur, d quo clamōre 
significatio victoriāe gratulatiōque ab Remis Labiēnō e fiēret. 
Hac famā ad Trevirōs perlātā, Indutīomārus, qui postēro die 
castra Labiēnī oppugnāre decrevērat, noctu profūgit, copias-
que omnes in Trevirōs redūcit. Cāsār Fabium cum legiōne 
in sua remittit hiberna, ipse cum tribūs legiōnibus circum 
Samarōbrīvam 9 trinis hibernis hiemāre constituit; et, quōd 
tanti motus Galliāe extiterant, totam hiēmem ipse ad exer-
citum manēre decrevīt. Nam illo incommōdo de Sabīni 
morte perlāto, omnes ferē Galliāe civitātes de bello 10 consul-
tābant, nuncios legationesque in omnes partes dimittēbant, 
et 11 quid reliquī consilii f capērenta atque unde initium belli 
fiēret, explorābant, nocturnāque in locis desertīs 12 concilia

---

a § 140, 5.  c 77, 5.  e § 126, R. III.
b § 140, Obs. 2.  d § 140, 1, 3d.  f § 106. R. VIII
habēbant. Neque ullum ferè totius hiēmis tempus sine solici
tudine Cæsāris intercessit, 1 quin a alīquem de conciliis ac motu Gallōrum nuncium accipēret. a In his ab Lucio Ros-
cio legāto, quem legiōni decimā tertīa præsecērat, certior est factus, magnas Gallōrum copias eārum civitātum, quæ
a Armorīcē appellantur, oppugnandi sui causā convenisse: neque longius b millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abstuīsse, sed nuncio allāto de victoriā Cæsāris, discessisse, adeo ut fu-
gae similis discernētur.

54. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitātis ad se evocā-
tis, aliās c territando, cūm se scire, quae fiērent, denunciāret, aliās cohortando, magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senōnes, quae est civītas in primis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Cæsar apud eos regem constituērat (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu in Gali-

dian Cæsāris, cujusque majores regnum obtinuērant), inter-
facēre publico consilio conāti, cūm ille præsensisset ac pro-
fugisset, usque ad fines insecūti regno d domōque expulē-

rant: et, missis ad Cæsārem satisfaciēndi causā legātis, cūm
is omnem ad se senātum venīre jussisset, e dicto audientes

non fuērunt. f Tantum e apud homines barbāros valuit, esse

repertos aliquos principes bellī inferendi, tantamque omni-
bus voluntātīonem g attulit, ut prāter Æduos et Remos, quos h præcipuo semper honōre Cæsar habuit,
7 altēros pro vetēre ac perpetūa erga Popūlum Romānūm fide, 7 altēros pro recentibus Gallīci belli officiis, i nulla ferē
civītas fuērit non j suspecta nobis. k Idque adeo haud scio

mirandumne sit, cūm complurībus aliis de causis, tum max-
imē, l quōd, qui virtūte belli omnībus gentībus præfereban-
tur, tantum se ejus opinīonis deperdidisse, ut a Popūlo Ro-
māno imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

55. Trevīri vero atque Indutiomārus totius hiēmis nullum
tempus intermisērunt, quin a trans Rhenum legātos mittērent,

a § 140, 3. c 124, 12. e § 116, Obs. 3.

b § 120, Obs. 3. d § 136, R. LII. f § 134, Obs. 3.
civitātes sollicitārent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnā parte exercītūs nostri interfectā, multo minōrem superesse dicērent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitāti Germanōrum persuādēri potuit, ut Rhenum transīret, cūm "se bis expertos" dicērent, "Ariovisti bello et Tenchtherōrum transitu, non esse amplius fortūnam tentandam." Hāc spe lapsus Indu-tionmārus, nihilominus copias cogēre, exercēre, a finitīmis equos parāre, exīles damnatosque totā Galliā magni prē-miis ad se allicēre cēpit. Ac tantam sibi jam iis rebus in Galliā auctoritātem comparavērat, ut undīque ad eum lega-tiones concurrērent, gratiam atque amicitiam publicē priva-timque petērent.

56. Ubi intellexit 2ultro ad se venīri, altērā ex parte Se-nōnes Carnutesque conscientiā facinōris instigāri, altērā Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romānis parāre, neque sibi 1 voluntariōrum copias defōre, si ex finībus sui progrēdi cō-pisset: armātum concilium indicit (hoc more Gallōrum est initium belli), quo lege commūni omnes pubēres armāti convenire consuērunt; qui 2 ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudīnis omnībus cruciatibus affectus necātur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem b factiōnis, genērum suum (quem supra demonstrāvimus, Cæsāris se-cūtum fidem, ab eo non discēssisse), hostem judicat, bonā que ejus pubēcat. His rebus confectīs, in concilio pronun-tiat, arcessitum se a Senonisibus et Carnutibus aliisque com-plūribus Galliāe civitātibus, huc iter factūrum per fines Re-mōrum, eorumque agros populātūrum, ac priūs, quām id faciat, Labiēni castra oppugnāturum: quae fiēri velit, præcipit.

57. Labiēnus, cūm et locī naturā et manu munitissimīs castris sese tenēret, de suo ac legiōnis pericūlo nihil timēbat; ne quam occasiōnem rei bene gerendae dimittēret, cogitābat. Itāque a Cingetorige atque ejus propinquis ora-

---

*a § 126, R. III. & 63, 2.  b § 93, 2.
*b § 140, 1, 1st.  c § 136, Obs. 5, (de.)
*c § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)  d § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)
*e § 140, 1, 1st.  f § 112, R. I.
*g 37, 3.  h § 97, R.
1 94, 1, 2d, & 100, 2
16
tiōne Indutiomāri cognōtā, quam in concilio habuērat, nun-
cios mittit ad finitīmas civitātes, equitesque undīque evōcat: iis a certum diem conveniendi dicit. Intērim propē quotidiē
cum omni equitātu Indutiomārus 1 sub castris ejus vagabātur, alīās b ut situm castrōrum cognoscēret, c alīās b colloquendī aut
territandi causā: equītes plērumque omnes tela intra vallum
conjiciēbant. Labiēnus suos intra munitiōnes continēbat, tim-
orisque opinīōnem, 2quibuscumque d potērat rebus, augēbat.

58. Cum majōre in dies contemtiōne Indutiomārus ad e
casta accedēret, nocte unā, 3 intromissis equītibus omnium
finitimārum civitātum, 4 quos arcessendos curavērat, tantā
diligentiā omnes suos custodiēs intra castra continuit, ut
nullā ratione ea res enunciāri aut ad Trevīros perferri pos-
set. c Intērim ex consuetudīnā quotidiānā Indutiomārus ad
casta accēdit, atque ibi magnam partem diēi consūmit;
equītes tela conjiciunt, et 6 magnā cum contumeliā verbōrum
nostros ad pugnam evōcant. Nullo ab nostris dato responsō,
ubi visum est, sub vespĕrum 7 dispersi f ac dissipāti f discē-
dunt. Subītō Labiēnus duābus portis omnem equitātum
emittit; 8 prācipit atque interdīcit, proterritīs hostibus atque
in fugam conjectis (quod 6 fore, sicut accādit, vidēbat), unum
omnes petant h Indutiomārum; neu quis quem priūs vulnē-
ret, h quàm illum interfecum vidērit, quōd 9 morā reliquŏrum
spatium nactum illum effugēre nolēbat: magna propōnit
īis, a qui occidērint, i præmia: submittī cohortes equītibus
subsidio. 10 Comprōbat homīnis consilium fortūna; et, cūm
unum omnes petērent, in ipso flumīnis vado reprehensī
Indutiomārus interficītūr, caputque ejus refertur in castra:
redeuntes equītes, quos possunt, consectantur atque occī-
dunt. Hāc re cognītā, omnes Eburōnum et Nervīōrum,
quē convenērunt, copiāe discēdunt; pauloquē habuit post id
factum Ĉaeσar quietiōrem Galliam.

a § 123, R. d 37, 7, Note 2. e 37, 9, Note 3.
b 124, 12. e § 136, Obs. 7. h § 140, 1, 3d.
c § 140, 1, 2d. f § 98, Obs. 10. i § 141, Obs. 3.
BOOK VI.

GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Commotions throughout nearly all Gaul in consequence of the overthrow and death of Tiberius—Chap. 1-8.

II. Cæsar's expedition against the Suevi—Chap. 9-28.

III. Punishment of Ambiorix and the Eburones—Chap. 29-44.

1. Multis de causis Cæsar, majorem Galliæ motum expectans, per Marcum Silānum, Caium Antistium Regīnum, Titum Sextium, legātos, 1 dīlectum habère instituit: simul ab Cneio Pompeio proconsūle petit, 2 quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicae causā remanēret, 3 quos 4 ex Cisalpīnā Galliā consūlis sacramento rogāvisset, 5 ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci jubēret: 6 magnī 7 interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opiniōnem Galliæ existīmans, tantas vidēri Italīæ facultātes, 8 ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modō id brevi tempōre 9 sārcīri, sed etiam majorībus adaugēri copiis posset. 10 Quod 11 cum Pompeius et reipublicae et amicitiae tribuisset, 12 celeriter confecto per suos dilectum, tribus ante exactam hiēmem et constitūtis et adductis legiōnibus, duplicatōque eārum cohortium numēro, quas cum Quinto Titurio amisērat, et celeritāte et copiis docuit, quid Populi Romāni disciplīna atque opes possent. 13

2. Interfecto Indutiomāro, 14 ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquis a Trevīris imperium desertur. Illī finītīmos Germanōs sollicitāre et pecuniām pollicēri non desistunt: cūm ab proxīmis impetrāre non possent, ulteriōres tentant. Inventis nonnullīs civitātibus, jurejurando inter se confirmant, 15 obsidibusque de pecuniā cavent: Ambiorīgem sibi societāte et fædēre adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognītīs, Cæsar, cūm

---

1.  
2.  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  
7.  
8.  
9.  
10.  
11.  
12.  
13.  
14.  
15.  

a § 141, Obs. 7.  
b 37, (mīlitēs.)  
c § 140, 1, 3d.  
d § 113, Exc. I.  
e § 145, R.  
f § 140, 1, 1st.  
g 38.  
h 81, 1.  
i § 140, 5.
undique bellum parari videt, Nervios, Aduatucos, Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germânis, esse in armis, Senones 1 ad imperatum non venire, et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treviriis Germânos crebris legationibus sollicitari; maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

3. Itaque nondum hieme confectâ, proximis quatuor coactis legionibus, de impríviso in fines Nerviorum contendit, et prius, quàm illi aut convenire aut profugère possent, magnó pecóris atque homínium número capto, atque eâ prædâ militibus concessâ, vastatisque agris, in deditiónem venire atque obsides sibi dare coegit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo 4 vere, ut instituērat, indicto, cùm reliqui, præter Senones, Carnutes, Treviriosque, venissent, initium belli ac defectiōnis hoc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postpone videōtur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus, civitatemque patrum memoria conjunxerant; sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu pronunciāta, eōdem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur, magnisque itineribus eō pervēnit.

4. Cognito ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consilli fuērat, jubet in oppīda multitudinem convenire; conantibus, priusquām id effici posset, adesse Romānos nunciatur; necessariō sententiā desistunt, legatosque deprecandi causā ad Cæsarem mittunt; adeunt per Æduos, quorum antiquitātes erat in fide civitas. Libenter Cæsar petentibus Æduis dat veniam, excusationemque accipit; quòd aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis, esse arbitrabatur. Obsidibus imperātis centum, hos Æduis custodiendos tradit. Eōdem Carnutes legātos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientēlā: eādem

---

\[ \text{a} \ § 145, \ \text{R.} \]  \[ \text{d} \ § 140, \ 4. \]  \[ \text{e} \ § 106, \ 1. \]
\[ \text{b} \ 96, \ 2. \]  \[ \text{g} \ § 126, \ \text{R. III.} \]  \[ \text{h} \ § 107, \ 1. \]
\[ \text{c} \ § 147, \ \text{R. LXI.} \]  \[ \text{i} \ § 111, \ \text{R.} \]
ferunt responsa. Perāgit concilium Cæsar, equitesque impērat civitatibus.  

5. Hāc parte Galliā pacātā, 1 totus et mente et anīmo in bellum Trevirōrum et Ambiorīgis insistit. Cavarīnum cum equitātū Senōnum secum proficiscīci jubet, 2 ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiā, aut ex eo, quod meruērat, odio civitātīs, motūs existat.  
   His rebus constitūtis, quōd 3 pro explorātō habēbat, Ambiorīgem prēliō non esse concertāturum, 4 reliqua ejus consilia anīmo 5 circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapīi propinquī Eburōnum finībus, 6 perpetuīs paludībus 6 silvisque munitī, qui uni ex Galliā de pace ad Cāsārem legātōs nunquam misērant. Cum iī esse hospitium Ambiorīgi  
   sciēbat: item per Trevīros venisse Germānīs 7 in amicitiam, cognōverat. Hāc priūs 6 illīs 6 detrahenda auxilia existimābat, quàm ipsum bello lacessēret; ne, desperātā salūtē, aut se in Menapios abdēret, aut 7 cum Transrhenānīs congrēdi cogerētur. Hoc inīto consilio, totius exercītūs impedimenta ad Labīēnum in Trevīros mittit, duasque legiones ad eum proficiscīci jubet: ipse cum legionībus expeditīs quīnque in Menapios proficiscītūr. Illī, nullā coactā 8 manu, 9 locī praevisio 9 fretī, in silvas paludēsque configurēunt, suāque eōdem confērunt.  

6. Cāsar, partītis copiīs cum Caio Fabio legāto et Marco Crasso quāstōrē, celeriterque 10 effectīs pontibus 11 adit tripartītō, ædificia vicosque incendit, magnō pecōris atque homīnum numēro 1 potūr. Quibus rebus coactī Menapīi, legātos ad eum pacis petendae causā mittunt. Ille, obsidībus acceptīs hostium se habitūrum numēro confirmat, si aut Ambiorīgem, aut ejus legātos, finībus suis receperissent. His confirmātās rebus, Commium Arebātem cum equitātu custōdis locō in Menapīis reliquinquit; ipse in Trevīros proficiscītūr.

---

1 § 123, R. & 5, 1. 2 § 111, R. 3 § 126, R.III. & 5,1. 
2 § 140, 1, 2d. 4 § 112, R. II. 5 § 119, R. 
6 § 129, R. 6 § 110, Obs. 1. 7 § 121, R. XXVI.
7. Dum hæc a Cæsàre geruntur, Trevīri, magnis coactis peditātūs equitātūsque copiis, Labiēnum a cum unā legiōne, quæ in eōrum finibus hiemābat, adorīri parābant: jamque ab eo non longius bidui viā b abèrant, cūm duas venisse c legiōnes missu Cæsāris cognoscunt. Posītis castris a d millibus b passuum quindīcim, auxilia Germanōrum expectāre constituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cognīto consilio, sperāns, temeritāte e eōrum fore alīquam dimicandī facultātem, præsidio f cohortium quinque impedimentis, cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnōque equitātū contra hostem proficisciur, et, mille passuum intermisso spatio, f castra commīnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficili transītū g flumen ripisque præruptīs: hoc neque ipse transīre in animo habēbat, neque hostes transituros existimabat. Au- gebatur auxiliorum quotidiem spec. 2 Loquitur in consilio palam, "quoniam Germāni appropinquare dicunt, h sese suas exercitūsque fortūnas 3 in dubium non devocatūrum, et postero die primā luce castra motūrum." Celerīter hæc ad hostes deferuntur, ut i ex magno Gallōrum equitātūs numero nonnullis 4 Gallicis rebus k favēre natura cogēbat. Labiēnus noctu, tribūnis militum 5 primisque ordinibus coactis, quid sui sit consilii, propōnit, et, quo facilius hostibus timōris det 1 suspiciōnem, majōre strepitu e et tumultu, quàm Popūli Romāni fert consuetūdo, castra movēri jubet. His rebus e fugā similēm profectionem effīcit. Hæc quoque per exploratōres ante lucem, in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum, ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissīmum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli, cohortāti inter se, "ne sperātam prædam ex manibus dimittērent; 6 longum esse, perterrītis Romānis, Germanōrum auxilium expectāre, neque suam pati dignitā

---

*a § 136, R. LII.  
b § 132, R. XLII. &  
c § 120, Obs. 3.  
d § 129, R.  
e 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.  
f 109, 2.  
g § 106, R. VII.  
h § 140, 6.  
i § 140, Obs. 1.  
j § 112, R. V.  
k § 140, 1, 2d.
tem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum, a præsertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant;" flumen b transi et iniquo loco b prœlium committère non dubitant. Qua c fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnes citra flumen elicēret, eodem usus simulātionē d itineris, placidē progrediebātur. Tum, præmissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulo quodam collocātis, "Habētis," inquit, "milītes, e quam petitis, facultatem ubi, hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenēris: præstāte eandem nobis 1 ducibus virtūtem, quam sæpēnumēro imperatori pretextis: adesse eum et hæc coram cœrēre, existimāte." Simul signa ad hostem converti e aciemque dirīgi jubet, et, paucis turnmis f præsidio "ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquis equīs ad latēra dispōnit. Celeriter nostri clamōre sublāto pīla in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi prāter spem, quos fugēre credēbant, g infestis signis ad se ire vidērunt, impētum modō ferre non potuērunt, ac primo concursu i in fugam conjectī, proxīmas silvas petiērunt: quos Labiēnus equītatu consectatus, magno numēro interfecit, compluribus captīs, paucis pōst diēbus civitātem recēpit: nam Germāni, qui auxilio veniēbant, perceptā Trevirōrum fugā, sese domum contulērunt. Cum iis propinqui Indutiomāri, qui defectionis auctōres fuērant, comitātī eos, ex civitāte excessērē. Cingetōrīgi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstrāvīmus, principātus atque imperium est traditum.

9. Cæsar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treviros venit, duabus de causīs Rhenum transire constituit: quorum erat al tēra, e quod auxilia contra se Treviris misērant; altēra, f ne Ambiōrīx ad eos receptum habēret. His constitūtis rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo antē exercitum transduxērat, facēre pontem instituit. Notā atque institūtā ratiōne, magno

---

a § 116, Obs. 4.  b § 136, Obs. 5. (in.)  c § 117.  d § 121, R. XXVI.  e § 145, R. & 33.  f § 123, R  s 90, 4.  g § 129, R.  h 38, & 91.  i § 114, Obs. 4, (illīs.)  j § 117.  k 38.  l 27, 10.
DE BELLO GALlico.

militum studio, paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Firmo in Trevirs præsidio ad pontem relictō, ne quis ab iis subito motus oriētur, a reliquas copias equitatumque transdücit. Ubii, qui ante obsīdes dedērant atque in deditionem venērant, 1 purgandi sui causā ad eum legātos mittunt, qui doceant, b "neque ex suā civitāte auxilia c in Trevirōs missā, d "neque ab se fidem læsam : d" petunt atque orant, "ut sibi parcat ; e ne commūni odio Germanōrum innocentes pro nocentibus pœnas pendant ; " si amplius obsidūm velit, dare pollicentur. 4 Cognitā Cæsar causā repērit, ab Suevis auxilia missā esse : 4 Ubiorum satisfactiōnem accipit; aditus viasque in Suevos perquirīt.

10. Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiiis certior, Suevos 4 omnes unum in locum copias cogēre, atque iis nationibus, h quae sub eōrum sit imperio, denunciāre, uti auxilia pedi-tâtūs equitātūsque mittant. e His cognitiis rebus, rem frumentariam providet, castris b idoneum locum deligit, Ubiiis h impērat, ut pecōra dedūcant e suāque omnia ex agris in oppida confērant, sperans, barbāros atque 6 imperītos homīnes, c inopiae cibariōrum afflictos, ad inīquam pugnandi conditiōnem posse dedūci : k mandat, ut crebros exploratōres in Suevos mittant, e quaeque apud eos gerantur, l cognoscant. e Illi imperāta faciunt, et, paucis diēbus intermissis, 6 referunt, "Suevos 4 omnes, posteāquam certiores nuncii de exercītū Romanōrum venērint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coēgissent, l penītus ad extrēmos fines sese recepisse : d silvam esse ibi 7 infinitā magnitudinē, quae appellātur m Bacēnis: hanc e longē introrsus pertinēre, et, pro natīvo muro objectam, Cheruscōs 8 ab Suevis, Suevosque ab Cheruscis, injuriis incursiōnibusque prohibēre: ad ejus initium silvæ Suevos 4 adventum Romanōrum expectāre constituisse. 7d

a § 140, 1, 2d. 
  e § 140, 1, 3d. 
  i § 140, 6. 

b § 141, Obs. 2, 4th. 
  f § 106, R. VIII. 
  k 87. 

c § 145, R. 
  g 104, 1. 

1 § 140, 5. 

d 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d. 
  h § 123, R. 

m § 141, Obs. 5, 1st.
11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non aliēnum, esse vidētur, de Galliæ Germaniæque moribus, et quo c différant eæ nationes inter sese, proponēre. In Galliâ, non solùm in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed pâne etiam in singūlis domĭbus, factiōnes sunt: earumque factiōnum principes sunt, qui sum-mam auctoritātem eōrum judicio habère existimantur, quo- rum ad arbitrium judiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. 6 Idque ejus rei causā antiquitūs institūtum vidētur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiōrem auxilliēgēret: suos enim quisquē opprīmi et circumvenīri non patītur, neque, alīter si faciant, ullam inter suos habent auctoritātem. 7 Hāc eādem ratio est in summâ totius Galliæ: namque omnes civitātes in partes divisae sunt duas.

12. Cūm Cæsar in Galliam venit, alterius k factiōnis principes erant Ædui, alterius Sequāni. Hi cūm per se minūs valērent, quōd summa auctoritas antiquitūs erat in Æduis, magnāque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānos atque Ario-vistum sibi adjunxērant, eosque ad se magnā jactūris pollicitationibusque perduxērant. 7 Prēelis verò complūribus factis secundis, atque omni nobilitāte Æduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā c antecessērant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Æduis ad se transducērent, obsidesque ab iis principum filios accipērent, et publicē jurāre cogērent, nihil se contra Sequānōs consilii initūros; et partem finitimi agri, per vim occupātam, possidērent: Galliāque totius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Divitiācus, auxiliii petendi causā Romam ad Senātum profectus, infectā re rediērat. Adventu Cæsāris factā commutatio ne rerum, obsidibus Æduis reddītis, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, no-vis m per Cæsārem comparātis (quōd hi, qui se ad eōrum

---

*a* 67, 5, Note.  
*b* 51.  
*c* § 123, R.  
*d* § 140, 5.  
*e* 26, 5.  
*f* § 141, Obs. 3.  
*g* § 121. Exc. 1.  
*h* § 140, 1, 21.  
*i* 90.  
*j* 27, 10.  
*k* § 108, R. XII.  
*m* 19, (clientēlis.)
amicitiam aggregaverant, meliöre conditione a atque aequo-öre imperio se b uti vidébant), 1 reliquis rebus c eorum, gra- tiá, dignitate d amplificatá, Sequáni principátum emisérant. In eorum locum Remi successérant; 3 quos quod adaequare apud Cæsárem grátiá intelligebátur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Æduis conjungi poterant, 5 se Remi e in clientélam dicábant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur. Ita et novam et repentè collectam auctóritatem tenébant. Eo tum statu f res erat, ut longè principés g haberentur h Ædui, secundum locum dignitátis Remi obtinérrent. h

13. In omni Galliá eorum homínium, qui 6 aliquo sunt nu- méro i atque honóre, i généra sunt duo: nam plebes pæne servórum habétur loco, 9 quae per se nihil audet et nullo adhibé tur consilio. k Plerique, cùm aut 7 ære l aliëno, aut magnitudine tributórum, aut injuriá potentiórum premuntur, sese in servitütem dicant nobilibus: 8 in hos eadem omnia sunt jura, quæ domínis m in servos. Sed de his duóbus generibús 9 altérum est Druídum, altérum equitum. 10 Illi rebus a divinis intérsunt, sacrificia publica ac priváta 11 proçurant, religiones interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinæ causā concurrit, magnóque 12 ii sunt apud eos honóre. f Nam féræ de omnibús controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est o admissum faciñus, si cádes facta, si de hæreditaté, si de finibus controversia est, i idem decernunt; præmia pænasque constituant: si qui aut privátus aut publicus eorum i decreto p non stetit, sacrificiis interdictum. Hæc pæna apud eos est gravissíma. 14 Quibus ita est interdictum, ii numero impiórum ac scelérateorum habentur: iis omnes decédunt, 16 aditum eorum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommódi ac-

a § 121, R. XXVI.  i § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)  1 § 129, R. b § 145, R.  g § 103, R. & Obs. 2.  =§ 112, R. II. c 109,2. & §98,Obs.4. h § 140, 1, 1st.  b § 112, R. I. d 39, & 91.  i § 106, R. VII.  a § 140, Obs. 2. e § 123, R.  k § 126. R. III.  p § 112, R. V.
cipiant: neque iis potentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus præest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitāte, succēdit; at, si sunt plurares pares, suffragio a Druidum deligitur, nonnunc quam etiam armis a de principātu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnūtum, b quae regio totius Galliæ media habētur, considunt in loco consecrāto. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt, eorumque decrētis c judiciisque parent. 4 Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translāta esse existimātur: et nunc, qui d s diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illō descendi causā proficiscuntur.

14. Druides a bello abesse consuerunt, neque tribūta una cum reliquis pendunt; 6 militiæ vacatiōnem omniumque rerum habent immunitātem. Tantis excitāti 8 præmiis, et suā sponte multi in disciplīnam convenjunt, et a parentibus propinquīisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numērum versuum ediscerel dicuntur: itāque annos nonnulli vicēnos in disciplinā permānent. Neque fas esse existimant, 10 ea literis mandāre, cūm in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis utantur literis. 11 Id mihi duābus de causis instituisse videntur; quòd neque in vulgum discipliñam efferrī velint, neque eos, qui discant, literis confüssos, minus memorīæ studere: quod a fere plerisque accīdit, ut præsidio literārum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. 13 In primis hoc volunt persuadēre, 14 non interire anēmas, sed ab aliis post mortem transīre ad alios: atque hoc maxime ad virtūtem excitāri putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa præterea de sideribus atque eōrum motu, de mundi ac terrārum magnitudine, de rerum naturā, de Deōrum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et juvenīti tradunt.

---

a § 129, R.  
d 37, (ii.)  
s § 141, Obs. 3.  
b § 103, R. & Obs. 2.  
e 26, 1.  
h 37, 9, Note 3.  
c § 112, R. V.  
f § 140, Obs. 3.  
1 § 140, 1, 4th.
15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cùm est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ante Cæsaris adventum ferè quotannis accidere solèbat, uti aut ipsi injurias inferrent, aut illàtas propulsàrent), omnes in bello versantur: atque eorum ut quisque est génère copiisque amplissímus, ita plurímos circum se ambactos clientesque habent. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque novérunt.

16. Natio est omnium Gallorum admodum dedita religiónibus, atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in præliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant, aut se immolaturos vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus utuntur; quòd, pro vità hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse aliter Deorum immortalium nomen placari arbitrantur: publicèque ejusdem genëris habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immāni magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminalibus membra vivis hominibus complet, quibus succensis, circumventi flammà examinantur homines. Supplicia eòrum, qui in furto, aut in latrocínio, aut alíquà noxà sint comprehensi, gratiòra Diis immortalibus esse arbitrans: sed, cùm ejus genëris copia defìcit, ad innocens supplìcia descendunt.

17. Deum maxìmè Mercurium colunt: hujus sunt pluríma simulacra, hunc omnium inventörem artium ferunt, hunc viàrum atque itinérüm ducem, hunc ad questus pecuniæ mercaturasque habère vim maximam arbitrants. Post hunc, Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam: de his eandem ferè, quam reliquæ gentes, habent opiniönum; Apollinem morbos depellère, Minervam opérum atque artificiorum initia tradere; Jovem imperium célestium tenère; Martem bella regère. Huic, cùm prælio dimicàre constituérunt, ea, quæ bello cepérint, plerumque de-

\[\text{Notes.}\]
\[\text{d§ 111, R.}\]
\[\text{e§ 106, R. VII.}\]
\[\text{f§ 125, R.}\]
\[\text{g§ 141, Obs. 8.}\]
\[\text{h§ 145, R.}\]
\[\text{i§ 101, Obs. 4.}\]
Quae superaverint, animalia capta immolant; reliquas res in unum locum conférunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumúlos locis consecrátis consciári licet: neque sǽpe accidit, ut, neglectá quispiam religióne, aut capta apud se occultáre, aut posita tollère audéret: gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciátu constitútum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognátos prædícant, idque ab Druidibus prodítum dicunt. Ob eam causam, spatio omnis tempórís non numério diérum, sed noctium, finiunt; dies natales et mensium et annórum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequeántur. In reliquis vitae instítutís, hoc féré ab reliquis différent, quod suos libéros, nisi cùm adolevérint, ut munus militiæ sustinère possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur; filiumque puerili ætate in publico, in conspectu patris assistère, turpe ducent.


a § 141, Obs. 3. d 19, (animalia.) 
♭ § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) e § 126, R. III. 
♭ § 98, Obs. 6.  
♭ 109, 2.  
♭ § 140, 1, 1st. i § 114, R. & 19
20. Quae civitates commodius suam rem publicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de republicâ a finitimis rumôre ac famâ accepèsit, ut ad magistrâtum deferat, neve cum quo alio communicet: quod sæpe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terrèri, et ad facinus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capère cognitum est. Magistrâtus, que visa sunt, occultant; quœque esse ex usu judicavērīnt, multitudīni produnt. De republicâ nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.


22. Agricultūræ non student; majorque pars victūs eōrum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam agrum modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistrâtus ac principes in annos singulōs gentībus cognitionibusque homīnum, qui unā coērint, quantum, et quo loco visum est, agri attribuunt, atque anno pòst aliò transire cogunt. Ejus rei multas affērunt causas; ne assiduā consuetudine capti, studium belli gerendi agricultūrâ commūn-
tent; a ne latos fines parâre studeant, a potentioresque humiliores possessionibus b expellant; a ne 1accuratius ad frigôra atque æstus vitandos c ædificient; a ne qua oriantur a pecuniae cupiditas, quà ex re factiones dissensionesque nascentur; ut 2anîmi æquitâte plebem contineant, cùm suas quisque opes cum potentissimis æquari videat.d.

23. Civitatibus e maxîma laus est, quàm latissîmas circum se vastâtis finibus solitudines habère. Hoc 3proprium virtùtis f existîmant, expulsos agris g finitimos h cedère, neque quenquam b prope audère consistère: simul hoc se h fore tuîores arbitrantur, repentînæ incursiônîs timòre i sublāto. Cùm bellum civitas aut illātum defendit, aut infert; magistrâtus, qui ei bello k présint, ut vitæ necisque habeant potestâtēm, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communînis-magistrâtus, sed principes régionum atque pagôrûm inter suos 4jus dicunt, controversiasque minuant. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quà extra fines cujusque civitātis fiunt; atque ea juventūtis exercendae m ac desidiæ minuendae causā fieri prædicant. Atque, ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, "se ducem fore; g qui" sequi velint, profiteantur; o "'consurgunt ii, qui et causam et homînem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ab multitudîne collaudantur: qui ex iis secûtì non sunt, in desertôrum ac prodistôrum numéro ducuntur, omniumque iis p rerum postea fides derogâtur. Hospîtes violâre, fas non putant; qui n quâque de causâ ad eos venîrent, ab injuriâ prohibent, sanctosque habent; iis omnium domus patent, victûsque communicâtur.

24. 6Ac fuit antea tempus, cùm Germânos Galli virtûte superârent,ultro bella inferrent, propter homînun multitudînem agrîque inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mittérrent.

---

a § 140, 1, 2d.  
§ 107, R. IX.  
1 § 141, R. II. Observ. 2, 4th.

b § 136, R. LII.  
§ 136, R. LII.  
m 112, 5.

c § 98, Observ. 2, & 112, 7.  
§ 145, R.  
141, Observ. 3.

d § 140, Observ. 3.  
i 109, 2.  
141, 1.

e § 110, Observ. 1.  
k § 112, R. I.  
§ 45, I. 1.

f § 140, 1, 2d.  
§ 107, R. IX.  
1 § 141, R. II. Observ. 2, 4th.

§ 136, R. LII.  
§ 136, R. LII.  
m 112, 5.

§ 98, Observ. 2, & 112, 7.  
§ 145, R.  
141, Observ. 3.

§ 140, Observ. 3.  
i 109, 2.  
141, 1.

§ 110, Observ. 1.  
k § 112, R. I.  
§ 45, I. 1.
Itaque ea, quae fertilissima sunt, Germaniae loca cirum Hercyniam silvam (quam a Eratosthēni et quibusdam Græcis famâ notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcæ Tectosāges occupaverunt, atque ibi consedērunt. Quae b gens ad hoc tempus iis sedībus sese contīnet, 1 summamque habet justitiae et bellīcæ laudis opinīōnem: nunc quōque in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā, quā Germāni, permanēnt, eōdem victu e et cultu corpōris utuntur; 2 Gallis d autem Provinciæ propinquītas, et transmarinarum rerum notitia, 3 multa ad copiam atque usus largītur. Paulātim assuefæcti superāri, multisque victi prōeiliis, ne se quidem ipsi e cum illis virtūte compārant.

25. Hujus Hercyniae silvae, quae suprâ demonstrāta est, latitūdo novem diērum iter 4 expeditō 5 patet: non enim alīter 6 finīri potest, neque mensūras itinērum novērunt. Oriitur ab Helvetiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rectāque plumīnis Danubii regiōne h pertīnet ad fines Dacōrum et Anartium: hinc se flectit 6 sinistrorsus, diversis ab fluīmine regionībus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit: neque quisquam est hujus Germaniæ, qui se aut adīsse ad initium ejus silvae dicat, 1 cūm diērum iter f sexaginta processērit, k aut quà ex loco oriātur, l accepērit. Multa in eā genera a ferārum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint: m ex quibus, quae maxīmē differeant ab cētēris et n memoriae n prostanda o videantur, hēc sunt.

26.  8 Est bos cervi figurā, cujus a mediā fronte inter aures unum cornu existit, excelsius magisque directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus. Ab ejus summo, 9 sicut palmae, rami quàm latē diffunduntur. Eādem est feminæ marisque naturā, eādem forma magnitudōque cornuam.

---

a § 145, R. b 38, 2. c § 121, R. XXVI. d § 110, R. e 33, 1. f § 132, R. XLII. g § 112, R. XVII. h § 129, R. i § 141, R. I. k § 140, Obs. 3. l § 140, 5. m § 141, Obs. 3. n § 126, R. III. o 108, 6. p § 106, R. VII.
27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur 1 Alces. Harum est consimilis capreis b figura et 2 variëtas pellium; sed magnitudine c paulo antecedunt, mütileque sunt cornibus, e et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quiëtis causâ procumbunt, neque, si 3 quo afflictæ casu concidèrint, erigère sese aut subleváveis possunt. His d sunt arbôres pro cubilibus: 4 ad eas se aplicant, atque ita, paulum modò reclinâtæ, quiëtem capiunt: quarum ex vestigiis cùm est animadversum a venatòribus, quò se recipère consuèrint, e omnes eo loco aut a radiçibus subruunt, aut accident arbôres tantùm, ut summa species eârum stantium relinquâtur. Huc cùm se consue tudîne reclinavérint, 5 infirmas arbôres pondère afflìgunt, atque una ipsis concidùnt.


29. 10 Cæsar, postquãm per Ubios exploratôres compèrit, Suëvos sese in silvas recepìsse, l inopiam frumenti veritûs, quòd, ut supra demonstravimus, minímè omnes Germâni agricultûræ student, constituit, non progrèdi longiûs: sed, ne omnîno metum redítûs sui barbaris m tollûret, atque ut

---

a § 103, R. V.  e § 140, 5.  i 114, R. & Obs.4.  
b 19, formis, § 111, R.  f § 106, R. VII.  k § 125, R.  
c § 128, R.  g 112, R. V.  l 98, 2.  
d § 112, R. II.  h § 129, R.  m § 123, R. & 19.
eōrum auxilia tardāret, reducto exercītu, partem ultīmam pontis, quae ripas Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudīnem pe-
dum ducentōrum rescindit; atque in extrēmo ponte a turrim tabulatōrum b quatuor constituit, præsidiumque cohortium b
duodēcim pontis tuendi causā ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco c præsidīōque Caium Volca-
tium Tullum adolescēntem præfēcit: ipse, cūm maturescēre
frumenta incipērent, d ad bellum Ambiorīgis prōfectus (per
Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliāe maxīma, atque ab
ripis Rheni finibusque Trevirōrum ad Nervios pertīnet, mil-
libusque e amplius f quīngentīs in longitudīnem patet), Lu-
cium Minucium Basīlum cum omni equitātu prae威尼斯, 1 si
quid celeritāte itinēris atque opportunitāte tempōris profi-
cēre possīt; monet, ut ignes fieri in castrīs prohibeant,5 ne
qua ejus adventūs procūl significatio fiat: b sese confestim
subsequi i dicit.

30. Basīlus, 2 ut imperātum est, facit; celerīter contrāque
omnia opinīōnem conquētus atque prōpectus (per
Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliāe maxīma, atque ab
ripis Rheni finibusque Trevirōrum ad Nervios pertīnet, mil-
libusque e amplius f quīngentīs in longitudīnem patet), Lu-
cium Minucium Basīlum cum omni equitātu prae威尼斯, 1 si
quid celeritāte itinēris atque opportunitāte tempōris profi-
cēre possīt; monet, ut ignes fieri in castrīs prohibeant,5 ne
qua ejus adventūs procūl significatio fiat: b sese confestim
subsequi i dicit.

---

a 17, 1.  f § 120, Obs. 3.  1 § 140, 1, 4th.
b § 106, R. VII.  g § 140, 1, 3d.  n§ 140, 4.
c § 123, R.  h § 140, 1, 2d.  a § 108, R. XII.
d § 140, Obs. 4.  i 94, 3.  o 109, 2.
e § 132, R. XLII.  k 124, 7.
angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnabantibus, illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum, et ad vitandum, multum fortunae valuit.

31. Ambiorix copias suas judicióne non conduxerit, quod prælio dimicandum non existimavit, an tempore exclúsus et repentinó equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquam exercitum subséqui credéret, dubium est: sed certe, dimissis per agros nunciis, sibi quemque consulére jussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentés palúdes profugit: qui proximi Oceánum fuérunt, hi insúlis se occultavérunt, quas æstus efficere consuérunt: multi, ex suis finibus egressi, se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Cativolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburónum, qui una cum Ambiorígige consilium iniérat, atáte jam conceptus, cùm labórem aut belli aut fugæ ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorígem, qui ejus consilii auctor fuisset, taxó, cujus magna in Galliá Germaniáque copia est, se examinavít.

32. Segni Condrusique ex gente et numero Germanórum, qui sunt, inter Eburónes Trevirosque, legátos ad Cæsarém misérunt, orátum, ne se in hostium numero ducéret, neve omnium Germanórum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam judicáret: nihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorígige auxilia misisse. Cæsar, exploráta re quæstiónis captivórum, si qui ad eos Eburónes ex fugá convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperávit: si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violatúrum negavít. Tum copiis in tres partes distribútis, impedimenta omnium legiónum Aduatúcam contúlit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc ferè est in mediis Eburónum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causá

---

\[a\] § 107, Obs. 8.  
\[b\] 124, 13.  
\[c\] § 140, 1, 4th.  
\[d\] 113, 5.  
\[e\] § 112, R. V.  
\[f\] § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)  
\[g\] § 141, R. III.  
\[h\] § 129, R.  
\[i\] § 148, R. LXIII.  
\[k\] § 140, 1, 3d.  
\[l\] § 103, R. V. & Obs. 2.  
\[m\] § 140, 2, & 80, 2.
conscendérent. Hunc cùm reliquis rebus locum probábat, tum, quód superiòris anni munitiōnes intégrae manēbant, ut militum labórem sublevāret.\footnote{a} Præsidium\footnote{b} impedimentis legiōnem quatuordecemam reliquīt, unam ex iis tribus, quas próxìmë conscriptas ex Italìà transduxērat. Eì legiōnì\footnote{c} cas-trisque Quintum Tullium Cicerōnem præfìcit, ducentosque equés attribuìt.

33. Partitò exercītu, Titum Labiènum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Oceānum versus, in eas partes, quæ Menapios attingunt, profìcisci jubes: Caium Trebonium cum pari legiōnum numero ad eam regiōnem, quæ Aduatùcis\footnote{d} adjacet, depopulandum\footnote{e} mittit: ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Sabim, quod influxit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennæ partes ire constituit, quò cum paucis equībus profectum\footnote{f} Am-biorìgēm audìebat. Discédens, \footnote{1} post diem septimum sese reversūrum, confirmat; quam ad diem ei legiōnī,\footnote{g} quæ in præsidio relinquebātur, frumentum debēri sciēbat. Labiēnum Treboniique hortātur, si reipublicæ commodo\footnote{h} facère possint, ad eam diem revertantur;\footnote{i} ut, rursus communicāto consilio, exploratisque hostium rationibus, aliud bellī initium capère possent.\footnote{k}

34. Erat, \footnote{2} ut supra demonstrāvimus, \footnote{3} manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non præsidium, quod\footnote{1} se armis defendēret; sed omnes in partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique\footnote{c} aut vallis abdīta, aut locus silvestris, aut palus impedīta, spem præsidii aut salūtis alīquam offerēbat, conscendērat. Hæc loca\footnote{4} vicinitātibus\footnote{m} erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirēbat, non in summâ exercitūs tuendā (nullum enim potèrat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculīm accidēre), sed in singūlis militibus conservandis; quæ tamen \footnote{5} ex parte res ad salútēm exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et prædæ cupid-

\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{a}} § 140, 1, 1st. \footnotesize{\textsuperscript{c}} 112, 7. \footnotesize{\textsuperscript{e}} 112, 7. \footnotesize{\textsuperscript{i}} § 140, 1, 3d. & Obs. 5, (ut.)
\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{b}} § 114, R. \footnotesize{\textsuperscript{f}} 98, 2. \footnotesize{\textsuperscript{k}} § 140, 1, 2d.
\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{c}} § 123, R. \footnotesize{\textsuperscript{g}} § 126, R. III. \footnotesize{\textsuperscript{l}} § 141, R. I.
\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{d}} § 112, R. IV. \footnotesize{\textsuperscript{h}} § 129, R. \footnotesize{\textsuperscript{m}} § 111, Obs. 1, 4th
itas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus 1 confertos adire prohibebant. 2 Si negotium confici 3 stirpemque hominum sceleratum interfici vellet, dimittenda 4 multos manus diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut 3 instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat præsidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiari et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deèrat audacia. At in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentiæ providèri poterat, providebatur; ut potius 4 in nocendo aliud omitteretur, etiam omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardèbat, quàm cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. Cæsar ad finítimas civitátes nuncius dimittit, omnes ad se evocat spe praedæ, ad dirigendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita, quàm 5 legionarius miles, periclitetur; f simul ut, magná multitudine circumfusa, pro tali facinore, stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. f Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

35. Hæc in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Cæsar ad impedimenta legi­emonque reverti constituerat. Hic, quantum in bello fortuna possit h et 7 quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipátis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quæ parvam modo causam timoris afferret. l Trans Rhenum ad Germános pervénit fama, diripi Eburones, atque ultero omnes ad prædam evocari. k Cogunt equitum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, quibus receptos ex fugâ Tenthcheros atque Usipetes supra ducimus: transseunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque, triginta millibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus præsidiumque ab Cæsare reticunt: primos Eburonum fines adeunt, multos ex fugâ dispersos excipient, magno pecoris

36. Cicēro, qui per omnes superiores dies præceptis Caesaris summâ diligentia milites in castris continuisset, ac ne calōnem quidem quemquam extra munitiōnem egrēdi passus esset, septimō die, diffidens de numero diērum Caesarēm fidem servatūrum, quod longius eum progressum audiēbat, neque ullâ de reditu ejus fama afferebâtur; simul eōrum permōtus vocibus, qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiōnem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egrēdi non licēret; nullum ejusmōdī casum expectans, quo, novem oppositiōs legiōnibus maximōque equitātū, dispersis ac pæne delētis hostibus, in millibus passuum tribus offendi posset; quinque cohortes frumentātum in proximas segĕtes misit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis interērat. Complūres erant in castris ex legiōnibus aegri relictī; ex quibus qui hoc spatio diērum convaluērant, circiter trecenti sub vexillo una mittuntur: magna præterea multitūdō calōnum, magna vis jumentōrum, quæ in castris subsedērat, factâ potestāte, sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore, casu Germâni equītes interveniunt, protinusque eōdem illo, quo venērant, cursu ab decu-
mânav portâ in castra irrumpère conantur: nec priùs sunt visi, objectis ab ea parte silvis, quàm castris appropinquārent, usque eo, ut, 1 qui a sub vallo tendērent merçatōres, recuperiendi sui facultātem non habērent. Inopinantes nostri re novâ perturbantur, ac vix primum impētum cohōrs in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur b ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem e adītum reperīre possent. Ægrè portas nostri tuentur, reliquis adītus locus ipse per se munitióque defendit. Totis trepidātur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultūs quærit; neque quò signa ferant, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, d provident. Alius capta jam castra e pronunciat; alius, delēto exercitu atque imperatōre, victōres barbarōs e venisse contendit: 3 plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt, Cottaque et Titurii calamitātem, qui in eo dem occidērint f castello, ante ocūlos ponunt. Tali timōre omnibus perterritis, confirmātur opinio barbarīs, g ut ex captivo audīerant, nullo esse intus præsidiun. Perrumpēre nituntur, seque ipsi h adhortantur, ne tantam fortūnam ex manibus dimittant.

38. Erat aeger in præsidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, 4 qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cujus mentionem 5 superiōrus prōris fecimus, ac diem  k jam quintum cibo 1 caruerat. Hic, diffusus suæ atque omnium salūtī, m inermis ex tabernaculo prodiit: videt imminère hostes, atque in summo esse rem e discrimine: capít arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriōnes ejus cohortis quæ in statione erat: paulisper una prœlium sustinēnt. 6 Relinquit anímus Sextium, gravibus acceptis vulneribus: aegrè per manus tractus servātur. Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistère audeant, speciemque defensōrum præbeant.

---

1. 
2. 
3. "§ 145, R."
4. "§ 140, 1, 3d.
5. "§ 141, R. III."
6. "k § 131, R. XLI."
7. "§ 110, Obs. 1."
8. "l § 121, R. XXV"
9. "m§ 112, R. V"

40. Calônes in proxínum tumulum procurrunt: hinc celerîter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto ut celerîter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinquâ sint castra; et, si pars aliqua circumventa cecidêrit, at reliquis servâri posse confiûnt: alii, ut in jugo consistant, atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc vetères non probant milites, quos sub vexillo unà protectos docûmus. Itâque inter se cohortâtì, duce Caio Trebonio, equite Româno, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt, incoluerque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecûtì calônes equitesque eòdem impêtû milîtum virtûte servantur. At ìi, qui in jugo constitîtreant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probavërant, consilio permanère, ut se loco superiôre defendèrent, neque eam, quam profuisse aliûs vim celeritatemque vidêrant, imitâri potûrent; sed, se in castra recipûre conâti, iniquum in locum demisërant. Centuriônès, quorum nonnulli, ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquârum legiônûm, virtûs causâ, in superiôres erant ordines hujus legiônûs trans-

\[\text{a} \quad \text{§ 140, 5.} \quad \text{c} \quad \text{§ 136, R. LII.} \quad \text{i} \quad \text{§ 28, Obs. 5.} \\
\text{b} \quad \text{§ 141, R. I.} \quad \text{f} \quad \text{§ 140, 1, 3d.} \quad \text{k} \quad \text{§ 112, R. V. 1st.} \\
\text{e} \quad \text{§ 107, R. IX.} \quad \text{g} \quad \text{§ 101, Obs. 4, censent.} \quad \text{l} \quad \text{§ 107, R. X.} \\
\text{d} \quad \text{§ 140, 3.} \quad \text{h} \quad \text{§ 145, R. & 91, 4.} \quad \text{m} \quad \text{§ 129, R.} \]
ducti ne antè partam rei militaris laudem amitterent, a fortissimè pugnantes concidèrunt. Mili tum pars, horum virtùte submôtis hostibus, b præter spem incolūmis in castra pervēnit; pars a barbāris circumventa perìt.

41. Germāni, desperātā expugnatione b castrōrum, quòd nostros jam constituisse c in munitionibus vidēbant, cum eâ prædā, quam in silvis deposuērant, trans Rhenum sese recepērunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut eā nocte, d cum Caius Volusēnus missus cum equitātū ad castra venisset, e 1 fidem non facēret, f adesse cum incolūmi Cæsārem exercītū. Sic omnium anīmos præoccupavērat, ut, 2 pāne alienātā mente, b delētis omnībus copiis equitātūm tantūm se ex fugā recepisse, c dicērent, f neque, incolūni exercītū, Germānos castra oppugnātūros fuissee contendērent. Quem g timōrem Cæsāris adventus sustūlīt.

42. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignōrans, 3 unum, quōd cohortes ex statione et presidio essent h emisse, ques-tus, 4 ne minūmo quidem casu i locum relinquī debuisse, multum fortūnam in repentīno hostium adventu potuisse indicāvit; multo etiam amplius, quōd pāne ab ipso vallo portisque castrōrum barbarōs avertisset. 5 Quarum g omnium rerum k maximē admirandum videbātur, quōd Germāni, qui eo consilio Rhenum transīrērant, ut Ambiorīgis fines depopularentur, c ad castra Romanōrum delātī, 6 optatissīmum Ambiorīgi beneficium obtulērīnt.

43. Cæsar, rursus, 7 ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno coactō numero b ex finitūmis civitātibus, in omnes partes di-mittit. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia, quae quisque con-spexerat, incendebantur: præda ex omnibus locis agebātur: frumenta non solūm a tantā multitudine jumentōrum atque homūnum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempōre atque im-

---

a § 140, 1, 2d.  b § 140, 1, 1st.  c § 140, Obs. 4.  d § 140, 1, 3d.  e § 140, 1, 4th.  f § 126, R. III.  g § 135, R. XLVII.  h § 140, 1, 3d.  i § 131, R. XLI.
bribus procubuerant; ut, si qui etiam in præsentia se occultassent, tamen iis,\(^a\) deducto exercitu, rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. Ac sæpe in eum locum ventum est,\(^b\) tanto in omnes partes divisò equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorígem\(^d\) in fugâ captivi, nec planè etiam abisse\(^c\) ex conspectu contendèrent, ut, spe consequendi illatâ atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Cæsāre gratiam\(^e\) inituros putarent,\(^f\) ipse naturam studio vincerent,\(^g\) semperque paulum \(^2\) ad summam felicitâtem defuisse videretur,\(^g\) atque \(^3\) illæ latèbris aut saltibus se eripérêt,\(^8\) et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque petēret,\(^g\) non majōre equitum præsidio, quàm quatuor, quibus\(^b\) solis vitam suam committere audēbat.

44. Tali modo vastatis regionibus,\(^i\) exercitum Cæsar duorum cohortium damno Durocortorum\(^k\) Remōrum reducit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliæ indicto,\(^l\) de conjuratiōne Senōnum et Carnūtum quæstionem habère instituit; et de Accōne, qui princeps\(^l\) ejus consilii fuērat, graviōre sententiā\(^l\) pronunciātā, \(^4\) more majōrum suppliantium sumsit. Nonnulli judiciōm verūtī profugērunt; \(^5\) quibus\(^m\) cùm aquâ\(^n\) atque igni\(^o\) interdixisset, duas legiōnes ad fines Trevirōrum, duas in Lingonībus, sex reliquis in Senōnum finibus Agenīci in hibernis collocāvit; frumentōque \(^6\) exercitu\(^p\) proviso, ut instituērat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos prospectus est.

\(^a\) § 147, R. \(^f\) § 141, R. III. \(^l\) § 103, R. V.
\(^b\) 67, Note. \(^g\) § 140, 1, 1st. \(^m\) § 112, R. IV.
\(^c\) 98, 2. \(^h\) § 123, R. \(^n\) § 136, Obs. 5,\(^{ab}\).
\(^d\) § 145, R. \(^i\) 109, 2. \(^o\) § 15, 7.
\(^e\) § 136, R. LIII. \(^k\) § 130, 2. \(^p\) § 126, R. III.
NOTES ON BOOK I.

PAGE 53.—1. Quarum, supply partium, of these parts.—2. (ii) qui appellantur Celtæ ipsorum lingua, Galli nostrâ (linguâ, incûlunt*) tertium (partem).—3. Institutis, customs.—4. Inter se, among themselves; from each other.—5. Arrange: Flumen Garunna dividit Gallos ab Aquitänis, Matrona et Sequina (dividunt Gallos) a Belgis.—6. Cultu, civilization, mode of living—humanitâ, refinement, mental culture.—7. Minimè sèpe, least often, i.e. very seldom.—8. Eos, i.e. Germanos.—9. Ipse, i.e. Helvetii.—10. Eorum (finium) of those confines, or territories; of that country.—11. Eorum, of them, i.e. of the three general divisions of Gaul.—12. Vergit ad Septentriones, it inclines, or extends towards the north.

P. 54.—1. Ab extrâmis finibus, from the remotest, or most distant confines of Gaul; meaning the most northern limit of the division then inhabited by the Celtæ, or Gauls, called Gallia propria, and here called extrâmis, because farthest distant from Rome.—2. Spectant, &c., they look towards—the country faces—the northeast.—3. Ad Hispâniam, at—next to—Spain, viz: the Bay of Biscay.—4. Consûles, See Index.—5. Civitâtis, his state:—Civitas means all the people living under one government.—6. Patri imperio, to obtain the government.—7. Persuásit id eis facilius hoc, he persuaded them to that measure more easily, on this account.—8. Nàtûrâ loci, by the nature of the place, or, of their situation; by their natural situation.—9. Pro multitudine hominum, for, in proportion to, the number of inhabitants; in proportion to the population.—10. Belli atque fortitudinis, for war and bravery.—11. Qui patèbant, which extended.—12. Adducti his rebus, induced by these circumstances. 13. Ad proficiscendum, for their departure. 14. Carrôrum quâm maximum numerum, as great a number of wagons as possible.—15. Sementes quâm maximas, as great sowings as possible.

P. 55.—1. In tertium annum, against the third year.—2. Occuparet, that he should take possession of:—The imperfect subjunctive here follows the present (persuâdet) on the principle stated,

* Latin words not in Italic, or enclosed in parentheses, are not in the text, but are here supplied, to shew the full construction of the sentence.
§ 137, Obs. 1.—3. Principátum, the highest power or authority.—
4. Probát illis, perfucéli esse factu, perficere conátä, he (Orgetorix) assures them that the accomplishment of their designs would be easily done; that their designs would be easily accomplished.—
5. Totius Galliæ, i.e. civitatisbus totius Galliæ, &c., Of the states of all Gaul the Helvetii,—possent (facere) plurimum, could do most, i.e. were most powerful.—6. Inter se, among themselves, to each other, mutually.—7. Per tres—populos, viz: the Helvetii, Sequani, and Ædui.—8. Arrange: Sperant sese posse potiri (imperio) totius Galliæ.—9. Ea res, this design.—10. Per indicium, by information.
11. Ex vinculis, Out of chains, i.e. in chains.—12. Arrange: Oppor-tébat panem sequi (Orgetorigem) damnátum, ut cremaretur igni, it behoved this punishment to follow, overtake, Orgetorix, being condemned, that he should be burned with fire.—13. Familiam, household—including domestics, slaves, &c.—14. Ad millia decem, about ten thousand;—Ad, with a numeral, signifies about, near, or towards.

P. 56.—1. Magistrátus cogérent, the magistrates (of the Ædui) were collecting.—2. Quin ipse, but that he.—3. Ad, about.—4. Tri-um mensium, for three months.—5. Molitá cibaria, ground provisions, i.e. meal or flour.—6. Usi cœdam consilio, following the same counsel or design; adopting the same resolution. 7.Boiosque, &c.,—receptos ad se, &c., having received the Boii, &c., they join them to themselves as allies; Or, they receive, and join to themselves as allies, the Boii, &c. For this use of the perfect participle see Idioms, 104.—8. Vix quâ, scil. viâ, where, or, by which way.9. Provinciam nostram, our province; the Roman province in the south of Gaul, afterwards called Gallia Narbonensis.—10. Propterea quod, because; literally, on this account that.—11. Isque transitur vado, and it is crossed by a ford, i.e. it is fordable.

P. 57.—1. Bono animo, of a good mind, friendly disposition, well affected.—2. Diem, see Dies, Index.—3. Ante diem quintum, &c. The fifth before the Kalends of April, i.e. the 28th March. See Gr. App. I.—4. Lucio Pisóne, &c., that was, A. U. C. 696, B. C. 58.—5. Urbe, scil. Româ.—6. Galliam ulteriorérem, farther Gaul, i.e. Gaul beyond the Alps.—7. Provincia toti, &c. he orders as many soldiers as possible from the whole province, i.e. he levies, &c.:—For explanation of this construction see § 123, Exp.—8. Ad, near —9. Facti sunt certiores, were made more certain; were informed. 10. Esse sibi in animo, that they had it in design; that it was their intention; literally, that it was in the mind to them.—11. Voluntate, with his consent. 12. Sub jugum misum, sent under the yoke:
Two spears were set upright in the ground, and another was laid across them at top, forming what the Romans called *jugum*. Under this they who were admitted to surrender upon these terms were compelled to pass unarmed, *nudi*.—13. *Concedendum* (esse sibi,) that he ought to yield to their request.—14. *Ante diem Idus Aprilis*, i. e. the 12th April, see App. I.

**P. 58.**—1. *Qui in flumen*—As the Rhone flows through the lake Lemainus, and of course out of it, it is here said that the lake flows into it. 2. *Ad montem Juram*, towards mount Jura.—3. *Millia passuum novem decem*, nineteen miles in length. See App. VI. Table 5.—4. *Castella communi*, he strongly fortifies castles, or redoubts. § 91, Obs. 1. 5th.—5. *Se invito*, he being unwilling, i. e. against his will, or inclination.—6. *Negat se, more*, &c. he declares that he cannot, consistently with the custom, &c. *Negat* is equivalent to *dicit non*.—7. *Novibus junctis ratibusque, &c.*, some by means of boats joined together, and numerous rafts being made; before *navibus supply Alii.*—8. *Qua minima*, &c., where the depth of the river was least. 9. *Perrumpère*, break through, force a passage.—10. *Eo deprecatore*, he being intercessor; by his mediation.—11. *Gratiam et largitione*, by his personal influence and liberality—*poterat facere plurimum*, could accomplish a very great deal.—12. *In matrimonium duxerat*, had married; literally, had led into matrimony. *Ducere uxorem* (domum) "to marry," is said of the husband, because a part of the ceremony consisted in leading the wife home to his house. *Nubere (se) viro*, "to marry," is said of the wife, (literally, "to veil herself to her husband") because during the ceremony she wore a flame-colored veil.—13. *Novis rebus studebat*, desired. wished for, new things; aimed at, plotted, a revolution in the state.

**P. 59.**—1. *Sequani* (dent obsides);—*Helvetii* (dent obsides). 2. *Ne prohibeant*, that they would not prevent, or hinder, the Helvetii from (using) this route.—3. *Caesari renuntiatur*, Intelligence is brought to *Caesar*; § 126, R. III.—4. *Intelligebat*, &c. he perceived it would be very dangerous to the province—*ut habeat*, to have; (literally, that it should have).—5. *Proximum*, nearest, i. e. shortest.—6. *Quod est extrimum* (oppidum) *ceterioris Provinciae*, which is the most distant town (viz: from Rome,) of the hither province, i. e. of Cisalpine Gaul; See Index.—7. *Rogatum auxilium*, to ask assistance.

**P. 60.**—1. *Necessariorum, &c.*, friends and relations.—2. *Sibi praeter agri*, &c. that nothing was left to them except the soil of their land; except a desolate country.—3. *Flumen est Arar*, The Arar
(now the Saone,) is a river.—4. Incredibili lenitate, with surprising smoothness.—5. In utram partem, into which part; which way; in which direction.—6. Id transibant, were crossing that;—intribus, canoes, small boats.—7. De tertiad vigiliad, at the third watch, i. e. midnight; See App. I.—8. Impeditos, encumbered with their baggage.—9. In proximas silvas, &c., went into the neighboring forests and hid themselves:—This expresses the force of the accusative after in.—10. Princeps venas persolvit, first suffered punishment; § 98, Obs. 10, i. e. was the first to suffer punishment.

P. 61.—1. Arrange: Tigrinii interfecerant L. Pisonem legatum, avum L. Pisonis ejus (i. e. Cæsaris,) socii eodem prælio quo Tigrinii interfecerant Cassium.—2. Consèqui, come up with, overtake.—3. Pontem in Aràri, &c. that a bridge should be made over the Arar.—4. Cassiano bello, in the war with Cassius; See Index, Cassius.—5. Ilà cum Cæsàre agit, thus speaks with, or addresses Cæsar:—This address of Divico is in the form of oblique narration; See § 140, 6, & § 141, R. VI., with explanation, &c.—6. Vétérīs incommódi, the old disaster; alluding to the defeat of Cassius.—7.—Trübuerat quidquãm magnopère, &c., should ascribe any thing too greatly to his own bravery.—8. Ne committeret, that he should not cause; bring it to pass,—aut prodéreret, &c., or hand down to posterity the memory of such an event.—9.—Cæsar respondit, Cæsar replied. All that follows in this chapter is oblique narration; the the verb respondit being in the perfect indefinite, the leading verb governed by it in the present infinitive is translated as the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive as the pluperfect indicative; See Idioms, Nos. 96, 98.—10. Qui si, if they, viz: the Roman people.

P. 62.—1. Non fuisse, &c., it would not have been difficult to guard against it; the subject of fuisset is cavère, and strictly rendered is, "that to guard against it would not have been difficult."—2. Sed eo deceptum esse, &c., but that they (the Roman people) had been deceived by this, because they did not think any thing had been done by them;—Supply quidquam before commissum. 3. Timendum (esse sibi,) that they should fear.—4. Quod si vellet, but if, even although, he were willing.—5. Num atiam—posse, &c.? Could he also lay aside, &c.?—6. Eodem pertinēre, were to the same effect; pertinēre has for its subject the two preceding clauses.—7. Secundiiores res, more prosperous things; greater prosperity.—8. Quum ea sint iia, although these things are so; although this is the case.—9. Testem ejus rei, a proof of that custom.—10. Cupidius, too eagerly.— Aliēno loco, in a disadvantageous, or unfavorable place.
P. 63.—1. Novissimo agmine, the rear, i. e. the "last line" met by an opposing enemy.—2. Satis habebat, &c., considered it sufficient for the present.—3. Nostrum primum (agmen), our van.—4. Quinis aut senis, &c., five or six miles (each day).—5. Flagitare (for flagitabant) continued to importune—publicè, in the name of their state.—6. Frigöra, the cold; the coldness of the climate.—7. Sub septentrionibus, under the north; towards the north.—This must be understood in relation to Italy.—8. Frumento, corn:—At this time not meal or bread was served out to the Roman soldiers, but raw corn, which they themselves prepared.—9. Conferri, &c.; that it was collecting, bringing in, at hand.—10. Diutius, too long; See Idioms, 22.—11. Qui summo, &c., who was invested with the office of chief magistrate.

P. 64.—1. Tacuerat, had concealed.—2. Valéat plurimum, is very powerful; has great influence.—3. Privati, though private individuals.—4. Necessarió coactus, compelled by necessity, (Necessarió for necessitate.)—5. Designari, was meant.—6. Nolébat eas res factári, multís presentibus, he was unwilling, he did not wish, that these affairs should be discussed, so many being present; in the presence of so many.—7. Solo, (Lisco,) of him alone.—8. Redempta habère, &c., had farmed the customs, and all the other public revenues of the Ædui: Portoria means duties on exports and imports,—vectigalia means every other kind of tax or revenue. Those who "farmed" them bought them at the lowest price they could, from the government, and collected them for their own use.

P. 65.—1. Facultates magnas comparasse, &c., had acquired great means for bestowing presents, namely, for the purpose of extending and strengthening his influence. 2. Largiter posse, had great influence—collocasse (nuptum), had given in marriage.—3. Cupère (for bene velle), wished well to.—4. Si quid (adversi) accidat, if any thing unfortunate should happen; if any calamity befel.—5. Inquirendo, by enquiry, on inquiring.—6. Equitatu (the old dative for equitatus; § 16, Exc. 2 ) praerat, was over, or commanded the cavalry.—7. Certissimae res, most certain; most unquestionable facts.—8. Injussu suo, &c without his order and the order of the state (viz: of the Ædui).

P. 66.—1. Voluntatem, affection.—2. Commonefacit, reminds him.—3. Ostendit, shews him.—4. Causa cognitâ, the cause being tried or investigated.—5. Nequid gravius, &c, that he (Caesar) should not determine any thing too severe; that he should not pass too severe a sentence.—6. Ipse, he himself (viz: Divitiacus).
7. Ille, he (i. e. Dumnorix).—8. Fraterno amore, by brotherly love; by love or affection for his brother.

P. 67.—1. Adhibet, brings in—propónit, lays before him.—
2. Divitiáco fratri, to his brother, i. e. at the request of, and for the sake of his brother, Divitiacus.—3. Custodes, spies.—4. Consequisse, had sat down, i. e. had encamped.—5. Factidem (ascensum) esse, that the ascent was easy.—6. Vigiliâ; See Index; also Appendix to Gr. I.—7. See Index, Legátus.—8. See Index, Prætor—Legátum prætöre, his lieutenant with praetorian powers.—9. Et iis ducibus, and with those as guides.—10. In (exercitu) M. Crassì.—11. Primâ luce, at the first daylight; at the dawn of day.—12. Ipse, he himself (i. e.) Cæsar).—13. Equo admisso, his horse being put to it; spurred up, i. e. at full gallop.

P. 68.—1. Multo die actó, much of the day being past; when much of the day was past.—2. Pro viso, literally, for seen, i. e. as if it had actually been seen by him.—3. Quo consuerat intervallo, at the distance at which he had been accustomed to follow, i. e. at the usual distance. —4. Exercitì (the old dative for exercitui,) frumentum mettrî, to measure out, i. e. to serve out corn for the army.—
5. Rei frumentáriâ prospiciendum (esse sibi), that he must provide for a supply of corn.—6. Decurio, See Index.—7. Discédère, were departing from them.—8. (Helvetii) confidérent (Romános) posse, &c.—9. Animum advertí, (same as animadvertí,) perceives; § 44, I. 3.—10. Qui sustinéret impítum, to sustain the charge.

P. 69.—1. Citeriòre Galliâ, hither Gaul; the north of Italy. 2. Compléri, to be filled, to be covered.—3. Eum, it, i. e. the place in which the baggage was.—4. Conferitsem adce, &c., in very close array—phalange factâ, a phalanx being made. The German phalanx consisted of a very close body of men with their shields held over their heads, and overlapping so as to form a shed or screen like the Roman testudo, to defend them from the missiles of the enemy. The Macedonian phalanx, on the other hand, consisted of a body of men, sixteen deep and five hundred long.—5. Sub, close up to.—
6. Suo (equo remōto).—7. Periculō omnium (i. e. Imperatòris et milítum) aquató, the danger of all being equal; all being exposed to equal danger.—8. Scutum, See Index.—9. Satis commódè, conveniently enough; with sufficient ease or readiness.—10. Nudo, naked, unprotected.—Their bodies were exposed to the darts of the enemy, from having thrown down their shields.—11. Pedem referre, to retreat; literally, to take back the foot.—12. Claudébant agumen, closed up the rear.—13. Bipartito, in two parties; in two divisions.
The army was drawn up in three lines, of which the first and second lines, forming one division, made head against those who had been defeated and compelled to retreat, i.e. the Helvetians, who were now returning to the attack; and the third line sustained the attack of those advancing (segetientes,) against them, the fresh troops, i.e. the Boii and the Tulingi, who were coming up in the rear.

P. 70.—1. Accepit prætio, in doubtful battle, i.e. victory inclining to neither side.—2. Altēri, the one, i.e. the Helvetii—altēri, the other, i.e. the Boii and the Tulingi.—3. Ab septimâ hora, from the seventh hour, i.e. one o'clock p.m.; See Index, hora.—4. Aver-sum. turned away; who had turned his back; retreating; flying.—5. Pugnātum est ad multam noctem. It was fought till a great part of the night was past; till late at night.—6. Matāras ac tragūlas, &c. continued throwing lances and javelins from beneath.—7. Qui, si juvissent, for, if they should aid them; See Idioms, 39.—8. Arrange: Se habitūrūm eos (Lingōnas)ōdēm loco quo ille, (Cæsar,) habēret Helvetios.—9. Qui, cūm convenissent, and they, when they had met; See Ref.

P. 71.—1. Occultāri, be concealed, (viz: from Cæsar).—2. Omnino ignorāri, be altogether unknown; remain altogether unnoticed.—3. Primā nocte, at the beginning of the night.—4. Arrange: Impērat his per quorum fines iērant, ut, &c.—5. Habuit, &c., treated as enemies; i.e. either put them to death or sold them as slaves.—6. Ipsos, them, viz: the Helvetii, Tulingi, and Latobrigi.—7. Vacēre, to be empty; to be uninhabited.—8. Arrange, Concessit Ēduis pendentibus, ut (Ēdui) collocārent Boios in suis finibus, quōd (Boii) cognitī erant egregiā virtūte: quibus (Sīl. Boiis) illī (Ēdui) dedērunt agros.—9. Tabūlē, lists; literally, tablets:—These were made of wood covered with wax, on which the Romans were accustomed to write with the stylus.—10. Confectāe Græcis lītēris, written in Greek letters.—11. Ratio, an account.

P. 72.—1. Capitum, literally, "of heads," i.e. persons, souls. 2. Censu habīto, the census having been held; the number having been taken:—This was only a numbering of the army, and consequently very different from the Roman census; See Index, Census.—3. Gratulātum, to congratulate him:—After gratulātum supply di-centes, expressing past time; See Idioms, 94, 4, and 1, 2d.—4. Pro veteribus injuriis, &c., for the ancient injuries done by the Helvetii to the Roman people. Here two genitives are governed by one noun, the one, (Helvetiōrum) in an active sense, and the other (Popūli Romāni) in a passive sense; § 106, Obs. 1, & 2.—5. Ne quis, &c.
that no one should disclose their deliberations, unless those to whom this charge should be given by the assembly at large.

P. 73.—1. Non minús, &c.; See Note 3, preceding page. The statement of the chiefs, and of Divitiacus who spoke for them, it will be perceived, is given in the form of oblique narration—of course, the leading verbs are in the infinitive mood governed by dicentes, or dicens expressing past time, because agreeing with the subject of verbs in the perfect tense. Hence the present infinitive, with a subject, will be translated in the perfect indicative; and the perfect infinitive, in the pluperfect, as the references show; and also all the verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive; See § 140, 6, and § 141, R. VI., &c.—2. Harum (factónum) &c. that the Ædui were at the head of one of these factions, and the Averni at the head of the other.—3. Hi cum conténdérent, &c.; since these (the Ædui and Averni) had contended for the superiority.—4. Horum, of the latter, (viz: the Germans).—5. Copias; copia in the singular means "abundance," in the plural, commonly "forces," but here, great abundance; the plural form rendering it emphatic.—6. Neque recusáturos quo inus essent, &c. nor refuse to be forever under their sway and government; Idioms, 78, Note, & 7.—7. Se unum, that he alone (Divitiacus).

P. 74.—1. Quibus locus, &c. for whom a settlement and habitation were to be procured.—2. Futúrum esse, that it would be; that the consequence in a few years would be.—3. Neque enim, &c., For neither was the Gallic territory to be compared with that of the Germans.—4. Ut semel. when once, i. e. as soon as.—5. Omnia exempla cruciatusque, all manner of cruelties: by Hendiadys (§ 150, 2, 2d,) for exempla cruciatusum.—6. Nisi si, same as nisi, unless.—7. Ut, namely, that.

P. 75.—1. Habitá, being delivered.—2. Exprimére, draw, extort.—3. Hoc, on this account.—4. Prae (fortúni) reliquórum, in comparison with the fortune of the rest; or simply, than the rest.—5. Fugæ facúllas, the means of escape.—6. Omnes cruciátus, all tortures, i. e. all kinds of torture.7. Eam rem futúram (esse) curæ sibi, that that thing would be a care to him; that he would attend to that matter.—8. Secundum ea, &c., besides these things, many circumstances induced him—quarc putáret, to think; literally, why he should think.

P. 76.—1. Occurréndum, &c., he must meet, or thwart, as early as possible.—2. Placuit ei, it pleased him, i. e. he resolved.—3. Et summis utrisque rebus, matters of the greatest importance to
both.—4. Si quid ipsis, &c, if any thing had been wanted by him from Cæsar, i.e. if he had wanted any thing from Cæsar.—5. Si quid ille se velit, if he (Cæsar,) wished any thing from him (Ariovistus).—6. Sine magnō commeātū atque emolimento, (better than emolumento,) without great expense and trouble.—7. Arrange: Quid negotii esset aut Cæsāri, &c.

P. 77.—1. Hanc gratiam referret, he should make this return —ut gravaretur, that he grudged, or, was reluctant.—2. Neque. used conjunctively, equivalent to et non.—3. Dictandum sibi et cognoscendum, &c., that he should not think it necessary for him to speak, and inform himself about a matter of common interest.—4. Ne quam, &c. (equivalent to ne aliquam,) that he should not lead any, &c.—5. Injuriam literally, with injury, i.e. without just cause.—6. Quod, i.e. secundum id quod, according to that which, i.e. as far as (equivalent to quantum) he could do it consistently with the interest of the republic.—7. Item, in like manner.—8. Non opportere se impediri, that he ought not to be hindered.

P. 78.—1. Longè iis abfuturum, would be far from them. i.e. would do them no good. 2. Quod sibi, &c. as to what Cæsar threatened to him, namely.—3. Inter, during.—4. Virtute (facere) possent, could effect by valor.—5. Aeduī (veniēbant) questum.—6. Trevirī autem (veniēbant questum).—7. Ne minus fācile, &c., lest—he (Ariovistus) might be less easily resisted.—8. Re frumentariā comparātā, having provided a supply of corn; Idioms, 104.—9. Trīdui viam, a journey of three days.—10. Contendere. was hastening—processisse, had advanced—ad occupandum Vesontionem, to take possession of Vesontio.—11. Summa facultas, the greatest abundance. 12: Ad ducendum bellum, for prostracting the war.

P. 79.—1. Ut circinno circumductum, as if traced around it with a pair of compasses.—2. Non amplius (spatio), not more than the space.—3. Continet, closes, occupies.—4. Murus, circumdātus hunc (montem,) efficit arcem, et conjungit (montem) cum oppido, a wall, thrown around, converts this mountain into a citadel, and connects it with the town.—5. Ex percunctatione, &c., from the enquiries of our men, and the statements of the Gauls.—6. Vultum et aciem oculorum, their look and the fierceness of their eyes.—7. Tribūnis,—praefectis; See Index.—8. Quorum alius, &c., of whom one having assigned one reason, another, another reason, which they said was a necessary one, (or rendered it necessary,) for them to to return home.—9. Fingēre vultum, compose their countenance
P. 80.—1. Qui, i. e. ii qui, those who.—2. Dicto audiens, obedient to the order.—Dicto is governed in the dative here by audiens; § 111, R.: both words together commonly signify obedient, and govern a dative by the same rule; as, Ducit dicto audiens, obedient to the general.—3. Consilio convocāto, a council (of war) being called; or, having called a council of war.—4. Sibi quærendum, that they must enquire, i. e. that it was their business to enquire.—5. Sibi quidem persuadērī, that he was even persuaded.—6. Suis postulātīs, &c. his demands being known, and the fairness.—7. Suā, their own—ipsius, his.—8. Factum (esse) periculum, that trial had been made. 9. Servīlī tumultu, (equivalent to servōrum tumultu) the insurrection of the slaves.

P. 81.—1. In suis, in their own, (i. e. the Helvetii)—īllōrum (i. e. Germanōrum) finibus, in their territories.—2. Quos, for ali- quos, any.—3. Neque sui potestātem fecisset, and had not given an opportunity of coming to an engagement with him:—Facēre potes- tātem sui, means to allow one's self to be approached.—4. Ratiōne et consilio, by stratagem and cunning.—5. Qui, i. e. ii qui, those who.—6. Quod non fore dicto, &c. As to this, that it was said the soldiers would not be obedient to orders.—7. Scire enim quībuscumque, &c., for he knew, to whomsoever, (i. e. in all cases in which; § 99, Obs. 7,) an army would not be obedient, that either, &c.—8. Itāque se, quod, &c., that he would therefore do immediately that which he was going to put off to a more distant day.

P. 82.—1. Praetoriam cohortem, a body guard.—2. Confidēbat maximē, trusted most.—3. Princeps, first.—4. Egérunt, strove—before se neque, supply dicentes or dixerunt; See Idioms, 94, 4.—5. Satisfactiōne, their apology, excuse.—6. Exquisito, being recon- noitred.—7. (Supply qui dixerent,) quod, &c., to say that that which, &c.—8. Fore uti desistēret, that he would desist; See Ref.

P. 83.—1. Ne quem pedītem, &c. that Cæsar should not bring any infantry.—2. Tollī, should be prevented, thwarted.—3. Com- modissīnum, most expedient.—4. Omnibus equīs, &c., All their horses being taken from the Gallic cavalry, to mount on them, (literally, thereon).—5. Si quid opus, &c. if there should be any need of action; § 118, R. XXII.—6. Nunc rescribēre ad equum, he now enrolled them among the cavalry.—7. Ex equīs, on horseback—denos, ten each.—8. Ubi ventum est ēō, when they came to the place appointed; See Ref.

P. 84.—1. Necessitūdinis, &c., of alliance existed between them and the Ēdui.—2. Nihil sui, nothing of their own.—3. Aucti
ores, encreased, farther advanced.—4. Quos amplius, any more.—5. Rogātum et arcessītum, having been asked and sent for.

P. 85.—1. Quòd multitūdinem transīdūcat, as to his leading, &c.; literally, as to this that he led; See Idioms, 38, Note.—2. Defendērit, had warded it off.—3. Quid sibi vellet? (Cæsar) What did he (Cæsar) want?—Here sibi refers to Cæsar, suas to Ariovistus.—4. Hanc Galliam, &c. That this Gaul (viz: Transalpine,) belonged to him (Ariovistus)—Sicut illam nostram, just as that Gaul (Cisalpine) belonged to us.—5. Qui, Since we.—6. Quōd dicēret, as to that which he said; or since he said.—7. Sese factūrum esse gratum, that he would do an agreeable thing, a favor; would oblige.

P. 86.—1. In eam sententiam, to this effect.—2. Esse Ariovsti, &c., belonged to Ariovistus, rather than to the Roman people.—3. Quodque tempus, &c., if all ancient time—the most ancient—the most distant period ought to be regarded.—4. Voluisset, had decreed. 5. Propiūs (ad) tumūlum.—6. Per fidem, by relying on his faith.—7. Vulgus militum, among the common soldiers.—8. Quō arrogantiā usus, &c., using what arrogance, or with what arrogance Ariovistus had interfered the Romans from all Gaul, and his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that affair had broken up the conference:—These subjunctives are all in the same construction, containing an indirect question, the first and second indicated by quō arrogantiā, and the third by ut; § 140, 5.—9. Injectum est, was infused.

P. 87.—1. Neque perfectē essent, and had not been completed; § 93, 1.—2. Quin conjicērent, from throwing; See Ref.—3. In eo peccandi. &c., and because in him the Germans had no cause of sinning, of committing any act of violence.—4. Causā speculandi? for the sake of spying? on purpose to act as spies?

P. 88.—1. Ēi potestas non deesset, an opportunity might not be wanting to him, i. e. he might have the opportunity.—2. Quos ex omni, &c., literally, whom they had selected from the whole army, each horseman one.—3. Si quō, &c. if they had to advance farther than usual in any direction.—4. Cursum adaequārent, equalled their speed.—5Quo in loco, &c. in which the Germans had encamped. 6. Quae copiā, that these forces.

P. 89.—1. Suo institūto, according to his custom, or design.—2. A majoribus (castris) from the larger camp.—3. Sortībus et vaticinatioibus, by lots and auguries.—4. Ex usu esset, &c., whether or not it would be of advantage that the battle should be joined.—
5. Non esse fās, that it was not the will of the gods.—6. Alarios, the auxiliaries:—So called from their being in general placed on the wings (ala) of the army when in the order of battle.—7. Pro, in front of.—8. Ad speciem, for show; for appearance.—9, Generātim, by nations.—10. Rhedis, carriages,—carris, baggage wagons.—11. Eò, on them.

P. 90.—1. Singūlis legionibus, &c., placed a lieutenant and quaestor over each legion.—2. Minimè firmam, least firm, weakest. 3. See Note 4, p. 69.—4. Expeditior, more disengaged; more at liberty.—5. Neque destiterunt fugēre, nor did they cease to fly; discontinue their flight.—6. In his, among these.—7. Quam duxérat, whom he had married.—8. Due filiae, &c. the two daughters of these,—the one was killed and the other taken captive.

P. 91.—1. In ipsum Cæsārem, &c., fell in with Cæsar himself. 2. Beneficio, by the favor.—3. Proxīmi, next to; bordering upon.—4. In citeriōrem Galliam, into hither Gaul:—The northern part of Italy, or that part of Gaul south of the Alps, was called Cisalpine, or hither Gaul, from being on this side of the Alps with regard to Rome.—5. Ad agendas conventus, to hold the assizes, or courts of justice:—This was usually attended to in the winter, when military operations could not be carried on.

NOTES ON BOOK II.

Page 92.—1. Cum esset Cæsar, &c.:—The time here indicated was in the year of the city 697, and 57 years B. C.—2. Crebri rumōres, frequent reports. 3. Dixerāmus, we had said; B. I. Ch. 1.—4. Conjurandi, of the conspiracy.—5. Partim qui, some of whom; ut, as on the one hand—ita, so, on the other.—6. Partim qui, while others.—7. Novis imperiis studēbat, were in favor of a change of government.—8. Ab nonnullis (solicitarentur).—9. Qui ad conducendos, &c., who had the means for hiring troops.—10. Eam rem in imperio nostro consequi potērant, could accomplish that object under our government.—11. Initā aestāte, in the beginning of summer.—12. Dat negotium, he gives a commission, he directs.—13. Cognoscant, should learn.
P. 93.—1. Quin proficisceretur, but that he should march; about marching.—2. Celeriusque, &c., and sooner than the expectation of all, (of any one,) i. e. than all (or any one) expected.—3. Neque se consensisse, that they had neither agreed; approved of the design; joined, entered into the confederacy.—4. Furorém, infatuation.—5. Ad his, from these, viz: the ambassadors from the Remi.—6. Quantae, how powerful.—7. Omnia se habére explorata, that they had all things fully examined.

P. 94.—1. Divitiacum, Divitiacus—not the Æduan.—2. Totius belli summam, the direction of the whole war.—3. Longissimé absunt, are very remote.—4. Qui appellantur uno nomine Germâni, who are called by one name, Germans—ad quadranginta millia about forty thousand.—5. Liberaliter prosecutus oratíone, having complimented them highly in a speech.—6. Ad diem, by the day appointed.—7. Magno opere, i. e. magnopére, greatly—quanto opère, i. e. quantopére, how much it concerned.—8. Ne configendum sit, that he might not have to contend.

P. 95.—1. Quæ res, this position.—2. Cohortibus; See Gr. App. V.—3. Duodeviginti pedum, (in latitudinem) eighteen feet broad.—4. Gallorum eaedem atque, &c. of the Gauls as well as of the Belge.—5. Quod tum, &c. this was then easily done. 6. Potestas consistendi in muro erat nulli, the power of standing on the wall was to none; no man was able to stand on the wall. 7. Præèrat, was over; had the command of; was governor of.—8. De mediâ nocte, soon after midnight.

P. 96.—1. Quos, &c., which, (viz: villages and buildings,) they could reach.—2. Et ab millibus passuum &c., at less than two miles distant (viz: castris, from the camp).—3. Prælio supersedère, to defer a battle.—4. Solicitationibus periclitabatur, trial was made in skirmishes.—5. Ex utrāque parte, &c., had a steep descent on both sides; literally, had descents of the side on both sides.—6. Et frontem leniter fastigatus, and in front gently sloping.—7. Ad extremas fossas, at the extremities, or ends of the ditches.—8. Tormenta, military engines, viz: the Catapulta and the Balista; See Index.—9. Quod tantum multitudo poterat, because they could do so much by their great number; were so powerful, or strong, in numbers.—10. Si quâ opus, &c. if it should be needful any where.

P. 97.—1. Non magna palus erat, there was a small morass.—2. Expectabant, continued waiting to see.—3. Secundiöre nostris, being more favorable to our men.—4. Demonstratum est, has been
shewn; See Ch. 5.—5. *Si minùs potuissent*, if they could not do
this;—*ad gerendum bellum*, for carrying on the war; for prosecuting
the war.—6. *Impeditos*, embarrassed.—7. *Quorum in fines*, into
whose soever boundaries, or territory.—8. *Et domesticis copiis*, &c.,
and enjoy the abundance of provisions which they had at home.

P. 98.—1. *Hae quoque ratio*, this consideration also.—2. *His
persuaderint*,—*non poterat*, these could not be persuaded; See Idioms,
68, 1.—3. *Nullo certo ordine*, in no fixed, determined, regular order.
4. *Cum sibi quisque*, &c.:—Since each one sought to be foremost on
the route.—5. *Insidias veritum*, fearing a stratagem, an ambuscade,—
qui moraretur, that they might delay; in order to delay.—6. *Cum
(illi) ab extremo*, &c. when those in the rear, to which they had
come.—7. *Tantam multitudo inem*, quantum, &c., as great a number as
the length of the day allowed.

P. 99.—1. *Vacuum ab defensoribus*, empty, unprotected by de-
fenders.—2. *Vineas agere*, to move forward the vineae; See Index.—
3. *Aggere jacto*, a mound being thrown up; See Index.—4. *Turri-
busque constitutis*, and towers being erected on it; See Index, Tur-
ris.—5. *Petentibus Remis*, the Remi requesting it; at the request of
the Remi.—6. *Impetrant*, they obtain it; viz: that they should be
preserved.—7. *Majores natu*, greater by birth, i. e. older, more
verba*, literally, makes words, i. e. speaks,—present tense for the
past; § 44, I. 3:—The pupil may here note the difference between
facere verba, and dare verba,—the first means *'to make a speech;*
the last, *'to put off with words,*" i. e. *'to deceive.*" 10. *In fide,
&c.,* under the protection, and in the friendship of, &c., i. e. had
always been protected and befriended by.

P. 100.—1. *Non solum Bellovacos*, &c., that not only the Bel-
lovaci themselves, but also the Ædui for them, entreated that he
would use.—2. *Cùm quaereret*, when he enquired; on enquiry.—
3. *Nihil vini*, no wine.—1. *Inrepliaret*, &c., that they inveighed
against and accused.—5. *Confirmaret*, asserted, declared; were de-
termined, it was their fixed resolution.—6. *Conditionem*, offer, pro-
sposal.—7. *Expectaret*, were expecting, were waiting.—8. *Expec-
täri*, were expected, were waited for.

P. 101.—1. Arrange: *Conjecisse*, mulieres (et homines) qui
viderentur inutiles, &c.—2. *Eorum diérum*, &c., the custom of those
days in respect of the march:—*Exercitius* is governed by *itineris.—
3. *Neque esse quicquam*, &c., literally, and that when the first legion
had come into the camp, &c.,—to attack this legion under its bag-
gage would be a matter of no great difficulty; i.e. there would be
no great difficulty in attacking, &c.—4. Qua (legiones) pulsā, reli-
que (legiones).—5. Ei rei, to this subject, viz. the training of cav-
alty.—6. Valeat (efficere).—7. Incisit atque inflexis, being cut in,
and bent over.—8. Crebris in latitudinem, &c., numerous branches,
and briars, and thorns, intervening in a lateral direction:—The
young trees being gashed but not separated from the root, still con-
tinued to grow, and when bent over, their branches stood out in a
lateral direction; the interstices were filled with briars and thorns,
so that the whole formed a strong and impervious barrier.—9. Loci—
quem locum, of the place which.

P. 102.—1. Infimā (parte) apertus, &c., open, clear at the
bottom, woody towards the top.—2. Secundum flumen, along the
river,—Stationes equitum, troops of horse on guard.—3. Alter se
habēbat ac, literally, had itself otherwise than; i.e. was different
from what.—4. Expeditas, free from all encumbrance, i.e. without
the load of baggage which the soldier was accustomed to carry,
generally amounting in all to sixty pounds besides his arms.—
5. Identidem, from time to time.—6. Quaō quem ad finem. i.e., ad
finem ad quem, to the limit to which; as far as.—7. Quod tempus, &c.,
which had been agreed upon as the time of joining battle.—8. In
mantibus, close at hand.—9. Adverso colle, up the hill, viz: the hill
opposite that on which they had stood.

P. 103.—1. Vexillum proponendum, the standard had to be
displayed.—2. (Il) qui processerant paullo longius causā petendi ag-
gēris, (erant) arcessendi, those, who had gone to a greater distance,
in order to fetch materials for the rampart were to be recalled.—
3. Successus et incursus, the near approach and onset.—4. Erant
subsidiō, were of advantage.—5. Singulisque legionibus, and from
their respective legions,—singulos legatos, every lieutenant.—6. Ni-
hil, equivalent to non or nullum;—the construction is quod ad nihil,
did not now at all wait for any order from Cæsar.—7. Per se, of
themselves, of their own accord.—8. Videbantur (illis), seemed to
them proper; they thought best.—9. Quam in partem, into whatever
part.—10. Ne perturbarentur animo, nor be agitated in their minds.
11. Exiguitas, the shortness.

P. 104.—1. Dejectus, declivity.—2. Necessitas, urgency.—
3. Prospectus impedīrētur, and the view in front was obstructed.—
Neque certa, neither with certainty; § 98, Obs. 10.—4. In tantā in-
quitàtē rerum, in such an unequal situation of affairs.—5. In sinis-
trā parte acie, on the left part of the line; (acie) an old form of the genitive for aciei; § 17, Exc. If acie be regarded as the ablative, it will then be rendered "in the line on the left part."—6. Exanimātos, out of breath, panting;—confectos, spent, exhausted.—7. Nam his ea pars obvenerat, that party had fallen to their lot; had been accidentally opposed to them.—8. In fugam dederunt, put to flight.—9. Diversae legiōnes, other legions, different from those mentioned before.—10. At tum, but at this time.—11. Summum locum castrōrum, literally, the top of the place of the camp, i. e. the summit on which the camp stood.—12. Levisque armātūrāe pedītes, foot soldiers of the light armor; the light armed infantry.—13. Quos pulsos (esse), who had been routed.—14. Adversis hostibus occurrēbant, met the enemy in front, face to face.

P. 105.—1. Calōnes, the soldiers' servants.—2. Decumāndā portā, the decuman or rear gate of the Roman camp.—So called because the tenth cohorts were situated there.—3. Versāri, were actively engaged.—4. Mandābant sese præcipites fugae, committed themselves headlong to flight.—5. Diversos dissipatosque, scattered in every direction.—6. Urgēri, were overpowered.—7. Primōpilo; See Index, Primōptius.—8. Confecto, i. e, ita confecto ut.—9. A fronte.—in front.—10. Subeuntes, advancing.

P. 106.—1. Signa inferre, to carry forward the standards; i. e. to advance,—laxāre manipūlos, to extend the maniples.—2. Cujus adventu, by his arrival; 38.—3. Pro se quisque, they, each one for himself; i. e. to the best of his ability.—4. Legiōnes sese conjunctionērent et inferrent conversa signa, that the legions (viz. the seventh and twelfth,) should advance with the standard turned two ways; i. e. with double front.—5. Ne aversi, that when turned away.—6. Versarētur, were.—7. Nihil ad celeritātem, &c.; Arrange: fecerunt nihil reliqui esse sibi, they caused that nothing remaining was to them; they did all they could as to speed; they made all the haste they could.—8. Omnibus in locis, &c., in every quarter of the fight they thrust themselves before the legionary soldiers; i. e. they strove to surpass them in valor.—9. Prestitērunt, displayed.

P. 107.—1. Qui superessent, those who survived.—2. Uti ex tumulo, as if from an eminence.—3. Redegērat, had rendered.—4. Prope ad internectōnem, almost to extermination.—5. ÆEstuaria, &c., the low grounds and marshes.—6. Nihil (esse) impeditum, that nothing was a hindrance.—7. Quos Cæsar, &c., Cæsar, that he might appear to have exercised mercy towards the unfortunate and suppliants, preserved them, &c., (39).—8. Altissimas rupes despec.
NOTES ON BOOK II.

P. 108. 1. *Iis impedimentis*, to that baggage.—2. *Cum* (hi) aliás inferrent bellum (finitimis), aliás defendérent (bellum) illátum (sibi a finitimis), when they at one time made war on their neighbors, at another time resisted the war made on themselves by their neighbors; when, at one time they acted on the offensive, at another time, on the defensive.—3. *Duodécim pedum*, of twelve feet.—4. *Vineis*; See Index.—5. *Quò*, for what purpose?—6. *Prae*, in comparison of.—7. *Moveři et appropinquāre*, moving and approaching; See Idioms, 89, 1.—8. *Ad hunc modum*, after this manner.—9. *Tan-ta altitudinis*, of so great height.—10. *Et ex propinquitāte*, &c., and fight close at hand.—11. *Unum pelēre ac deprecāri*, that they begged and earnestly entreated one thing (supply *cum*) from him.


P. 110. 1. *Ita acriter ut*, &c., as fiercely as it ought to have been fought; See Idioms, 88, 7.—2. *Ad* (used adverbially) about.—3. *Sectiōnem*, booty:—So called, because divided into small sections or portions, to be sold.—4. *Capitum numerus millium*, &c. the number of fifty-three thousand souls.—5. *Oceanum*, the Atlantic.—6. *Certior factus est*, he was informed.—7. *Dies quindecim supplicat-tio decretā est*, a thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed.

NOTES ON BOOK III.

Page 111. 1. *Quo* (itinēre) by which (road).—2. *Cum magnis portoriis*, with heavy duties, or imposts:—The duty levied on goods in harbor, (*in portu*) was called *portorium*. This term was afterwards extended, as here, to denote the duty paid for liberty to carry goods through a particular country, or the tax paid at bridges.—3. *Hic vicus*, this village.—4. *Eum locum*, this part, i. e. the part of the village in which the cohorts were to pass the winter.
P. 112.—1. Neque eam plenissimum, and that not very full: See Index, Legio.—2. Singillatim, individually.—3. Decurrerent, should run down.—4. Ne primum quidem posse, &c., they thought that that legion could not withstand even the first onset:—With posse supply illam legiöinem.—5. Accedebat, to this was added; another reason was.—6. Sibi persuasum habebat, literally, they had it persuaded unto themselves; they were firmly persuaded.—7. Neque satis provitum esset, nor had it been sufficiently provided; nor had a sufficient supply been provided.—8. Nihil de bellum timendum, he had thought that nothing was to be feared, i.e. that he had nothing to fear concerning the war.—9. Neque subsidio ventri, literally, neither could it be come to them with assistance, i.e. neither could assistance come to them.—10. Placuit majori partì, it pleased the greater part; it was the opinion of the majority.

P. 113.—1. Collocandis atque administrandis (the dative of the end or design,) for arranging and executing.—2. Gæsæque, and javelins (the Gallic iron javelin).—3. Integris viribus, with fresh strength.—4. Frustra, in vain, without effect.—5. Sed hoc (nostri) superari, but in this they (our men) were overcome, were inferior.—6. Paucitatem, their fewness.—7. Non modo, &c., an opportunity was not given not only to the wearied.—8. Perducta ad extrénum casum, brought to an extreme case, to the last extremity. 9. Quem confessum (esse), &c., who, we have said, was worn out; See Idioms; 96, 2, & 94, 1st).—10. Convocatis centurionibus celeriter (per eos) milites, &c. the centurions being called together, he quickly, through them, directs the soldiers;—excipèrent, to take up. 11. Omnibus partis, from all the gates of the camp:—Of these there were four; See Index, Castra.

P. 114.—1. Ex (numéro) hominum amplius quàm millibus tríginta, literally, from a number of men more than thirty thousand; i.e. from more than thirty thousand men.—2. (Parte) plus tertiá parte, &c. literally, a part more than the third part being slain.—3. Fusiis &c., being routed, and stripped of their arms:—Here exüis agrees with copiis, and governs armis in the ablative, by § 126, R. V.—4. Alio,—alius, &c., with one view,—they had encountered things very different.—5. Caesar existimáret, de omnibus causis, Cæsar supposed, from all reasons; Cæsar had every reason to suppose.—6. (Ad) mare Océanum, to the Atlantic Ocean.—7. Praefectos tribunosque militum; See Index, Legio.

P. 115.—1. Scientiá atque usu, knowledge and experience.—2. In magno impetu maris atque aperto, in the great and open vio-
lence, force, swell (or surge) of the sea.—3. *Ipsi, (Veneti,)* they themselves, (the Veneti).—4. *Consuérunt uti,* are accustomed to use; use to trade in; or usually trade in.—5. *Vectigales,* tributary. 6. *Ut consilia Gallōrum,* since the designs (resolves) of the Gauls. 7. *Omnis;* Accusative plural for *omnes,* the subject of *latiūros* (esse). 8. *Suos,* his (Crassus’) countrymen; § 28, Exc.:—*sibi,* to them, (the Veneti) the main subject of their discourse.—9. *Naves longas,* ships of war,—so called from their being much longer than the ships of burden(*naves onerariae.*)—10. *Remiges,* rowers,—*institui,* to be raised. 11. *Pro magnitudine,* in proportion to the greatness.—12. *Hoc (faciunt)*, this they do.—13. *Pedestria itinēra,* roads, or approaches by foot; i. e. by land.

P. 116.—1. *Navigatio nem,* access by sea.—2. *Neque nostros,* &c., and they were confident that our army could not, &c. *Neque here* is copulative, and means “and not.”—3. *Opinio nem,* the expectation.—4. *Longē aliam atque,* &c. that the navigation was far other in a confined or inland sea (such as the Mediterranean,) than, &c.—5. *Hae erant difficultātes,* such were the difficulties, &c.—6. *Injuriae relentōrum equitum* (the genitive passive; § 106, Obs. 1.) 7. *Rebellio,* a renewal of hostilities,—*defectio,* a revolt, a refusal of obedience.—8. *Ne arbitrarentur,* in order that they might not think; § 140, 1, 2d.—9. *Idem (facere) sibi licēre,* that to do the same thing would be permitted to them.—10. *Novis rebus studēre,* are fond of changes.—11. *Naturā libertāti studēre,* are naturally fond of liberty. 12. *Conditionem servitūtis,* a state of slavery.

P. 117.—1. *Auxilio* (sibi) &c., who were said to have been sent for by the Belgæ as aid to themselves.—2. *Qui eam manum,* &c., that he should take care that that body should be kept apart.—3. *Situs,* the situations.—4. *In extrēmis lingūlīs,* on the extreme points or tongues of land.—5. *Cum ex alio,* &c., when the tide had flowed in from the deep; i. e. when it was full tide, or high water. 6. *Minuente (sese) aequo,* the tide ebbing, or when the tide ebbs.—7. *Naves in vadis,* &c., the ships aground on the shallow places would be dashed with the waves.—8. *In utrāque re,* in either case.—9. *Agerēre ac molibus,* by a mound and dams.—10. *Appulso,* being brought up.—11. *Magnis aequibus,* &c., on account of the great tides, and there being few or almost no harbors.—12. *Factē armatāque erant,* were built and equipped.—13. *Aliquantō planiōres,* considerably flatter.

of planks a foot in breadth.—4. Digití pollicis crassitúdine, of the thickness of one's thumb; i. e. an inch thick.—5. Pelles pro vīlis, &c., for sails there were to them (i. e. they had) raw hides and thin dressed skins;—lini, of linen, of canvass.—6. Regí, to be managed. 7. Cum his navibus, &c., the meeting of our fleet with these vessels was of such a nature, that the former had the advantage in swiftness only, and the sweep of the oars.—8. Reliqua, other things.—9. Neque enim his, &c. for our ships could not hurt them with the beak.—10. Copūlis, grappling irons.—11. Sāvire, to blow hard.—12. Casus, the chances or dangers.—13. Neque his noctēri posse, and that they could not be hurt.—14. Paratissīmae atque, &c., in the best order, and equipped in the best manner, with every kind of tackling.

P. 119.—1. Bruto, &c., nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus. 2. Aut quam ratīōnem, &c., or what mode of fighting they would adopt.—3. Ut, so that.—4. Graviūs accidērent, fell with greater force. 5. Falces praecūtē, hooks with sharpened edges towards the points. 6. Muralium, mural hooks; i. e. hooks used to pull down the walls in a siege; or their defenders.—7. Comprehensi adductique, were grappled and pulled towards us.—8. Latère possēt, could escape notice; could pass unnoticed, or unobserved.—9. Cum singūlas, &c., when two or three of our ships had surrounded each one of the enemy's.—10. Transcendēre in naves hostium, to climb over into the ships of the enemy; to board the enemy's ships.—11. Quō ventus fērēbat (naves), where, to which the wind carried them (the ships); Singūlas nostri: &c., our men having pursued, took them one by one.

P. 120.—1. Graviōris ætātis, of heavier, i. e. of more advanced age.—2. In quos, &c., on these Cæsar resolved to inflict severer punishment, on this account that, &c.—3. Vendidit reliquos sub corōnā, he sold the rest under the crown; i. e. he sold the rest for slaves:—Prisoners taken in war wore a chaplet (corōna) on their heads when exposed to public sale. At sales by auction a spear was set up; hence, vendēre sub hastā, to sell by auction.—4. Atque his paucis diēbus, and within these few days.—5. Perditārum hominum, of ruined men; i. e. men of desperate fortunes.—6. Nonnīhil carparētur, was in some degree carped at, railed at:—Nihil and nonnīhil in such sentences may be considered as accusatives governed by quod ad; § 128, Exc.

P. 121.—1. Eo absente qui tenēbat summam imperii, he being absent who held the supreme command; in the absence of the commander in chief.—2. Hāc confirmatū opinione timōris, (the enemy's)
opinion of his fear being confirmed.—3. Propônit, he lays before them, tells them of.—4. Neque longius abesse, &c.; and that it was not farther off, but that on the next night; i. e. at no greater distance of time than the next night.—5. Ad castra iri oportère, literally, that it ought to be gone to the camp; See Idioms, 67.—6. Perfugae confirmatio, the assertion of the deserter.—7. Quibus, with which, i. e. that with these.—8. Quam minimum spatii, as little space of time as possible.—9. Exanimátí, out of breath.

P. 122.—1. Intégris viribus, with strength still fresh.—2. Sabinus (factus est certior) de, &c.—3. Minímè resistens, by no means firm.—4. Ex tertiá parte, as the third part,—an unusual expression, and probably the text is incorrect.—5. Non mediöcrem, &c., that more than ordinary diligence must be used by him.—6. Quo plurimum valébant, in which they were very powerful.

P. 123.—1. Cujus rei, &c., in which art the Aquitani are by far the most expert.—2. Ærarie secturæ copper mines.—3. Nihil his rebus profici posse, that they could be profited nothing by these things.—4. Quorum hæc est conditio, the condition of whom (i. e. of whose association) is this.—5. Sibi mortem consciscant, or make away with themselves.—6. Barbári, the barbarians (referring to the Vocates and Tarusates).—7. Et naturâ loci et manu, both by natural situation and by art.

P. 124.—1. Citeriòris Hispaniae; See Index.—2. Loca capère, to select proper ground.—3. Facilè, easily; i. e. with safety.—4. In dies, every day; literally, from day to day.—5. Hâc re delatâ ad consilium, this matter or plan being laid before a council (of war).—6. Sentire idem, thought the same thing; were of the same opinion, viz: with himself.—7. Duplæc acie, a double line:—The Romans usually drew up their army in three lines; on the present occasion only two were formed, probably on account of their being inferior in number to the enemy.—8. Auxiliis, &c., the auxiliaries being placed in the centre,—their usual place was on the wings.—9. Cùm sua cunctatiōne, &c., when the enemy had by their own delay, and the opinion which was now entertained of their cowardice, made our soldiers the more eager for battle.

P. 125.—1. Constanter et non timídè, steadily and boldly.
2. Decumānâ portâ, at the decuman, or rear gate; See Index, Castra.—3. Intritæ, not worn out, not fatigued.—4. Longiori itinère, by a longer route than usual.—5. Posset planè vidēri ab iis, it could be distinctly seen by them.—6. Intendērunt, strove.
NOTES ON BOOK IV.

P. 126.—1. Multā nocte, late at night,—or multā nocte actā, much of the night being spent.—2. Superērant, (supply soli, evidently implied,—hence the subjunctive following qui; § 141, R. V.) alone remained.—3. Qui longē aliā ratione ac, &c., and they resolved to prosecute the war in a very different manner from the rest of the Gauls.—4. Continentesque silvas, &c., and because they had extensive, uninterrupted forests:—Before continentes supply quod. o. Longius, too far.—5. Ioheririibus, &c., on the soldiers unarmed.—6. Materiam, limber. Jr. 127.—1. Conversant, &c., turned towards, facing, the enemy.—2. Confedo, being cleared.—3. Extrejna, the last of the baggage.—4. Subpellibus, literally, under skins; i. e. in their tents:—The tents of the Roman soldiers were covered with skins. It does not appear that they ever used canvass for that purpose.—5. Quae proxīmē, &c., which had made war upon him last.

NOTES ON BOOK IV.

P. 127.—1. Conversam, &c., turned towards, facing, the enemy.—2. Confecto, being cleared.—3. Extrēma, the last of the baggage.—4. Subpellibus, literally, under skins; i. e. in their tents:—The tents of the Roman soldiers were covered with skins. It does not appear that they ever used canvass for that purpose.—5. Quae proxīmē, &c., which had made war upon him last.

P. 128.—1. Ea hiēme, &c., the winter which followed; the next or following winter.—2. Cneio Pompeio, &c.:—Before Christ, 55, A. U. C. 699.—3. Quo Rhenus, &c. where the Rhine flows into it: near the mouth of the Rhine.—4. Qui domī mansērint, since or because they remain at home.—5. Nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur, nor are the art and practice of war disused, discontinued, forgotten.—6. Maxīmam partem, for the most part; See Ref.—7. Nullo officio, &c., they are trained by no duty or discipline.

P. 129.—1. Ut quae bello cepērint; Arrange: ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (ea) quae cepērint bello.—2. Jumentis importātis, imported cattle.—3. Quotidiānā exercitatioō hæc prava atque deformia (jumenta) quae sunt natu apud eos, ut (hæc jumenta) sint summī labōris:—Ut. &c. that they, (these beasts) are capable of the greatest labor, i. e. of enduring the greatest labor.—4. Audent adire ad quemque numerum, they dare to go to any number; they have courage to advance against, to attack, any number.—5. Publicē, to the nation.—6. Significāri, that proof is given.—7. Vacāre, to be empty, desolate, uninhabited.—8. Ad alīram partem, on the other side.—9. Ut est captus Germanōrum, as the state of the Germans is; i. e.—
considering the condition of the Germans.—10. *Amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis*, the extent and populousness of their state (viz: the Ubi.

P. 130.—1. *In eadem causâ*, in a similar case.—2. (In regiones) *quas regiones*, to the regions which.—3. *Clam*, privately, unobserved.—4. *Tridui viam*, a journey of three days.—5. *Reliquam partem hiemis*, the remaining part of the winter; the rest of the winter;—*aluérunt*, maintained, supported.—6. *Infirmitatem*, the fickleness.—7. *Nilil his committendum (esse)*, that nothing should be trusted to them.—8. *Est autem hoc*, &c., for this belongs to Gallic custom; this is one of the customs of the Gauls.

P. 131.—1. *De summis rebus*, &c., they enter into designs, concert measures, respecting the most important affairs.—2. *E vestigio*, literally, out of the footstep; i.e. speedily, instantly.—3. *Cùm incertis rumortibus serviant*, since they are mere slaves to uncertain rumors.—4. *Ne graviōri bello occurrēret*, that he might not meet with a more formidable war (viz: than he expected).—5. *Facta (esse)*, had been done already.—6. *Dissimulanda sibi*, should be concealed by him.—7. *Resistère (iis)*, to resist them and not to sue for peace.—8. *Suam gratiam, their (the Germans’) favor.—Sibi*, to them, the Germans.—9. *Eos (agros) quos*, those lands which; i.e. such lands as; See Ref.—10. *Concedère*, yielded, acknowledged themselves inferior to.—11. *In terris*, upon the earth.

P. 132.—1. Arrange: *Cæsar respondit ad hac, quæ visum est* (ei respondēre).—2. *Exitus*, the conclusion.—3. *Verum*, just, reasonable, proper, right:—*Verus* has this sense chiefly when joined to the verb esse; as *verum est*, it is proper.—4. *Neque ullos in Galliâ*, &c., nor were there any lands vacant in Gaul.—5. *Et parte, &c.*—This is the reading of the Bipont edition. It is adopted by Anthon, and is manifestly better than the common text.—6. *In plures diffuit partes*, divides into several branches.—7. *Multis capitisbus*, by many heads, or mouths.

P. 133.—1. *Sibi jurejurando*, &c. should give them security by an oath.—2. *Eodem illo pertinēre*, tended to the same end:—*Eodem* and *illo*, here used adverbially, are properly old forms of the dative from *idem* and *ille*:—3. *Sustinērent*, should stand their ground.

P. 134.—1. *Amplissimo genere natus*, descended from a very illustrious family.—2. *Interclūso*, intercepted.—3. *Se obtūlit*, presented himself; rushed against.—4. *Summæ dementia esse judicabat*, he judged it to be the greatest folly; literally, to belong to, or to be
the part of, the greatest folly.—5. Ne quem diem, &c., not to let a day pass without a battle.—6. Omnibus principibus, &c., all the leading men and elders being brought along; literally, being taken unto them.—7. Sui purgandi, for the sake of clearing, excusing themselves.—8. Contra atque, otherwise than; contrary to what had been said.—9. Quos sibi Cæsar, &c. Cæsar rejoicing that these had been cast in his way.

P. 135.—1. Perturbantur, &c., are thrown into confusion, so that they were at a loss whether it would be best, &c.—2. Significaretur, was discovered, was evident.—3. Pristini diei, of the day before;—for pridie.—4. Clamore, a shout or noise, (either of the Roman cavalry attacking those with whom they came up in the rear,—or the wailing of those attacked.—5. Ad confluentum, at the confluence.—6. Reliquà fugà desperâtà, despairing of making good their flight any farther.—7. Ex tanti belli timore, &c., from the alarm of so great a war, since the number of the enemy had been about four hundred and thirty thousand:—Before capitem, supply ad numerum.—8. Descending potestatem, the liberty of departing.

P. 136.—1. Suis quoque rebus eos timère voluit, wished they should be alarmed for their own possessions.—2. Et posse et àudere, had both the power and the courage.—3. Accessit etiam, it was added also; i. e. another reason was.—4. Cur sui quicquam, &c., why should he (Cæsar) demand that any command or authority should belong to him beyond the Rhine?—5. Occupationibus republìc̓ae, by the business of the republic.—6. Neque sùi neque Popûli Români, and thought that it became neither his own dignity nor that of the Roman people.—7. Proponebátur, was placed before him, was manifest.

P. 139.—1. Institut, &c., he determined on this plan of a bridge.—2. He joined together at the distance of two feet, tigna bina, beams, or piles, two by two, (or in pairs,) sharpened a little at the lower end, and measured, (or proportioned) to the depth of the river.—3. Hæc cum machinationibus, &c., when he had fastened these, being let down into the river by machines, and had driven them down with rammers (fistûcis).—4. Non subîticae, &c., not perpendicularly after the manner of a stake, but bending forward and sloping (downward, or down the stream).—5. Iis item contraria, &c., likewise opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet down the river, (ab inferiore parte flûminis,) he placed two others joined in the same manner, but turned (up the stream) against the force and current of the river.—6. Hæc utrâque inspèr, &c., both these
(viz: the pair above and the pair below,) were kept apart (or from falling towards each other,) by beams let in from above, two feet thick, being as much as the joining of these piles was apart, (i. e. as the piles, joined by the braces, were apart,)—each having two braces, one on each side near the end.—7. *Quibus discusis, &c.,* these (pairs) being kept apart, and (at the same time,) bound together in the contrary direction.—8. *Ea rerum natura,* such the nature of the materials.—9. *Quo major vis, &c.,* literally, by how much a greater force of water urged itself on; i. e. that the more the force of the current pressed on, the more closely were they held bound together.—10. *Hac (tigna, i. e. beams of two feet square, reaching from one pair of piles to the other below it,) directa materie, &c.,* were fastened together with timbers laid lengthwise (directa) of the bridge; i. e. from beam to beam.—11. *Longuirius, &c.,* and covered over with long poles and hurdles.—12. *Ac nihil secus, &c.,* and besides all this, piles were driven in obliquely at the lower part of the stream.—13. *Pro pariête,* for a buttress, or support.—14. *Et alia item, and likewise others.—15. Dejiciendi opérum (causa),* for the sake of throwing down (destroying) the work,—the bridge.—16. (Ex) *Quibus materia, &c.,* after the days in which, or, after that the materials had been begun to be brought together:—Quibus, i. e. ex diebus quibus, is here used instead of the more common expression, postquam, or ex (tempóre) quo;—See also B. III. Chap. 23d. and Gr. § 131, Obs. 3d.—17. *Ad utramque partem,* at each end.

P. 140.—1 *Iis hortantibus,* by the advice of those.—2. *In solitudinem ac silvas abdidérent,* had gone into the deserts and forests to conceal themselves;—This rendering gives the force of the accumulative after in, which is evidently a better reading than in solitudinem, &c., which excludes the idea of going to;—So also, in silvas depóneret, below.—3. *Hunc esse delectum,* that this was selected as nearly the middle, or centre.—4. *Ulciscerétur,* that he might punish.—5. *Satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum,* that enough had been done, both for his honor and for utility, (profectum is from proficisci, and means the same as perfectum).—6. *Matúræ,* early.—7. *Inde, thence, i. e. from Britain.*

P. 141.—1. *Temérè, rashly, without good reason.—2. Neque íis ipsis quicquam notum est,* nor is anything known even by them. 3. *Quem usum belli, &c.,* what experience they had in war, or what customs they followed.—4. *In ea sententia,* in that mind, resolution. 5. *Hortéturque,* and that he should urge them.—6. *Fidem sequantur,
to embrace the alliance; literally, should follow the faith.—7. *Quantum ei facultatis, &c.*, as far as opportunity could be given; literally, with so much of opportunity as, &c.; See Idioms, 46, 1.—8. * Qui, since he.*

**P. 142.**—1. *De superiöris, &c.*, for their past conduct.—2. *Has tantulärum, &c.*, these engagements in such trifling affairs. 3. (Tot) *navibus onerariis*, so many ships of burden, &c.,—*quot*, as; See Index, *Naves.*—4. *Tertid fere vigilä*, near the third watch, or midnight.—5. Solvit (naves), looses his ships, sets sail.—6. *Conscendere naves*, to go on board; to embark.—7. *Horä quartä*, the fourth hour, i. e. 10 o'clock, A. M.; See Gr. App. I.—8. Expostitas, drawn out, displayed.

**P. 143.**—1. *Adeo angustis, so steep.—2. Ad egrediendum*, for disembarking, for landing.—3. *Ad nonam horam*, till the ninth hour, i. e. 3 o'clock P. M.—4. Monuitque, &c., and warned them that all things should be done at a beck, and in a moment, as the principles, &c.—5. *Et asse datum*, and the essedarii, i. e. those who fought from the essëdum, or two wheeled chariot.—6. *Prohibebant*, attempted to hinder; See § 44. II. 2.—7. Militibus—desiliendum, &c. the soldiers had to leap down from the ships.—8. *Omnibus membris expediti*, having the free use of all their limbs.—9. *Insuefactos*, accustomed to such exercise.—10. *Quarum et species*, both the appearance of which.


**P. 145.**—1. *Cursum tenere*, hold on their course;—*atque insulam capère*, and reach the island.—2. *Suprà*, viz: Ch. 21.—3. *Modo oratóris*, in the character of an ambassador.—4. *Culpam contulserunt*, laid the blame.—5. *In continentem*, to the continent, i.e. to Gaul.—6. *Imprudentie*, their indiscretion.—7. *Arcessatam (esse),* had been sent for.—8. *Post diem quartum*, after the fourth day i. e.
on the fourth day after.—9. Suprâ; See Ch. 23,—sustulèrant, had taken on board.—10. Quae cùm appropinquârent, and when they were drawing near.—11. Quæ est propius solis occasum, which is more to the west.—12. Quae, these.—13. Necessarìo adversù nocte in altum provectae, from necessity, being carried out to sea in an unfavorable, stormy, night.

P. 146.—1. (Dies) qui dies, a day which (viz: the day of the full moon.—2. Nostris id incognitum erat, to our men this (viz: the great rising of the tide,) was unknown.;—The phenomena of the tides were but little known to the Romans, as the tides in the Mediterranean with which they were most familiar, are scarcely observable.—3. Quæ deligàæ erant ad anchoras, which had been tied to the anchors; which had been riding at anchor.—4. Afflictábat, dashed violently against; drove from their moorings.—5. Quòd omnibus constábat. because it was evident to all.—6. His in locis, in these places (viz: in Britain).—7. Rem producère, to prolong the war.—8. Ex eventu navium, from what happened to, from the disaster of, the ships (the genitive passive).—9. Et ex eo quôd, &c., and from this, because they had intermitted; i. e. and from their having intermitted.

P. 147.—1. Ad omnes casus, for every emergency; against all contingencies.—2. Relíquís ut navigári, that it could be navigated with the rest.—3. Dum ea geruntur, whilst these things are carrying on, doing; during these transactions.—4. In statione, on guard.—5. Quàm consuetúdo ferret, than custom brought; i. e. than was usual. 6. In stationibus, on guard.—7. In statione succèdere, to succeed on guard.—8. Et, conferêta legiône tela, &c., and that the legion being crowded together, weapons were hurled upon it from all quarters. 9. Quôd, because, inasmuch as.—10. Incertis ordinibus, on account of not-knowing their ranks, (They had been scattered about, reaping, and being attacked while thus employed, they could not find their ranks.—11. Genus hoc est, &c., the manner of fighting from the chariots was this.—12. Ipsò terròre equòrum, by the very terror occasioned to the horses (the genitive passive); and the noise, rotàrum, of the wheels (the genitive active); § 106, Obs. 1.

P. 148.—1. Insinuavèrint, when they have wrought themselves in.—2. Aurìgæ, the charioteers, or drivers:—Each chariot contained a driver called auriga, and one who fought, called esse-darius.—3. Atque ita currú se collocabant, and place themselves with the chariot in such a situation.—4. Præstant mobilitàtem equitum, &c., they perform, unite the swiftness of cavalry and the steadiness
of infantry.—5. Ac efficiunt tantum, and they acquire such dexterity.—6. Incitātos equos sustinēre, to rein in their horses when at full speed.—7. Et brevi (tempōre), and in a moment.—8. Continuos plures dies, many days in succession.—9. Suis (civibus), to their own countrymen.—10. Quanta facultas, &c., how favorable an opportunity was presented of getting booty, and of regaining their independence forever.

P. 149.—1. Ante dictum est, viz: Ch. 21, & 27.—2. Omnibus afflictis incensisque longē latēque, having destroyed and burned every thing far and wide; See Idioms, 104, 1.—3. Die æquinoxii, the equinox.—4. Hiēmi navigationem subjiciendum, that his voyage ought to be exposed to a storm (viz: the equinoctial storm).—5. Eosdem quos reliquæ portus capēre, to make the same harbor which the rest made.—6. Quibus ex navibus, &c., had been landed from these ships.—7. Non ita magno, with not so great. i. e. with no very great number.—8. Si nollent, if they did not wish.—9. Orbē factō, forming themselves into a circle; See above, Note 2.—10. Vertērunt terga, turned their backs; fled.

P. 150.—1. In densissimas silvas abdidērunt, had gone into the thickest parts of the forests to hide themselves; See Note 2, page 140.

NOTES ON BOOK V.

P. 151.—1. Lucio Domitio, i. e. A. U. C. 700,; B. C. 54.—2. Quam plurimas possent, &c., that as many new ships as possible should be built, and old ones repaired.—3. Ad celeritātem onerandi, &c., for despatch of lading and drawing them on shore, he builds them a little lower than those which, &c.—4. Nostro mari, in our sea, viz: the Mediterranean.—5. Acturias, light, easily driven; See Index, Naves.—6. Adjuvat multitūm, contributes much,—7. Ad armandas, for equipping.—8. Omnibus rationibus, in every proper way.

P. 152.—1. Qui litem estīment, to estimate the damage (Idioms, 83, 2,) and fix the compensation.—2. Conventibus, the assizes. 3. Instructas, got ready finished.—4. Neque multitūm absēset, &c., nor was much wanting but that they could be launched in a few
days; i.e. there was so little to do that they could, &c.—5. Transmissum, &c., the passage across into Britain was the most convenient, being a passage of about thirty miles.—6. Expeditis, unincumbered with baggage.—7. Alter, the one (viz: Cingetorix).—8. In silvam, &c., having gone and concealed themselves in the forest of Arduenna; See Note 2, p. 240.

P. 153.—1. Civitati consulere, take measures for the state; for the common good.—2. Laberetur, should fall off, revolt.—3. Permissum (esse) would give up.—4. Suam gratiam, that his influence.—5. Exarsit multo gravius hoc dolore, he was much more exasperated at this affront.—6. Non potuisse tenere cursum, could not keep their course; could not proceed on their voyage.

P. 154.—1. Antea dictum; B. I. Ch. 3.—2. Cupidum novarum rerum, fond of changes, of insurrections, of a revolution in the state.—3. Id factum, this fact.—4. Petere contendit, endeavored to obtain,—religionibus, religious obligations.—5. Non sine causâ fieri, that it was not done without some secret motive; that Gaul was stripped of all her nobility.—6. Fidem reliquis interponère, that he pledged his word to the rest.—7. Quod esse ex usu, &c., whatever they should understand to be for the interest of Gaul.—8. Quod tantum dignitatis, because he had always shewn so much respect.—9. Longius progrædi, was going too far.—10. Prospiciendum, that he ought to take care.

P. 155.—1. Ne quid sibi, &c. lest he (Dumnorix) should not be able, have it in his power, to do any injury to him and the state. 2. Corus, the northwest wind.—3. (Ut) cognoscere, that he should find out.—4. Omnium animis impeditis, the minds of all being engaged.—5. Hunc pro sano, that he, as a man in his senses.—6. Ille enim, but, or nevertheless he.—7. Consiliumque pro tempore, &c., and that he might take measures, (form his plans,) according to time and circumstances.—8. Pari numero equitum quem, &c. with a like number of cavalry which; i.e. with a number of cavalry equal to that which he left.—9. Longius delatus estu, being carried down by the tide farther than usual.—10. Secutus, taking advantage of.

P. 156.—1. Virtus, the valor, i.e. the efforts, the exertions, 2. Vectoritisque navigiis, in transports and heavy laden vessels.—3. Accessum est (ab illis) ad, they (the Romans) reached, arrived at.—4. Cum annotinis, with the ships of the previous year.—5. Veritus navibus, fearing for the ships,—instead of de navibus.—6. In littore molli atque aperto, on a smooth and open shore.
NOTES ON BOOK V.

7. Præclusi, blocked up.—8. Testudine factâ, et aggère, &c., a testudo being erected and a mound thrown up against their fortifications.

P. 157.—1. Tripartitò, in three divisions,—miltès, the foot soldiers, the infantry.—2. Superiòre nocte, in the former night.—3. Affictas atque, &c.—had been dashed against each other, and driven on shore.—4. Subsistèrent, could hold out.—5. Ex eo concurrus, from that rencounter of the ships; from the ships running foul of one another.—6. Incommodum, injury, damage.—7. Coram, openly, with his own eyes.—8. Res, a work.—9. Subdúci, to be drawn on shore.—10. Summa imperii, &c. the chief command and administration of the war.—11. Superiòre tempòre, at a former period.

P. 158.—1. Quos natos, &c., "who, they say it was handed down by tradition, were born on the island,"—an opinion prevalent among many ancient nations respecting themselves.—2. Bello illòto, the war having been waged, being over.—3. Creberrima, very thick, close together.—4. Fere Gallicis consimilita, almost like; i. e. closely resembling those of the Gauls.—5. Taleis ferreis ad certum pondus, &c., pieces of iron tried by, i. e. of, a certain weight.—6. Plumbum album, tin (literally, white lead).—7. Copia, the quantity.—8. Materia, wood, timber.—9. Caussâ animi voluptatisque, for the sake of amusement and pleasure.—10. Loca, places, climate.—11. Remissioribus, less intense.—12. Triquetra, triangular.—13. Ad Cantium, in Kent:—from Land's end to the eastern extremity of Kent, is about 344 British miles, or 356 Roman miles in a straight line. It would be much more to follow the irregularities of the coast.—14. Ad Hispaniam:—This statement is erroneous, as Spain lies to the south, not to the west of Britain.—15. Dimidio minor, less by one half:—Great Britain is computed at 77,370 square miles,—Ireland at 30,370.—16. Sed pari spatio transmissus, but the passage across to Britain is the same distance as from Gaul.—17. Mona, the Isle of Man.—18. Dies continuos, &c., that there is night for thirty successive days at the winter solstice, i. e. the 22d December:—This is not true in fact, unless the dark, cloudy, and foggy weather, at that season, is here improperly called "night."—19. Nisi certis ex aquá, &c. but we perceived, by accurate water measures, that the nights were shorter than on the continent.—The "water measure" is the Clypsedra, or water-clock,—an invention similar to the sand-glass.

P. 159.—1. Septingentòrum millium, seven hundred miles:—The true length of the western coast is 590 British or 610 Roman
miles. — 2. Contra septemtriones, opposite the north. — This is not correct; the east is much nearer the truth. — 3. Otentingintta millia passuum, eight hundred miles: — This exceeds the true estimate 230 Roman miles. — 4. Humanissimi, most civilized. — 5. Se vitro inficiunt, stain themselves with woad. — 6. Capillōque sunt promissso, and are with, i. e. they have, long hair. — 7. Deni et duodĕni, parties of ten and twelve, — habent uxores communés inter se. — 8. quo primum virgo, &c., by whom each female, when a virgin, was first married. 9. (Ita) tamen ut, in such a way however that. — 10. Submissis, being sent to their aid, — atque his, and these. — 11. Constitissent, had taken their ground.

P. 160.—1. Cūm, since, or as; § 140, Obs. 3. — 2 Intellectum est (a nobis) nostros, we perceived (Idioms 67,) that our men. — 3. Cedites, those giving way. — 4. Cedērent, gave way, yielded. — 5. Pedibus disparsi praelio, on foot, in an unequal contest; i. e. with great advantage (against us). — 6. Conferti, close, in a close body; — rari, scattered here and there. — 7. Alios alii deinceps excipĕrent, &c., and they continued one to relieve another in succession, and the vigorous and the fresh succeeded (took the place of) those fatigued. — 8. Leniūs, with less spirit. — 9. Uti non absistèrent ab, that they kept not far from, i. e. close to, &c. — 10. Neque post id tempus, &c., nor after that time did the enemy ever engage us with all their forces; nor did the enemy, after that time, ever come to a general engagement with us.

P. 161.—1. Acitis sudibus præfixis, with sharp stakes fixed in front. — 2. Cūm capite, &c., when they (the soldiers) were above the water with the head alone; i. e. were up to the neck in the water. — 3. Ut suprà, &c.; Ch. 17. — 4. Dimissis amplioribus copiis, the greater part of the forces being dismissed. — 5. Ex viâ excedebat, withdrew from the road. — 6. Relinquēbātur, &c., it remained that Cæsar did not suffer; — discèdi (ab militibus) that the cavalry should go; Idioms, 67. — 7. Hostibus nocrētūr, &c., that the enemy were injured by laying waste their lands and setting fire to their property, as far as the legionary soldiers could effect it in the midst of labor and on their march, i. e. on a laborious march.

P. 162.—1. Atque mittat (eum, i. e. Mandubratium,) qui pra- sit, &c., and send him (Mandubratius) into the state that he might rule over it, and hold the government. — 2. Ad numérum, to the number. — imperatūm, required, — frumentāque, and abundance of corn: — "Abundance" is expressed by the plural term, frumentu. — 3. Prohibitīs, being protected. — 4. Vocant oppidum, call it a town.
5. *Ad mare*, on the sea shore; Ch. 13.—6. *Adoriantur atque oppugnent*, should attack and storm; take by assault.

**P. 163.**—1. Motus, disturbances, commotions, insurrections. 2. Rectas, repaired,—his (navibus) deductis (in mare), these ships being brought down into the sea; i. e. being launched.—3. Captivorum, of prisoners.—4. Commeatibus, embarkations.—5. Navigationibus, voyages, trips.—6. Desideraretur, was missing, lost.—7. Et priores commeatibus, both those of the previous convoy,—et quas, and of those which.—8. Perpaucæ locum caperent, very few reached their destination.—9. Necessarii angustius militum collocavit, from necessity stowed his soldiers more closely (than usual).—10. Subductis navibus (in aridum), the ships being drawn on shore. 11. Frumentum provenérat angustius, corn, grain had (come forth) been produced more scantily; the crop had been less abundant.—12. In plures civitates, among a greater number of states than usual.

**P. 164.**—1. Mederi, cure, remedy.—2. Millibus passuum, &c., were contained within the space of a hundred miles:—(Probably an error as to the extent.)—3. Natus summo loco, descended from a very noble family; of very noble birth.—4. Tertium jam annum, &c. killed him, (Tasgetius) now reigning the third year, many belonging to the state being the instigators.—5. Quod ad plures, &c., because it pertained to more than one; i. e. more than one were concerned in it.—6. In hiberna perventum (esse), that they had arrived at winter quarters; literally, it had been come by them to winter quarters.

**P. 165.**—1. Qui cum ad fines, &c., and when they had met Sabinus and Cotta at the borders of their kingdom.—2. Desperatâ re, having despaired of success.—3. De communì re, concerning their common interests.—4. Minui posse, could be adjusted; literally, diminished.—5. Missu Cæsâris, by the sending of Cæsar; i. e. being sent by Cæsar.—6. Ad hunc modum, to this purpose.—7. Sese, that he (Ambiorix):—This speech is given in oblique narration; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—8. Plurimum ei debère, that he was under very great obligations to him.—9. De oppugnatione castrorum, respecting the attack on the camp.—10. Subâ esse, &c., that his authority was of such a nature,—multitudo, the people.—11. Ex humilitate suâ, from his weakness, slender circumstances.—12. Esse Galliæ communis consilium, &c.; that it was the purpose of the whole of Gaul, that this day had been appointed by them for attacking (at once) all the winter quarters of Cæsar; so that no legion could bring aid to another.
P. 166.—1. Quibus quoniam pro piétate, &c., since he had done justice to them so far as affection (to his country) required, that he now had regard to the claims of duty for the kindnesses of Caesar to him.—2. Pro hospitio, by the ties of friendship.—3. Ipsórum esse consilium, it belonged to them (Titurius and Cotta,) to consider,—velintne, whether they should.—4. Quod cium faciat, since he was doing this, i. e. in doing this he consulted, &c.—5. Existit, arises.—6. Sustinérit, could be withstood, resisted.—7. Rem esse testimonio, that fact was for proof; i. e. that facts proved this.

P. 167.—1. Levius aut turpius, weaker or more cowardly.—2. Auctóre hoste, an enemy being the author; on the information of an enemy.—3. Clamitábat, kept crying out; § 44, II. 2.—4. Césárem arbitrári profectum in Italian, that he supposed that Caesar had gone into Italy.—5. Non hostem auctórem, &c., that he did not look at the enemy’s being the adviser, but at the thing itself.—6. Ardére, burned with resentment.—7. Sine certá re, without certain information.—8. Si nil sit durius, if nothing occurred more difficult than ordinary.—9. Unam salútem, their only security.—10. Præsens, immediate.—11. Hâc in utramque, &c., this dispute being maintained on both sides.—12. Primisque ordinibus, and the chief centurions. 13. Vincite, prevail, carry your point:—This is spoken in the direct discourse; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—14. Et id, and that, i. e. et dixit id. 15. Hi (milites), these (referring to the Roman soldiers within hearing,) will understand;—abs te ratiónem, will demand satisfaction from you (Cotta); will call you to account.—16. Nec rejecti nec relegáti, &c., and not perish with either the sword or famine, as if forced away and banished far from the rest.

P. 168.—1. Consurgitur, they arise, break up.—2. Utrumque, both; viz: Cotta and Titurius.—3. Res disputatio ad medium noc-tém, the affair is protracted by their dispute; i. e. the subject is debated till midnight.—4. Dat manus, gives his hands; i. e. yields,—a mode of expression borrowed from the form of making a surrender by stretching forth, or holding up the hands.—5. Pronunciátur, it is published; orders are given,—vigiliis, without sleep.—6. Quid, i. e. spectans, or visírus quid, to see what.—7. Omnia excogitántur, &c., every reason is suggested to show,—quære, why.—8. Vigiliis, want of sleep.—9. Ut quibus persuásum esset, since they were persuaded.—10. Se demisisset, had gone down.—11. Ut qui, since he, or because he.—12. Hæc tamen ipsa (secit) these very things however (he did),—utque (ita) ut, and so that; in such a way that.—13. In ipso negotio, &c., to deliberate in the very moment of action.
P. 169.—1. Auctor, an adviser.—2. Possent minūs faciēle obire omnia per se, they could less easily perform every thing themselves; every part of their duty could not be performed by them in person (viz: Cotta and Titurius.)—3. Jussērant (duces) pronunciāre (multībus).—4. In orbem consistērent, and form (Idioms, 85,) themselves into a circle.—5. Incommōdē accidit, it proved unfortunate.—6. Vulgō, every where.—7. (Ut) quae quisque, &c. that whatever things any one of them considered the most valuable, these hastened, &c.—8. Consilium non dēfuit barbaris, prudence was not wanting to the barbarians; the barbarians were not deficient in prudence, skill.—9. Illōrum esse prædam, &c., that the booty belonged to them, (the Gauls) and that whatever the Romans should leave would be reserved for them; (Idioms, 94, 3.)—10. Erant et virtūte, &c., both in valor and number, our men were a match for them in fighting.—11. Cedant, they should give way before them.—12. Nihil iis nocēri posse, that they could not be hurt.—For nihil see § 116, Obs. 3.

P. 170.—1. Locum tenēre, to keep his place (in the circle).—2. Ad horam octāvam, till the eighth hour (2 o'clock, P. M.)—3. Utrumque femur tragūlā transīgitur Tito Balventio, each thigh is pierced through with a dart, to T. Balventius, a brave, &c.; a dart transfixes both the thighs of T. Balventius.—4. Subvēnit, is bringing aid; is endeavoring to rescue.—5. In adversum os, full in the mouth.—6. Ipsī vero nihil nocētum iri, but that he should not be hurt; that no harm should be done to himself;—se interponēre, that he pledged.—7. Alque in eo constitit, and persisted in it.—8. In presentia (tempōra), at present.

P. 171.—1. Victoriam conclaēmānt, shout victory.—2. Illī, they, viz, those who had retreated to the camp.—3. Ad unum, to a man.—4. Sublātōs, being elated.—5. Nihil esse negotii, that it was an easy matter.—6. Se profitētur, he offers himself.—7. Huic quoque accidit, to him, to this officer (Cicero) it happened.

P. 172.—1. Ægretē is dies sustentātūr (a nostris), that day is maintained by our men with difficulty; i. e. our men hold out that day with difficulty.—2. Propōsitīs, being offered.—3. Turres admoādum, &c., one hundred and twenty towers in all, altogether.—4. Praeustae suedes, stakes burned at the end.—5. Turres contabulanūr, towers of several stories are raised—pinae loricaeque, &c., battlements and parapets are constructed of interwoven hurdles.—6. Cūm esset tenuissimā valetudine, though he was in a very feeble state of health.—7. Sibi parcēre, to spare himself.—8. Aliquem
aditum sermōnis, any intimacy.—9. Facta postestate, leave being given.

P. 173.—1. Ambiorigem ostentant, &c., for the sake of gaining credit, they ostentatiously point to Ambiorix; i.e. they tell of his arrival.—2. Eos, that they; viz: Caesar and his army.—3. Hoc animo, of such a disposition; are so favorably disposed.—4. Licēre illis, that it would be permitted to them (the Romans),—per se, by them (the Nervii).—5. Adjutōre, as an intercessor.—6. Pro ejus justitiā, through his regard for justice.—7. Sed nullā ferramentōrum copiā; but there being no quantity (or abundance) of iron tools.—8. Sagālis (dim. of sagum), short cloaks.—9. Terram exhaudente, to remove the earth.—10. Millium (passuum).—11. Falces testudinesque, mural hooks and sheds; See Index, Vīnea and Testādo.—12. Ferventes glandes ex fusīli argillā, red hot balls of cast clay.—13. Fervfacta jacūla, fiery javelins.—14. Distulērunt, spread the flames.—15. Agēre, advance.

P. 174.—1. Demigrandi, of retiring from the fight, yielding.—2. Accrērimē fortissimēque, with the greatest ardor and bravery. 3. Recessumque prīmis, &c., and the last (the farthest off) did not give a retreat, (an opportunity of retreating,) to the foremost.—4. Turri, a tower, (of the enemy,)—vallum (our) rampart.—5. Quorum, of whom; viz: the enemy;—progrēdi, to come forth; viz: from the tower.—6. Deturbātī, &c., they were dislodged and the tower set on fire.—7. Qui jam prīmis ordinibus, &c., who were advancing (rising) to the first ranks.—8. Spectas, do you look for. 9. Quaēque, and where.—10. Procurrentem, running forward (to engage him).—11. Hunc, him (the wounded enemy).

P. 175.—1. In illum, at him (Pulśio).—2. Succurrīt inimīcus, &c. Varenus, though his rival, runs up and assists him in danger.—3. Hunc, him, (Varenus).—4. Illum, that he (Pulśio).—5. In locum dejectus, &c., stumbling, he fell; or, he stumbled and fell into a hollow place.—6. In contentiōne et certamīne, in this honorable rivalry and contest;—utrumque versāvit, &c., employed, directed, both, that the one, though the rival, alternately brought aid and security to the other.—7. Quanto gravior, &c., the more severe and difficult,—tantō crebrisōres, the more frequently; § 98, Obs. 10.—8. Unus Nervius, a certain Nervian.—9. Honestō locō, of an honorable family.—10. Servo (suo) a slave of his.—11. Pericūlis, the great danger (literally, the dangers).—12. Undecimā horā, the eleventh hour, 5 o'clock, P. M.; see Gr. App. I.
P. 176.—1. *Quà sibi itèr faciendum scìebat,* where he knew he would have to pass.—2. *Si reipublicae commòdo,* &c. if he could do it with advantage to the state.—3. *Lìtèras publicas,* the public documents.—4. *Toleràndae hièmisc causà,* for the sake of enduring the winter; for a winter supply.—5. *Rem gestam,* the things done, the course pursued.—6. *Opiniòne dejectus,* disappointed in his expectation; literally, cast down from his expectation.

P. 177.—1. *Si adìre non possìt,* if he could not gain access (to the camp).—2. *Ad amentum deligàtâ,* tied to the thong, or strap: The *amentum* was a strap fastened to the middle of a spear or javelin, by means of which it was thrown with greater force.—3. *Casu,* by chance.—4. *Perlectam,* being read over; after he had read it over himself.—5. *Expùlit,* dispelled, put an end to.—6. *Tamen ângustiis viàrum,* nevertheless, by the narrowness of the ways (or passages) between the tents.

P. 178.—1. *Galli (hoc faciunt) Cæsar (hoc facit).*—2. *In suum locum,* to his own ground; *i. e.* ground favorable to him.—3. *Portasque obstruí,* &c., the gates to be blocked up, and in doing this, that they should run to and fro as much as possible:—This was designed to lead the enemy to believe that there was great trepidation and fear in the camp.—4. *Etiam de vallo deductis,* &c., and being drawn back, even from the rampart, they (the enemy,) approach nearer.—5. *Ad se,* to them, *viz:* from the Roman camp.—6. *Ac sic nostros contemserunt,* and to such a degree did they show their contempt of us.—7. *Eà (vià), in that way.—8. Longìius,* too far.—9. *Ilìorum,* of them, *viz:* the enemy.

P. 179.—1. *Legiônè productâ,* &c., having led forth the legion; having reviewed the legion, he finds; (Idioms, 104.)—2. *Pro ejus merito,* according to his merit; as he deserved;—*appellat,* he addresses by name.—3. *Rem gestam propònit,* he lays before them (viz: Cotta and Sabinus) the matter as it took place.—4. *Culpà,* by the misconduct.—5. *Hoc,* on this account.—6. *Quòd,* seeing, since. 7. *Incommòdò expiàto,* &c., the loss being retrieved; the disaster having been remedied by the kindness, &c.—8. *Post horam nonam,* after 3 o'clock, *P. M.*; See Gr. App. I.—9. *Trinis hibernis,* in three several winter quarters; *i. e.* in three different places.—10. *Consultàbant,* were consulting, deliberating; § 44, II. 2.—11. *Quid consiìti reliqui capèrent,* &c., what measures the rest were adopting, and when a beginning of the war would be made.—12. *Concilia,* assemblies, meetings.
P. 180.—1. Quin aliquem, &c., but he heard, (that he did not hear,) some intelligence.—2. Armoricae, states lying along the north of Gaul, now Bretagne.—3. Dicto audientes, obedient:—In this phrase audientes governs dicto, by § 112, R. V.; again, the words audientes dicto, together, are equivalent to obedientes, and often govern another dative by the same Rule; as, Nobis dicto obediens, obedient to us.—4. Tantum valuit, prevailed so much; had so much influence.—5. Attulit, produced, caused.—6. Præcipuo semper honor habuit, treated always with special honor.—7. Alterius,—alteros, the former,—the latter.—8. Nulla fere civitas, &c., almost every state was suspected by us.—9. Idque adeo, &c., and I do not know whether this is to be wondered at.—10. Quod, qui, &c., because they grieved most bitterly that they who were accustomed to be ranked before all nations in valor, had lost so much of that reputation that they should endure the commands of the Roman people.—Qui has for its antecedent se in the next clause.

P. 181.—1. Lapsus hac spe, having fallen from this hope; i. e. being disappointed in this hope.—2. Ultrò ad se ventris (ab hominibus, 67, 7,) that men were coming to him of their own accord.—3. Omnibus cruciatis, by every species of torture.—4. Alterius factiones, of the opposite faction.—5. Secutum fidem Caesaris, having put himself under the protection of Caesar.—6. Huc, to them.

P. 182.—1. Sub castris, close up to the camp.—2. Quibuscumque poterat, by whatever means he could.—3. Intromissis, being let in (to the Roman camp).—4. Quos arcessendos, &c., who he had taken care should be sent for.—5. Nulla ratione, in no way.—6. Cum magnâ contumeliâ, with great insult of words; with most abusive language.—7. Dispersi ac dissipati in a dispersed and scattered manner.—8. Præcipit atque interdicit, commands and forbids,—præcipit has for its object, unum omnes petant Indutiomarum; and interdicit, the next clause, neu quis, &c.—9. Morá reliquiârum, by the delay (of pursuing) the rest.—10. Comprobât, favors.

NOTES ON BOOK VI.

P. 183.—1. Dilectum habère, to hold a levy; to raise forces.—2. Quoniam ipse ad urbem, &c., since he (Pompey) remained near the city with military command, on account of the republic (The
laws did not allow a person invested with military powers to enter the city,) that he would order those troops which he had raised in Cisalpine Gaul (and had bound) by the oath of fidelity to the consul.—3. Sarciri, &c., be repaired, but even be more than compensated by greater forces.—4. Quod cum Pompeius, &c., Pompey having granted this.—5. Ut docuimus, as we have shewn.—6. Obsidibusque de pecuniā cavent, secure the payment of the money by means of hostages.

P. 184.—1. _Ad imperātum_, to the thing commanded; _i. e._ to do the thing commanded.—2. _Nondum hiēme confectā_, the winter being not yet ended, _i. e._ before the end of winter.—3. _Ut instituērat_, as he had been accustomed.—4. _Omnia_ every thing else.—5. _Sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur_, but were supposed to be absent from, (not concerned in) this scheme (plot).—6. Hāc re, &c., this thing (the adjournment) being published from the tribunal; (an elevated place formed of turf or other material heaped up together, _suggestus_).—7. _Conantibus_, &c., to them attempting to do this.—8. _Sententia_, from this design.—9. _Deprecandī_, of excusing their conduct.—10. _Quid aestivum_, &c., because the summer was the time for prosecuting the war, not for legal investigations.

P. 185.—1. _Totus et mente et animo_, wholly with his mind and soul; _i. e._ with his whole heart and soul.—2. _Ne quis aut ex hujus iracundia_, &c., that no commotion might arise, either from this man's violent temper, or from that hatred on the part of the state which he had incurred (in consequence of having been made king over it by Cæsar).—3 _Pro explorato_, for certain.—4. _Circumspiciēbat ejus_ (Ambiorīgis) _reliqua consilia animo_, watched his other plans in his mind (_i. e._ with attention).—5. _Perpetuis paludibus_, continued, uninterrupted marshes.—6. _Illi_, from him (Ambiorīx), _ipsum_, (Ambiorīx) himself.—7. _Congrēdi cum Transrhenānīs_, to unite with those beyond the Rhine.—8. _Manu_, an army.—9. _Præsidio loci_, to the protection of the place, the strength of their position.—10. _Effectis_, erected, built.—11. _Adit tripartito_, marches against them in three divisions.

P. 186.—1. _Augebātur_ (hostibus) was increased to the enemy.—2. _Loquitur_, he (Labienus) speaks.—3. _In dubium non devo-catūrum_, would not endanger, involve in doubt.—4. _Gallīcis rebus_, the interest, the affairs of the Gauls.—5. _Prīmis ordinibus_, the chief centurions.—6. _Longum esse_, that it would be long, too long, too late.
P. 187.—1. Usus eadem simulatioe itineris, practising the same deception respecting his march.—2. Facultatem, opportunity.

3. Præstāte, display.—4. Præsidio ad impedimenta dimissis, being detached to the baggage for a guard; i. e. to guard the baggage.—5. Præter spem, contrary to expectation.—6. Infestis signis, with hostile standards.—7. Cingetorxi—traditum est, was conferred on Cingetorix; See B. V. Ch. 3. and 56.—8. Ne Ambiorix ad eos receptum haberet, that Ambiorix might not have a retreat to them; a place of refuge among them.


P. 189.—1. Alienum, improper, foreign to the purpose.—2. Proponère, to treat of, lay before, to give some account of.—3. In omnibus pagis partibusque, in all the cantons and parts of cantons.—4. Principes eorum factiónum, &c., the heads of these factions are (persons) who in their opinion are considered to have the greatest interest, on whose will and decision all their most important affairs and resolutions hinge, depend.—5. Idque ejus rei causâ, &c., and this custom seems to have been instituted from early times, for this reason.—6. Quisque non patitur,—neque habent, each leader (patron),—neither do they have:—The pupil may here notice the transition from the singular, patitur, with quisque, to the plural, habent; § 102, Obs. 5.—7. Hec eadem ratio est, &c., this same principle exists, prevails, in the government of all Gaul.—8. Principes, chief, at the head of.—9. Jacturis, expenses, gifts:—This is a pure use of the word, which denotes a present loss in expectation of future benefit.—10. Tantum potentia antecesserant, they (the Sequani) so far excelled (the Ædui) in power.—11. Re infectâ, the business, his object, being accomplished.—12. Eorum amicitiam their (the Ædui's) friendship.

P. 190.—1. Reliquis rebus, &c., here the participle, amplificatâ, agrees with the nearest noun; See § 98, Obs. 4.—2. Dimisserant, (for amisserant,) had lost.—3. Quos quod adequire, &c., and because it was understood that they (the Remi) equalled the Ædui in Cæsar's favor; i. e. had an equal share of Cæsar's favor with the Ædui; stood as high in &c.—4. Vetères inimicitias, ancient feuds.—5. Dicabant se Remis in clientelam, gave up themselves to the Re-
mi for protection; put themselves under the protection of the Remi, 6. Alt quo numéro, of any note;—genera, classes.—7. Aere alieno, by debt, literally, the money of another.—8. In hos eádem, &c., over these the nobles have all the same rights as masters have over their slaves.—9. Alterum est Druidum, one is that of the Druids (See Index)—the other, that of the knights.—10. Illi, the former;—ad hos, to the latter.—11. Procurant, have charge of.—12. Ii (Druïdes) sunt apud eos (adolescentes) they (the Druids) are in great honor among them, viz: their pupils.—13. Non stetit decreto, &c., has not stood by, has violated their decree,—they exclude them from the public rites, excommunicate them.—14. Ii quibus tâ interdictum est, those who are thus excommunicated (Idioms, 66).—15. Defugiunt aditum eorum, &c., shun their company and conversation.

P. 191.—1. Habet summam auctoritatem, possesses the supreme authority; whose authority is absolute.—2. Arrange: Quae regio habetur media (regio) totius Galliae, which is esteemed the middle, or central region of all Gaul.—3. Parent, obey, abide by, acquiesce in.—4. Disciplina, &c. this institution is thought to have originated in Britain.—5. Diligentius, more accurately.—6. Militiae vacatio-nem, exemption from military service.—7. Immunitatem omnium rerum, immunity, privilege, free use, enjoyment, of all things; all immunities.—8. Premiis, rewards, advantages, privileges.—9. Ediscere, to learn by heart; to commit to memory.—10. Ea litteris mandare, to commit these things to writing.—11. Instituisses id, to have instituted this custom.—12. Disciplinam efferrì, that their doctrine should be spread abroad.—13. In primis hoc volunt, &c., they (the Druids) in particular wish to inculcate this idea; it is a favorite maxim of the Druids.—14. Animas non interire, &c., that souls do not die, but pass from one body to another.—15. Disputant, &c., they reason and impart their reflections to the young.

P. 192.—1. Cum est usus, when there is need.—2. Versantur, are engaged.—3. Ambactos, retainers.—4. Dedita religionibus, given, addicted to religious rites, to superstitions.—5. Contexta viminiibus, interwoven with twigs.—6. Ejus generis(nocentium), of this class of offenders.—7. Deum maximè Mercurium colunt, they (the Gauls) worship chiefly the god Mercury; i. e. Mercury is the chief or favorite deity of the Gauls:—Not however the Mercury of the Grecian mythology, but a Gallic deity.—8. (Colunt) Apollinem, &c.—9. Initialia, the beginnings, the first knowledge.
P. 193.—1. Quae superavérint, &c. they sacrifice the captured animals which remain.—2. Postīta, deposited (in sacred places).—3. Spatia omnis tempóris, all their periods or divisions of time.—4. Ut noctem dies subsequátur, that the day follows the night; i.e. their day is from sunset to sunset as among the Jews.—5. Palam, openly; i.e. publicly, in public.—6. Conjunctiimum ratio habétur, a joint account is kept.—7. Fructusque servátur, and the interest is laid up.—8. Vitā superárēt, shall survive the other.—9. Habent questionem de uxoribus in servīlem modum, they examine their wives by torture, after the manner of slaves; like slaves.—10. Si comper-tum est, if any discovery is made.—11. Pro cultu, considering their mode of life.—12. Vivis cordi fuisse, to have been pleasing to them living.

P. 194.—1. Commodiús, to greater advantage than others; more judiciously.—2. Quae visa sunt, what seemed proper to them; i.e. what they thought proper.—3. Per consilium, through, or during; i.e. in the time of the council.—4. Neque student, nor do they pay attention to.—5. Opibus quorum, &c., by whose power they are manifestly benefited.—6. Vulcanum, fire.—7. Constitit, is spent. 8. Impubēres, chaste.—9. Rhenōnum, of deer's hides.—10. Quantum et quo loco, &c., as much land as, and where they think proper. 11. Afférent multas causas ejus rei, they produce many reasons for this practice.

P. 195.—1. Accuratiús, with greater care.—2. Animí æquitāte, in evenness of mind, contentment.—3. Proprium virtútis, peculiar to, or a proof of, their valor.—4. Dicunt jus, controversiastique minuunt adminyster justice and decide controversies.—5. Qui velint sequi pro-fitantur, let those who wish to follow signify it, give their names. 6. Ac tempus fuit antea, but there was a time formerly.—7. Ultro bella inferrent, they (the Gauls) without provocation brought war: Germānīs, upon the Germans.

P. 196.—1. Summam opinionem, a very high character, reputation for justice, and military glory.—2. Gallis autem, &c., the nearness of the (Roman) province to the Gauls, and their acquaintance with foreign commodities.—3. Largitur multa ad copiam atque usus, supplies many articles of luxury and convenience.—4. Expe-dito, to a traveller without baggage; to an expeditious traveller.—5. Fintri, be measured.—6. Sinistrorsus, to the left hand (viz: of the Danube,) stretches northward from the Danube.—7. Memoriae prodenda videantur, seem worthy to be handed down to remembrance.—8. Bos, See Index, Bison.—9. Sicut palmæ, like palms.
P. 197.—1. Alces, elk; See Alce.—2. Varietas pellium, the spots, varied color, of their skins.—3. Si afflicta quo casu conciderint, if, being thrown down by any accident, they have fallen.—4. Applicant se ad eam, they lean themselves against these.—5. Infirmas, being weakened.—6. Uri; See Urus.—7. Quae sunt testimonio, to serve as a proof.—8. Ne parvuli quidem excepti, not even those caught young. 9. Amplissimis, their most splendid.—10. Cæsar:—Cæsar having finished his digression, respecting the manners of the Gauls and Germans, (Ch. II—28,) here resumes his narrative.

P. 198.—1. Si quid celeritāte, &c., to see if he may be able to gain any thing by rapidity of march and favorable opportunity.—2. Ut imperātum est, as was ordered.—3. Fortūna potest (facere) multum, &c. fortune can do much; i.e. has great influence, not only, &c.—4. Magnae fuit fortūna, it was a piece of great good fortune.

P. 199.—1. Multum fortūna valuit, fortune can do much, has great power or influence.—2. Judicio, from choice, designedly.—3. Exclūsus tempore, prevented by want of time.—4. Sed certē, but it is certain.—5. Alienissimis to total strangers.—6. Omnibus preclibus, with every sort of execution.—7. Taxo, with yew; i.e. with a decoction of the leaves or berry, both of which were regarded as poisonous.—8. Causam omnium Germanorum esse unam, that the cause of all the Germans was one and the same.—9. Questione captivorum, from an examination of the captives.

P. 200.—1. Post diem septimum (inchoatum), after the seventh day was begun; i.e. on the seventh day;—2. Ut suprà, Ch. 31.—3. Nulla certa manus, no regular force.—4. Vicinitatibus, to the neighborhoods; i.e. to the people in the neighborhood:—a very common mode of speech in our own language.—5. Ex parte, partly, in a measure.

P. 201.—1. Confertos, in large parties.—2. Si vellet, if he (Cæsar) wished.—3. Instituta ratio, established discipline.—4. Ut potius in nocendo, &c., that some opportunity of injuring the enemy should be omitted, rather than that this injury should be inflicted with any danger to his soldiers.—5. Legionarius miles, the legionary soldierly; the soldiers of the legion; i.e. the regular troops.—6. Appetebat, was drawing near.—7. Quantos casus afferat, how great accidents she brings; i.e. how great changes she brings about.—8. Manus erat nulla, there was no collected body.—9. Suprà docimus, we have shewn above; B. IV. Ch. 16.
P. 202.—1. Non pālus non silvae morantur hos, &c., no marsh, no woods hinder these men, &c.—2. Tantum præsidii ut ne, &c., so little of garrison that not even the walls could be surrounded with men; i. e. could be manned.—3. Duce, guide,—indicio, information. 4. Qui illius patientiam pāne obsessionem, &c., who called his forbearance almost a siege, since they were not permitted to go out of the camp.—5. Qui convalvērant, &c., those who had recovered during this interval.—6. Subsidērat, had remained.—7. Casu, by chance, by accident.

P. 203.—1. Mercatores qui sub vallo tendērent, the sutlers who pitched their tents close to the ramparts.—2. Reliquos aditus, and other places of entrance.—3. Plerique novas sibi, &c., most of them form to themselves strange superstitious notions from the place; and they place before their eyes the disaster of Cotta and Titurius, since they were overthrown in that fort.—4. Qui primum pilum, &c., who had led the first rank with Cæsar; i. e. who had been his chief centurion.—5. Superioribus prāliis; See B. II. Ch. 25, and B. III. Ch. 5.—6. Relinquit animus Sextium, Sextius saints.

P. 204.—1. Imperti usus militāris, not acquainted with the usages of war.—2. Cuneo facto, a wedge being made; being drawn up in the form of a wedge.—3. Si, if, even if:—at, still, yet.—4. Nullo usu militāris rei percepto, &c., no experience in military affairs being yet acquired.

P. 205.—1. Non facēret fidem, he did not gain credit, was not believed.—2. Pāne alienātā mente, with a mind almost alienated; devoid of reason.—3. Questus unum, having complained of only one thing.—4. Locum debuisse relinqui, ne mínimo quidem casu, that a place, or occasion, ought not to have been left, for even the smallest accident; See § 16; Exc. 2.—5. Quarum omnium rerum maximē, &c., of all these things it seemed the most astonishing.—6. Obtulērint optatisstum beneficium Ambiorigī, rendered the most acceptable service to Ambiorix.—7. Ad vexandos hostes, to annoy the enemy.

P. 206.—1. Pāne natūram studio vincērent, they almost overcame nature by exertion.—2. Ad summam felicitātem, to complete success.—3. Ille eripēret, &c., he continued to snatch himself from them; to escape from them by the aid of lurking places and forests: 4. Sumsit supplicium more majōrum, he inflicted punishment according to the practice of their ancestors.—5. Cūm interdixisset quibus aquā atque igni, when he had interdicted them from water and fire;
i. e. had banished them:—This was the Roman judicial mode of inflicting the sentence of banishment, "To forbid the use of water and fire"—6. *Frumento proviso exercitui*, having provided corn for the army.

[END OF NOTES.]
Acco, önis, a general of the Gauls, who was at the head of the confederacy formed against the Senōnes, Carnūtes, and Trevīri. Cæsar, by the rapidity of his marches, prevented the execution of his plans, and ordered a general assembly of Gaul to inquire into the conduct of these nations, in which he pronounced sentence of death on Acco, who was instantly executed; B. VI. Ch. 4, and 44.

Adcantuannus, Adiomātus, vel, Adbuātus, i, the chief man, for many years, among the Allobroges.

Aduatūca, æ, f. a fort nearly in the middle of the country possessed by the Eburōnes,—a different place from Aduatūcum, the capital of the Aduatūci, now called Tongres, with which it appears to have been confounded by Ptolemy;—A small part of the town only may have been built when Cæsar was in that country. Hence he mentioned it as a castle, or fort. It stood near the river Mosa, (Mæse,) between Liege and Maastricht.

Aduatūci, ōrum, m. a people of Gallia Belgīca, whose country lay on the west bank of the Mosa, (Mæse,) between Namur and Liege. Ėduī, ōrum, (sing. Ėduus, i.), v. Hedui, ōrum, one of the most powerful and wealthy nations of Gallia Celtīca. Their territory lay on the W. of the Arar, (Soane,) between that river and the Ligeris, (Loire,) a little to the N. of the junction of the former with the Rhodānus, (Rhone.) At an early period they became the allies of Rome, to which, in some degree, their influence among the other nations of Gaul may be attributed. See Ėsequāni.

Ēmilius, i, (Lucius), an officer in Cæsar's army, who commanded a part of the Gallic cavalry.
Æquinoxium, i, n. (from Æquus, equal, and Nox, night,) the Equinoctium, or time when the days and nights are equal, all over the globe. This happens twice a year, on 22d March, and 22d September. The former is called the Vernal, the latter the Autumnal Equinox. The circle, which passes through the place of the sun at these two periods of the year, has, from the phenomenon above mentioned, received the name of the Equinoctial, or Equinoctial Line, and is directly over the Equator.

Agendicum, i, n. (now Sens,) the chief city of the Senones, a brave and powerful people of Gaul, who inhabited the left bank of the Sequana, (Seine.) It stood below the confluence of the Vanne and Icauna, vel, Itumna, (Yonne,) a southern branch of the Seine.

Agger, is, the name of a mound raised by the Romans in besieging cities. It was composed of earth, wood, hurdles, stone, &c. The agger commenced at a distance from the walls, gradually advanced towards the town, always increasing in height, till it equalled or overtopped the walls. This mound was secured by towers of different stories, (See Turris,) from which showers of missiles were discharged on the defenders by means of engines, and from which, when advanced near enough, a temporary platform or bridge was sometimes thrown to the top of the wall, on which the soldiers marched into the city.

Ala, æ, the wing of an army, properly the cavalry, so called from being placed on the right and left of the infantry. In the plural this term is often used to designate the troops of the allies, which (both infantry and cavalry,) were stationed on the right and left of the Roman army.

Alarri, ōrum, those belonging to the Alae, or wings.

Allobrœges, um, (sing. Allobrox, ògis,) a people of Gaul, whose country lay between the Ísâra, (Isere,) and the river Rhodânu, (Rhone.) They bravely, and for a long time, resisted the power of the Roman legions, but were at last defeated by Pompeius. Cicero extols them for their fidelity to their countrymen, of which they gave a remarkable proof in Catiline's conspiracy (See Sallust, B. C.) Horace censures them for their love of novelty, which seems characteristic of the inhabitants of that country, both in ancient and modern times. Cæsar De Bel. Gal. IV. 5. The chief town of the Allobrœges was Vienna, (Vienne,) on the left bank of the Rhone, 13 miles below Lugdunum, (Lyon.)

Alpes, ium, a chain of mountains separating Italy from Gaul and Germany. They are in the form of a crescent, and extend from the Sinus Flanaticus, (the gulf of Quarnero,) at the top of the
gulf of Venice, to Vada Sabatia, (Savona,) on the gulf of Genoa, a distance of 600 miles. They have been divided into different portions, the principal of which are the following: 1. Alpes Maritima, (or Maritime Alps,) extending from the vicinity of Nice to Monte Viso. 2. Alpes Cottæ, (or Cottian Alps,) from Monte Viso to Mont Cenis. 3. Alpes Graia, (or Graian Alps,) between Mont Iseran and Little St. Bernard. 4. Alpes Pennina, (or Pennine Alps,) from Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhone and Rhine. To this range belongs Mt. Blanc, 14,676 feet high. 5. Alpes Rhätica, (or Rhätian Alps,) from St. Gothard to Mount Brenner in the Tyrol. 6. Alpes Notica, (or Noric Alps,) from Mount Brenner to the head of the river Plavis. 7. Alpes Carnica, sive Julia, (the Carnic or Julian Alps,) from the head of the river Plavis to the confines of Illyricum. Over these mountains there are several passes, of which the principal are, that over the Great St. Bernard, that over Mont Simplon, and that over Mont St. Gothard.

Ambarri, örum, a people of Gaul, related to the Æeduì, supposed to have lived on the Arar, (Saone,) a little to the N. of its Junction with the Rhodan, (Rhine.)

Ambianum, i, n. anciently Samarobriva, now Amiens, a town of the Belgæ.

Ambiani, örum, the inhabitants of Ambianum. They entered into a conspiracy against Cæsar, (B. G. II. 4,) and appear to have held a considerable rank among the Belgoic tribes.

Ambiliáti, örum, m. a nation of Gallia Celtica whose geographical position is not precisely ascertained. They are mentioned (B. G. III. 9,) along with the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannées, &c., and therefore their country must have been included in the province of Bretagne or Normandy. Some editions have Ambiani.

Ambiörìx, ëgis, king of the Eburōnes, was a great enemy to the Romans. After many narrow escapes, he at last evaded the pursuit of Cæsar's men who followed him too closely, when only four of his attendants remained.

Ambivariti, örum, a nation of Gaul, between the Mosa, (Masae,) and the Rhēnus, (Rhine,) who were subject to the Æeduì. B. IV. Ch. 9.)

Anartes, ium, et Anarti, v. Anartiö, örum, a people of Dacia, who inhabited the east bank of the river Tibiscus, (Teissk, or Teyss,) one of the northern branches of the Danube. Their country now forms part of Hungary.

Ancalites, ium, a people of South Britain, who were neighbors to
the Trinobantes. Some have thought the Atrebates of Ptolemy and Antonine's Itinerary, the same with the Ancalites of Cæsar. See Horsley's Brittania Romana, p. 17, and Gale's Anton. Itiner. p. 105, 106.

Andes, ium, ïbus, a nation of the Celtæ in Gaul. Their territory lay on the north bank, and near the mouth, of the river Ligèris, (Loir.)

Annus, i, m. a year. See Gr. App. I.

Antebrogius, i, m. a man of great influence amongst the Rhemi, who was sent ambassador to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Antesignāni, ērum, (Ante and signum,) a name given to the soldiers who fought before the standards, or in the first line, as those who were stationed behind the standards were called Postsignāni, or Subsignāni.

Antistius, i, (Caius A. Rheginus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. Cæsar, in consequence of his expecting greater commotions in that country, gave orders in the sixth year of the war, to Marcus Silanus, C. Antistius Rheginus, and T. Sextius, to levy troops. We find him, at other times, appointing this lieutenant to honorable commissions.

Antistius, (See Turpio.)

Apollo, inis, the son of Jupiter and Latōna, the god of music, medicine, augury, painting, poetry, and all the fine arts. He was born at the same birth with his sister Diana, near the foot of Cynthus, a mountain in Delos, an island in Mare Αἰγευμ, (Archipelago.) Hence he was called Cynthius and Delius; and Diana, Cynthia and Delia. Among beasts, the wolf; among insects, the grass-hopper; among birds, the cock, the crow, the swan, and the hawk; and among trees, the palm, the olive, and the laurel, were sacred to Apollo. He was represented as a tall beardless young man, of handsome shape, holding in his hand a bow, hence called Deus Arcitēnens, or a lyre, and his head surrounded with rays of light.

Aquila, æ, m. an eagle, also the standard of a Roman Legion. From the second consulship of Marius, and under the Emperors, the standards were most commonly of silver, seldom of gold, in the form of an eagle, from which the name is derived. The preference was given to the former metal, according to Pliny, because it is seen at a greater distance than the latter. But though the figure of the Roman ensigns was always that of an eagle, they were not always precisely alike. Sometimes they resembled an
eagle in a standing posture, at others, with outstretched wings, which was the most common form, and not unfrequently with a turret on their backs. The Roman standard, at first, was a bundle of hay fixed to a pole, Manipulus,—a term afterward used to denote the third part of a cohort, then of wood, sometimes of sil-
ver, and more rarely of gold, in different forms. Marius, during his second consulship, introduced into the Roman army the eagle, which continued to be ensign till the destruction of the empire. The merit of originality does not belong to the Romans, for we have the authority of Xenophon to maintain, that it was first used as a military standard by the Persians.

Aquiler, fēri, m. standard-bearer, whose office seems, in some de-
gree, to correspond to that of ensign with us. His place was in the first line. To allow the standard to fall into the hands of the enemy was reckoned highly disgraceful to the whole legion, which is still the case in modern times, but particularly to the person who carried it. In one instance recorded by Livy, the standard-
bearer was, for this crime, put to death. But the centurions suf-
f ered the same punishment at that time, and the army was deci-
 mated for cowardice and treachery.—It does not appear from Ro-
am history, that recourse was had to such severity, unless in in-
stances of wilful dereliction of duty, proceeding either from un-
manly timidity or treacherous intention.

Aquileia, æ, f. a famous seaport belonging to the Venetii on Mare Hadriaticum, (Gulf of Venice.) Strabo says it was built by the Romans, to repel the inroads of the barbarians, when their terri-
tory on that coast did not extend farther north. The name has been thought to be derived from an eagle, Aquila, flying over the site at the time the foundation was laid; but more probably from the Roman standard, in consequence of two legions having been long stationed in that place. From its splendor and magnificence, it was sometimes called Roma Secunda. Altilla, king of the Huns, after a long and obstinate siege, plundered it, A. D. 452, and so completely was the city destroyed, that the next generation could scarcely discover its ruins. Since that time, a few fishermen's huts point out the place near which it stood. Aquileia, according to Pliny, was at the distance of 1500 paces from the coast.

Aquitania, æ, f. one of the three principal divisions of Gallia, (France,) bounded on the east by Provincia, (Languedoc, Pro-
vence, and Dauphiné; on the north by the river Garumna, (Ga-
ronne,) which separates it from Gallia Celtica, on the west by Oceánus Cantabricus, (Bay of Biscay,) and on the south by Py-
renæi Montes, (Pyrenees, or Pyrenean Mountains,) which divide Gallia from Hispania, (Spain.) As Aquitania was much less than either of the other two divisions, Augustus extended its northern boundary to the river Ligēris, (Loire.)

Aquitānī, ērum, (sing. Aquitānus, i,) the inhabitants of Aquitania. Arar, āris, m. (Saone,) a smooth flowing river of Gaul, which takes its rise near Mount Vosēgus, (Vosge,) runs southward, and after receiving several streams, falls into the river Rhodānus, (Rhone,) at Lugdūnum, (Lyon, or Lyons.) B. I. Ch. 12.

Arduenna, æ, f. Ardennes, a forest of Gaul, the largest in that country, reaching, according to Cæsar, from the Rhenus, (Rhine,) to the territory of the Remi, upwards of fifty miles in length. Others make the extent of this forest much larger. If it reached from the territory of the Trevīri to that of the Remi, it would greatly exceed fifty miles. The ground is now in many places cleared, and cities built upon it. Strabo says, the trees of this forest were not of a great height, and its length did not exceed forty miles.

Arecomīci, ērum, a people of Gaul, who lived on the Gallicus Sinus, (Gulf of Lyons,) to the west of the river Rhodānus, (Rhone.) See Volcē.

Aries, ētis, m. a ram,—also a military engine for battering down walls. It is said to have been first used by the Carthaginians at the siege of Gades, (Cadiz.) This instrument was originally very simple. To the end of a beam, varying in length and thickness according to circumstances, was affixed a piece of iron in the form of a ram’s head, to which it owes its name. This powerful engine of war rested on the arms of the soldiers who worked it. The first improvement made on the battering ram, was to suspend it by a chain or a rope from the top of two logs of wood, having the lower ends fixed firmly in the ground at a considerable distance from each other, and terminating in a point at the upper, by which contrivance the men who wrought it were wholly relieved of its weight. To protect them from the destructive weapons thrown by the besieged, a shed or mantlet, with a strong roof, was formed around it. The whole stood on wheels, so that the besiegers easily moved the engine at pleasure. It does not appear from ancient history, that the battering ram received any important improvement after the one just stated. The discovery of gunpowder and introduction of artillery have quite superseded the use of this military engine, which the Romans long held in great esteem.
The number of men employed at once in working the ram, and the length of time they continued, would vary according to the number of the troops, the magnitude of the beam, the thickness of the wall, &c. It is certain that in some instances, upwards of fifty men plied on each side, and from the severity of the labor, they must, in ordinary cases, have been frequently relieved. The following wood cut represents the battering ram protected by the *Testudo*, or *vinea*, under which the men employed in working it were protected from the missiles of the enemy.

**ARIES.**

Ariovistus, i, king of the Germans, who invaded Gallia, *France,* conquered a considerable part of that country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched up to his very camp, compelled him to fight, and gained such a complete victory, that a very few only, among whom was
Ariovistus himself, escaped. These continued their flight, until they reached the banks of the Rhine, which they crossed, some by swimming, others by boats. Ariovistus, in a little vessel, got safely to the other side. From this period nothing of his history is known.

Armorice civitates, Armorîc States, namely, those of the Rhedones Namnetes, Veneti, Curiosolites, Osismii, Corisopitii, Unelli, Ambriacatui, Bajocasses, Vinducasses, and Lexovii, who inhabited the western part of the countries, between the Liguris, (Loire,) and the Sequâna, (Seine.) They had this name from their situation on the sea coast; Armor signifying, in the language of the ancient Galls, on the sea.

Armorici, œrum, the inhabitants of Armorîcæ.

Arpinius, i, (Caius,) a Roman knight whom Cæsar sent along with Quintus Junius to Ambiorix, after he himself had declined an interview with that prince.

Arverni, œrum, a people of Gallia Celtîca, whose territories lay between the sources of the Eleavr, (Allier,) and Duranius, (Dordogne,) branches of the Liguris and Garumna. From the numerous wars which they had carried on against the Romans, Strabo infers their power and resources must, in former ages, have been very great. Like the Romans, they boasted of being descended from the Trojans.

Atrebates, ium, a people of Gallia Belgîca, the neighbors of the Morîni whose country lay along the English Channel, opposite to Dover.

Atrius, i, (Quintus,) an officer to whom Cæsar gave the command of the shipping, which had carried him and his army to the coast of Britain.

Atuatucì, v. Aduatucì, œrum, a people of Belgic Gaul, whose territories lay between the rivers Mosa, (Mase,) and Æ Scaldis, (Scheld,) adjoining to those of the Nervii and Toxarii. Their capital was Atuatūca, æ, i. Tongres, in Brabant.

Aulerci, œrum; of this name Cæsar mentions four nations of Gaul. Aulerci Brannovices, whose territories, (Moriennæ,) were adjoining to those of the Ædii, Segusiâni, and Ambivaritii; Aulerci Cenomanni, whose country, (Mans,) lay between the rivers Sarta (Sartæ,) and Lœdus, two of the northern branches of the Loire Suindînum, vel, Subdinium, afterwards Cenomanni, on the Sarte was their chief city; Aulerci Eburovices inhabited the left bank of the Sequâna, (Seine,) below Lutetia, (Paris.) Their chief town was Mediolânum, afterwards Eburovices, (Evreux.)
The Aulerct Diablintes, Diablita, et Diaulltce, lived between the two last mentioned nations. Neodunum, afterwards Diablintes, (Jublens,) was their largest town. These three, probably, formed but one people, and might, with more propriety, have been demominated tribes, than separate or distinct nations.

Aurunculeius, i, (Lucius A. Cotta) one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic War. He opposed the rash measure of his colleague, in wishing to leave their winter quarters, at the deceitful suggestion of Ambiorix, but at last yielded to the timidity of Titurius, which cost him his life. He is frequently called L. Cotta, and sometimes Cotta.

Ausci,orum, a people of Aquitania in Gaul. Their capital was Climberres, v. Climberrum, Augusta, and at a latter period, Auci, (Auch,) which stood on the west branch of the Ger, one of the southern branches of the river Garumna, (Garonne.)

Auxilia,orum, troops sent by foreign kings and states. They usually received pay and clothing from the republic, although sometimes they were supported by those who sent them.

Axona, æ, m. (Aine, or Aisne,) a river of Gaul, which Ausonius calls Præceps, from its rapidity. Its source was in the territories of the Rhemi, which form the department of the Meuse. It runs in a south-west direction, joins the Isara, (Isère,) a little below Campagne, and both fall into the Sequana, (Seine,) about five miles south of Pontoise.

B.

Bacenis, is, f. a forest of Germany, forming part of the Hercynia Silva, or Black Forest. Caesar says it was of prodigious extent, (infinitæ magnitude,) and like a natural wall, prevented the mutual incursions of the Suevi and Cherusci.

Baculus; See Sextius.

Baleares, ium, a name anciently given to the islands of Majorca and Minorca off the coast of Spain, the inhabitants of which were celebrated for their skill in the use of the sling.

Balearis, e, adj. of or belonging to the Balearic isles.

Balista, ò, (from the Greek ελαβα to throw,) a species of military engine used by the Romans for throwing darts, arrows, and stones. These were of different sizes, and were used with great effect both in battles and sieges. Stones of great weight were often
thrown by these engines to a great distance, by which battlements were thrown down and whole files of men swept from the deepest phalanx. Their effect is said to have been little inferior in sieges to that of artillery. The balista used for throwing darts or javelins, represented in the following wood cut, taken from Folard's commentary on Polybius, resembled in its operation an immense crossbow, the two ends of which consisted of two levers so twisted in coils of ropes as to acquire a powerful spring. The extreme ends were united by a strong rope which was drawn back by means of a windlass after the manner of a bowstring, bringing the ends of the lever back and closer together, thereby twisting the coils of ropes to their greatest tension. When thus drawn back, the javelin or dart was placed in the shaft, directed to the object aimed at, and, at the pleasure of the operator, letting go the rope, was hurled with prodigious force from the engine by the recoil of the levers.

**BALISTA FOR THROWING DARTS AND JAVELINS.**

The balista for throwing stones, (represented in the following wood cut,) consisted of a strong lever, one end of which was made fast in a twist of ropes, and the other scooped out in the form of a spoon, for containing the stone &c. to be thrown. When unbent the lever stood perpendicular. In working it, the end of the lever was brought down, by means of a windlass, to a horizontal position, by which the ropes were twisted to their greatest tension; the stone or missile was laid on in its proper place and thrown by the recoil of the lever to a great distance, often with tremendous effect. Engines of both kinds, of a larger size, were
more commonly called *Balistae*, those of a smaller size, *Catapultae*, which see

**BALISTA FOR THROWING STONES OR OTHER HEAVY BODIES.**

Balventius, i, (Titus, i,) a man of distinguished courage, who had both his thighs pierced with a dart, in the attack which Ambiorix made upon the legions which he had deceitfully persuaded to leave their camp.

Basilius; See Minucius.

Batavia, ae, f. v. Insula Batavorum, (*United Provinces,* ) often called *Holland*, from its being the largest of them; a country at the mouth of the Rhine. It was denominated an island, from being bounded on two sides, by the southern and northern branches of the Rhine, and on the third by the sea. B. IV. Ch. 10.

Batāvi, ūrum, the people of Batavia, originally a branch of the Catti, a German nation.

Belgae, ārum, a people originally of German extraction, who inhabited the third division of Gaul, which was bounded on the south by the Matrona, (Marne,) and the Sequana, (Seine;) on the east and north by the Rhēnus, (Rhine,) and on the west by Fretum Britannicum, (*English Channel.*) Strictly speaking, Fretum Britannicum, v. Gallicum, was confined to the *Strait of Dover, but seems generally to have had a more extended signification, and to have nearly corresponded to the modern appellation, the *English Channel.* Cæsar calls it Oceanus, i. e. Atlanticus, of which the
English Channel and the German Sea form only a very small part. In the division of Gaul made by Augustus, whose object was to render the different provinces more equal in point of extent, the countries of the Helvetii and Sequāni, which till that time were included in Gallia Celtīca, were added to Gallia Belgīca. According to Cæsar, the Belgæ were, of all the Gauls, the most warlike; and he attributes their superiority in arms to their being strangers to luxury and refinement. B. I. Ch. 1.

Belgium, i, n. is, in general, used by Cæsar to denote a part of Gallia Belgica, not the whole country. See Belgæ.

Bellovāci, ōrum, a numerous and powerful tribe of the Belgæ, adjoining the Bellocassii. Calēti, Ambiāni, Veromandui, and Silva-nectes.

Bibracte, is, n. afterwards Angustodūnum, i, n. (Autun,) a town of the Ādūui, upon the Arroux, one of the northern branches of the Ligēris, (Loire,) towards the source of that river. At this town in the 7th year of the Gallic war a general assembly of the whole country was held, to choose a commander in chief, on whom the uncontrolled direction of all their military operations should be conferred. The Ādūui, who claimed that honor, had to submit to the unanimous election of Vercingetōriq, q. v.

Bibrax, acis, f. (Bievre,) a town of the Remi on the Axōna, (Aisne.)

Bibrōci, ōrum, a British nation, inhabiting what now forms the N. W. part of Berkshire. Their chief town was Bibracte, (Bray.) At the time Cæsar invaded Britain, they, with the Cenomāgni, Ancalītes, and Cassii, seem to have been subject to Cassivellaunus.

Bigerīōnes, v. Bigerrōnes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who, with several other adjoining tribes, surrendered to Crassus, one of Cæsar’s lieutenants. Their territory was bounded on the south by the Pyrenees, and was nearly at equal distances from the Mediterranean and the Bay of Biscay.

Bison, ontis, v. ēnis, m. a buffalo, a kind of wild ox, of which Cæsar has given the best description to be found in the writings of the ancients, (B. G. VI. 25.) The natural history of this animal is unknown.

Biturīgēs, um, a nation of Gallia Celtīca, on the west side of the river Ligēris, (Loire.) Their chief city, Avaricum, was afterwards called by the name of its inhabitants, (now Bourges.)

Boduognātus, i, the commander of the Nervīi, at the time they attacked the Roman army under Cæsar.
Boii, ërum, a people of Gallia Celtîca, who came originally from beyond the Rhine and settled in the country south and west of the Ædui on the banks of the Liger and Elâver,—a territory originally belonging to the Ædui, but which they gave up to the Boii with the consent of Cæsar; B. I. Ch. 28. There were several tribes of the Boii, who lived in different parts of Gaul and Germany. In the latter country their name is still recognized in the districts, Bavaria; and Bohemia, in the German language, Boierheim, i. e. the residence of the Boii.

Bratuspantium, i. n. a town of the Bellovæci. It is supposed to have stood between Cæsaremagnus, afterwards Belvæcus, or Belvácum, (Beauvais,) and Samarobrîva, (Amiens.) This town is not mentioned by any writer after the commencement of the Christian Æra.

Britannia, ë. s. Britain, or Great Britain, (anciently called Albion,) is the largest island in Mare Atlanticum, (Atlantic Ocean,) belonging to Europâ, (Europe.) That part of the Atlantic which separates Britain from France, was called Fretum Britannicum, (strictly speaking, Strait of Dover,) but its signification seems often to have been more extensive, and to have corresponded nearly with the modern appellation, English Channel. Oeceanus Verginius, (St. George's Channel,) lies between Britain and Hibernia, (Ireland.) On the west, Oeceanus Calydonicus, (Scottish Sea,) washed the west and northwest parts of Scotland, Oeceanus Hyperboreus, (Northern Sea,) the northern coast, and Oeceanus Germanicus, (the German Ocean,—which is more properly called a sea,)—formed its boundary on the east. Cæsar's account, both of the form and extent of this island, is not very far from the truth. But of the characters, manners and customs, of the Britons, a very general description only is to be found in the writings of the ancients. Little was known, to the Romans, of this island until the invasion of Cæsar. This commander endeavored, although ineffectually, to reduce it. After a long interval, Ostorius, in the reign of Claudius, subjugated the southern part; and Agricola, subsequently, in the reign of Domitian, extended the Roman dominion to the Frith of Forth and Clyde. The whole force of the empire, although exerted to the utmost under Severus, could not, however, reduce to subjection the hardy natives of the highlands. Britain continued a Roman province, until A. D. 426, when the troops were in a great measure withdrawn, to assist Valentinian III. against the Huns, and never returned. The Britons had become so enervated under the Roman yoke, as to be unable to repel
the incursions of the inhabitants of the north. They invoked, therefore, the aid of the Saxons, by whom they were themselves subjugated, and compelled at last to take refuge among the mountains of Wales.


Britannus, et, Britannicus, a um, adj. of, or belonging to Britain.

Brutus, i, (Declmus, i,) one of Cæsar's officers, to whom he gave the command of his fleet in the Gallic war, with which he defeated the Venetians, (B. G. III. 15,) and afterwards the people of Marseilles, in two engagements during the civil war.

C.

Cărēsī, ōrum, a nation of Gallia Belgīca, who, with the Condrūsi, Eburōnes, and Pæmani, went under the general appellation of Germans, and were supposed to send 40,000 men to the Belgic army, which was raised against the Roman dominion in Gaul, (B. G. II. 4.) Their country was situated between that of the Trevirī and the river Mosa, (Meuse.)

Cæsar, āris, (Caius Julius,) the first distinguished character of the Cæsars, was the son of Caius Cæsar and Aurelia the daughter of Cotta. He was born in the sixth consulship of Marius, 99 years B. C. He lost his father in the 16th year of his age, and the following year obtained the office of Flamen Dīālīs, (High Priest of Jupiter.) He procured many friends by his eloquence, and after passing through the different offices of Quæstor, Edile, High Priest, (Pontifex Māximus,) &c., he was sent as governor into Spain, and upon his return, being elected Consul, he entered into an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, that nothing should be done in the state without their joint concurrence. This was called the First Triumvirate, and was in fact a conspiracy against the liberties of Rome.

Previous to the expiration of his consulship, he obtained from the people the province of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, with three legions for five years; and the Senate, at the desire of Cæsar, added Transalpine Gaul and another legion. These legions were gradually increased to thirteen.

Cæsar set out for Transalpine Gaul in the end of March, B. C. 57, in the 42d year of his age. With wonderful conduct and
bravery he subdued this country in about ten years, and carried the terror of his arms into Germany and Britain, till then unknown to the Romans. The account of these wars is given by Cæsar himself, in his Commentaries on the Gallic war, in seven books. These Commentaries, or Journals, were composed on the spot where his battles were fought. The purity and neatness of his style, notwithstanding the rapidity with which they must have been written, have not been surpassed by any Roman writer. His narrative is perspicuous, simple, and natural. It is at once chaste and animated. His lucid and picturesque description places the whole scene distinctly before the reader, who accompanies him in all his marches, and is a witness of every engagement. No passage occurs in all his writings, which the most illiterate do not understand, and the most polished do not approve. To compose a simple narrative of his campaigns, for the amusement of himself and his friends, seems rather to have been his object, than to give a specimen of his talents as a profound historian, or deep politician. Hence, it were absurd to expect in the Commentaries, a finished history. They are mere outlines, which he perh.haps entertained the hope of seeing filled up, either by himself, or by some other hand.

These Commentaries in seven books, and three books concerning the civil war, are the only genuine writings of Cæsar which now remain. Of the character of Cæsar as a general and historian, Dunlop, in his History of Roman Literature, Vol. II. p. 171, &c., speaks thus:

"Though the Commentaries on the Gallic War comprehend but a small extent of time, and are not the general history of a nation, they embrace events of the highest importance, and detail, perhaps, the greatest military operations to be found in ancient story. We see in them all that is great and consummate in the art of war. The ablest commander of the most warlike people on earth records the history of his own campaigns. Placed at the head of the finest army ever formed in the world, and one devoted to his fortunes, but opposed by prowess only second to their own, he and the soldiers he commanded may be praised almost in the words in which Nestor praised the heroes who had gone before him; for the Gauls and Germans were among the bravest and most warlike nations then on earth. In his clear and scientific details of military operations, Cæsar is reckoned superior to every one, except, perhaps, Polybius. In general, too, when he speaks of himself, it is without affectation or arrogance. He talks
of Cæsar as of an indifferent person, and always maintains the character which he has thus assumed; indeed, it can hardly be conceived that he had so small a share in the great actions he describes, as would appear from his own representations. With the exception of the false colors with which he disguises his ambitious projects against the liberties of his country, every thing seems to be told with fidelity and candor."

Respecting the future history of this illustrious man the following notices may here suffice. After the conquest of Gaul, Pompey, having become jealous of Cæsar's power, induced the Senate to order him to lay down his command; upon which Cæsar crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, and led his army to Rome, Pompey and all the friends of liberty fleeing before him. Having subdued Italy in sixty days, Cæsar entered Rome, and seized upon the money in the public treasury. He then went to Spain, where he conquered the partizans of Pompey, and at his return was created Dictator, and soon after Consul. Leaving Rome and going in search of Pompey, the two hostile generals engaged on the plains of Pharsalia. The army of Cæsar amounted to 22,000 men, while that of Pompey amounted to 45,000; but the superior generalship of Cæsar prevailed, and he was victorious. Making a generous use of his victory, Cæsar followed Pompey into Egypt, where he heard of his murder, and making the country tributary to his power, he hastened to suppress the remainder of Pompey's party in Africa and Spain. Thus triumphing over all his enemies, he was created perpetual Dictator, received the names of Imperator and Pater Patriae, and governed the people with justice. The consequence, however, of his engrossing all the powers of the state and ruling with absolute authority, engendered a spirit of opposition and general disgust; a conspiracy was formed against him by more than sixty senators, the chief of whom were Brutus and Cassius. Accordingly, on the 15th of March, 44 years B. C., and in the 56th year of his age, on his entrance into the Senate house, he was stabbed, and fell, pierced with twenty-three wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue.

Of Cæsar's intrepidity as a soldier, and abilities as a commander, the armies which he defeated and the countries which he conquered are sufficient proofs. To the talents of a consummate general he added those of an elegant historian and a persuasive orator. He spoke with the same spirit with which he fought,
and had he devoted himself to the bar, he would have been the only man capable of rivalling Cicero.

Caletes, ium, v. Caléti, órum, a people of Gaul, whose country lay a little to the north of the mouth of the Sequāna, (Seine.)

Cantābri, órum, (sing. Cantāber, ri,) a very brave and warlike people, who inhabited the northern part of Spain. They seem to have extended from the mouths of Ibērus, (Ebro,) to the shores of the Bay of Biscay, which was, from them, called Oceānus Cantābricus. The term is often used to denote the Spaniards in general.

Cantium, i, n. (Kent,) a district of England which, in modern times, is bounded by the Strait of Dover, (Fretum Gallicum, vel, Britannicum) on the east, by Sussex on the south, on the west by Surry, and on the north by the Thames, (Tamesis,) which separates it from Essex. But the ancient boundaries of Kent are not precisely ascertained.

Carcēso, ōnis, f. Carcassonne, a town of that part of Provvincia, now called Languedoc, on the river Atax, (Aude.) Here are preserved some records of the place, written upon the bark of trees.

Carfulenus, i, an officer of Cæsar, who was dispatched to attack the highest part of the camp of the Alexandrians, which he carried. He was afterwards killed in an engagement at Mutīna, fighting against Anthony.

Carnūtes, um, v. ti, ōrum, a powerful nation of Gaul, between the rivers Sequāna, (Seine,) and Ligēris, (Loire,) south of Lutetia, (Paris.)

Carvilius, i, one of the four kings of Cantium, (Kent,) who, at the command of Cassivelaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp, in which they were repulsed, and lost a great number of men.

Cassi, ōrum, the hundred of Caishow, a British nation, supposed to be subject to Cassivelaunus at the time Cæsar invaded Britain, who submitted to that conqueror.

Cassius, i, (Lucius, i,) a Roman consul, who was killed by the Helvetii, who defeated his army and obliged it to pass under the yoke.

Cassivelaunus, i, one of the British kings, whose territories lay on the north bank of the Tamēsis, (Thames,) towards the mouth of that river. On the arrival of the Roman forces in Britain under Cæsar, he was, by common consent, appointed Commander-in-chief. After making some attempts to check the progress of the
enemy, he was obliged to submit, and accept of such terms as Cæsar chose to offer.

Casticus, i., one of the Sequani, the son of Catamantaledis, whom Orgetorix persuaded to seize on the sovereignty of the state, which his father had formerly held.

Castra, òrum, a camp. The discipline of the Romans was chiefly conspicuous in their marches and encampments. They never passed a night, even in the longest marches, without pitching a camp, and fortifying it with a rampart and ditch. The form of the Roman camp, till later ages, was square, and was always of the same figure. It was surrounded by a ditch, usually nine feet deep, and twelve feet broad, and by a rampart or vallum, composed of the earth dug from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it. The camp had four gates, one on each side. They were called porta Prætoria, next the enemy; Dejumana, opposite to the former; porta Principalis Dextra, on the right side of the camp, at one end of the main street called Principia; and Principalis Sinistra, on the left side, at the other end. The camp was divided into two parts, called the upper and lower, by the main street just mentioned. In the lower part the troops were disposed in the following order. The cavalry were in the middle; on both sides of them were the triarii, princípes, and hastáti, or the third, second, and first Roman ranks; and next to these, on both sides, were the cavalry and foot of the allies, who were always posted in separate places, lest they should form any plots by being united. The velites commonly occupied the empty space between the ramparts and tents, which was 200 feet broad. The tents were covered with leather or skins, extended by means of ropes. In each tent were usually ten soldiers, with their decanus or petty officer who commanded them. The different divisions of the troops were separated by intervals called vle. Of these there were five longwise, i. e. running from the decuman towards the prætorian side; and three across, one in the lower part of the camp, called quintâna, and two in the upper, namely, the principia, and another between the prætorium and the prætorian gate. The following wood cut and illustration will give a good idea of its shape and arrangements.
1. The *Prætorium*, or general's tent, with a sufficient space around for the tents of his suite.

2. Ground behind the tents of the *Tribunes*, for their horses, baggage, &c.

3. The tents of the *Tribunes*.

4. Ground behind the tents of the *Præfects of the Allies*, for their horses, baggage, &c.

5. The tents of the *Præfects of the Allies*.

6. A cross street, one hundred feet wide, called *Principia*. (*Vid.* *Principia*.)

7. A cross street, fifty feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the *Roman horse*.

8. The *Horse* of two Roman legions, in ten turmæ or troops each.

9. The *Triarīi* of two Roman legions (*Vid.* *Triarīi*), in ten maniples each, facing on two different streets.
10. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the Triarii and Principes of two legions.

11. The Principes of two Roman legions (Vid. Principes), in ten maniples each.

12. The Hastati of two Roman legions (Vid. Hastati), in ten maniples each.

13. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the Hastati of the two Roman legions and the Horse of the Allies.

14. The Horse of the Allies, wanting the Extraordinarii (Vid. No. 25), and placed in two different parts of the camp. The forces of the allies, both cavalry and infantry, were always separated in this manner, to prevent plotting, as remarked above.

15. The Infantry of the Allies, wanting the Extraordinarii, and, like the horse, placed in two different parts of the camp.

16. The Quintana (scil. via), a street fifty feet wide, running across the camp, between the fifth and sixth maniples of each line. Hence, as it comes after the fifth maniple, reckoned from the Principia, it received the name of Quintana.

17. The Questorium, or Quæstor's tent.

18. The tents of the Legati. The space in front of these and the Questorium was called the Forum, where things were sold, &c.

19. Evocati Equites, or Veteran Horse. (Vid. Evocati.)

20. Evocati Pedites, or Veteran Foot.

21. Ablecti Equites (Vid. No. 25), or Horse of the Consular life-guards.

22. Ablecti Pedites, or foot of the Consular life-guards.

23. A cross street one hundred feet wide.


25. Extraordinarii Equites. A third part of the allied horse, and a fifth part of the allied foot, were selected, and posted near the consul, under the name of Extraordinarii, and one troop of horse, and maniple of foot, called Ablecti, or Selecti, to serve as his life-guard.


27. Quarters for strangers coming to the camp.

28. A space two hundred feet broad, between the outermost tents and the rampart.

29. Rampart, or Vallum.

30. Ditch, usually nine feet deep and twelve feet broad.

31. Porta Principalis Dextra.

32. Porta Principalis Sinistra.
33. *Porta Decumāna* (i. e. Decimāna, from *decem*, ten,) so called because all the *tens* of the maniples end here.

34. *Porta Praetoria*.

35. A traverse breastwork, with a ditch, opposite to, and protecting, each of the gates. (*Anthon's Caesar.*)

Catapulta, a military engine for discharging stones, arrows, and other missiles. (*Vid. Balista.*)

Catamantalēdes, is, a nobleman of the nation of the Sequāni, who, for many years, enjoyed the supreme authority over that people. Cativolcus, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Eburōnes. He and Ambiōrixx, at the instigation of Indutiomārus, excited the people to take up arms against the Romans. Having made an unsuccessful attack upon the Roman camp under the lieutenants, Titurius Sabinus, and L. Aurunculēius Cotta, they demanded a conference, in which Ambiōrixx stated, that from gratitude to Cæsar, he considered himself bound to inform his lieutenant, that all the states of Gaul had agreed to attack the Roman camp in one day, that a great body of Germans had passed the Rhine, and that no time was to be lost in joining Cicēro or Labiēnus, neither of whom were fifty miles distant. At the same time, he gave his solemn promise, that they should have a secure retreat through his territories. This artifice, through the folly or cowardice of Sabinus, succeeded. They left their camp, were attacked by a powerful army under Ambiōrixx and Cativolcus, and were almost to a man cut in pieces. Cæsar afterwards completely routed them; and Cativolcus, from his great age, being unable to bear the fatigues of war, poisoned himself by drinking the juice of the yew-tree.

Caturīges, gum, a people of Gaul, who lived near the Alpes Maritīme, at the S. E. extremity of Dauphinē.

Cavarīnus, i, a nobleman whom Cæsar, in prejudice of his brother Moritasgus, the reigning sovereign, appointed king over his countrymen, the Senōnes, an honor which his ancestors had long enjoyed. The Senōnes formed the design of publicly assassinating him, but having received intelligence of the plot, he saved his life by fleeing to the camp of Cæsar.

Celtē, ārum, the most powerful and numerous of all the nations of Gaul, who occupied nearly one-half of the country, and from whom that division was called *Celtīca*. Their territories were bounded by the river Garumna, (*Garonne,*), on the south; the Sequāna, (*Seine,*), and the Matrōna, (*Marne,*), on the north; by Mount Jura on the east; and Mare Atlantīcum, (*Atlantic Ocean,*), on the west.
Cenimagni, òrum, an ancient people of Britain, who, with the Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibröci, and Cassi, followed the example of the Trinobantes, and submitted to Cæsar. These nations are supposed to have inhabited the counties of Essex, Middlesex, Norfolk, Hertford, Buckingham, Oxford, and Berkshire.

Censor, is, a Censor, a Roman magistrate whose number from first to last was uniformly two. They were appointed (A. U. 312,) to take an account of the number of the people, and the value of their fortunes, and superintend the public morals. They were chosen from the most reputable persons of consular rank, at first only from the patricians but afterwards likewise from the plebians. They were chosen every five years, but continued in office only a year and a half. For any dishonorable action they had the power to erase the name of a Senator from the list, deprive an eques of his horse and ring, and any other citizen they could degrade and deprive of all the privileges of a Roman citizen, except liberty.

The title of Censor was even more honorable than that of Consul, though attended with less power. No one could be elected a second time, and those who filled it were remarkable for leading an irreproachable life; so that to be descended from a censorian family was considered a distinguished ornament of nobility.

Census, ûs, m. was a general review of the people, estimating their estates, and proportioning their share of the public taxes. Every man was obliged to give in to the Censors his own name, residence and occupation, his wife's name, and the names of his children with their ages, the number of his slaves, and a minute and accurate account of his property. The goods of the person, who made a false return, were confiscated, and he himself, after being scourged, was sold for a slave. By that act he had, in the opinion of the state, deemed himself unworthy of the privileges and honors of a Roman citizen. Servius Tullius, the 6th king of Rome, appointed the Census, in order to ascertain the number of men able to bear arms, and the amount of the whole wealth possessed by the citizens, and consequently what sums could be levied from them. It was held in the Campus Martius, where the Censors, seated in curule chairs, attended by their clerks and public officers, commanded the citizens to be called before them, each in his own tribe. If nothing immoral or improper could be charged against a senator or knight, they passed without remark; but if otherwise, the senators were expelled the senate, and the public horse taken from the knight. The other citizens were raised to a higher tribe, if their wealth had increased, or sunk to a lower
tribe, if diminished; improper conduct deprived them of their right of voting, or subjected them to be taxed like strangers. A minute register of the whole was kept, and must have been of great advantage to the whole community, as determining with precision not only their number, but also their wealth. It ought to have been held at the end of every five years; but it is manifest from Roman history, that this period was not pointedly observed. At the end of this survey of the people they were ordered to attend a lustration, called, from sacrificing, a sow, a sheep, and a bull, Suovetaurilia. The precedence at this sacrifice was decided by lot, and he on whom the lot fell was at the conclusion said "lustrum condere."

Centurio, ōnis, f, (from centum, a hundred,) a centurion or commander of a hundred men. The constitution of the Roman legion admitted of a gradation from the lowest centurion of the Hastati, up to the first of the Triarii, who was called Primipilus, q. v. To the first captaincy, the meanest common soldier might aspire. Promotion in the Roman army could be obtained only by merit; appointments by purchase were unknown. This wise regulation produced the happiest effects. Besides each cohort having six centurions, and consequently each legion sixty, opened a wide field for promotion, and suggested numerous excitements to valor and heroism.

Centrones, ōnum (B. G. I. 5,) a nation of Gaul in the Alpes Graiae, who, along with the Garocelî and Caturîges, were defeated by Cæsar in several engagements. There was another tribe, or horde, of this name, who were subject to the Nervi, a nation of Gallia Belgica, (B. G. Ch. V. 38.)

Cherusci, ōrum, m. a nation of Germany, between the rivers Albis, (Elbe,) and the Visurgis, (Weser.)

Cicero, ōnis, (Quintus Tullius,) the brother of Marcus Tullius Cicero, the celebrated orator, was, after the expiration of his prætorship, proconsul of Asia for three years. He gained considerable reputation as one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. At the commencement of the civil war, he, in opposition to the advice of his brother, attached himself to Pompey. After Cæsar had defeated the republicans at Pharsalia, both Quintus and his son solicited the favor of the conqueror, by unjustly imputing their misconduct to the orator. So far was Cicero from resenting this injustice, that he used his utmost efforts for their safety and interest. Both perished in the proscription of the second triumvirate.
Cimberius, i, the brother of Nasua, who headed the 100 cantons of the Suēvi, who had left their native country, and encamped on the banks of the river Rhenum, (Rhine,) with the view of crossing that river, and settling in Gaul.

Cimbrī, ērum, (sing. Cimber, ri,) a German nation, supposed to be descended from the Asiatic Cimmerians, whose country was, from them, called the Chersonēsus Cimbrīca, (Jutland,) which now forms part of the kingdom of Denmark. About 113, B. C. the Cimbrī, leaving their territories, which were both narrow and barren, and being joined by the Teutōnes, a neighboring people, defeated several German nations, and a Roman consul with his army, who had been sent against them. They invaded, and seem to have overrun, a great part of Gaul; and being strengthened by the accession of many of the tribes who inhabited that country, marched against Rome. After slaughtering the whole army of Caepio and Mallius, except ten men and two generals, C. Marius marched against them, slew 120,000 and took 60,000 prisoners. Though only an inconsiderable people in the days of Tacitus, it is manifest, that the sagacity of that profound historian was apprehensive of the final destruction of the Roman state by the hordes of Germany, which actually happened about 300 years after his death.

Cingetōrīx, īgis, a nobleman who headed that party in the state of the Treviri, which was formerly attached to Cæsar. In consequence of his fidelity to the Romans, he was, by means of his father-in-law, Indutilomārus, declared a public enemy, and his estate confiscated.

Cingetōrīx, īgis, one of the four kings of Cantium, (Kent,) who, by order of Cassivelaunus, made an attack on Cæsar’s naval camp.

Clepsydra, m. f. an instrument contrived to measure time by water. The merit of this invention belongs to the Egyptians, as well as the discovery of the sun-dial.

There were different kinds of Clepsydræ among the ancients; which, however, were all constructed on this principle, that the water ran through a narrow passage from one vessel to another, and that on the surface of the water in the lower vessel, to the side of which a scale of hours was affixed, floated a piece of cork, which shewed the hour. It is manifest the water would be discharged with a rapidity proportioned to the quantity, and that, of course, it ran fastest when the vessel was full, and gradually became slower as the less water remained. Hence if the upper vessel discharged its water in twelve hours, and the under one
was an exact cylinder having its height divided into 144 equal parts, the water in the first hour would rise twenty-three of these parts, in the second hour, twenty-one, in the third, nineteen, &c., and the last or twelfth hour only one part. The state of the atmosphere would have considerable influence on the clepsydra, a defect which the ingenuity of a modern French philosopher, William Amontons, has completely remedied. By means of several important inventions he also freed it from other less inconveniences to which it was subject; and rendered it a very accurate divisor of time.

Cocosates, um, a people of Aquitania in Gaul, whose country lay along the coast of Oceânum Cantabricus, (Bay of Biscay.) to the north of the territories of the Tarbelli. Their chief town was Cocôsa.

Clypeus, i. a round shield of a smaller size than the Scutum, which see.

Cohors, tis, a division of the Roman legion. See Legio.

Comius, i, one of the nation of the Atrebates, hence called Comius Atrēbas, whom Cæsar appointed king over that people in return for his important services. He afterwards fell under the suspicion of Labiēnus, who employed C. Volusiēnus Quadratus to kill him in an interview. This perfidious design did not succeed. But in the scuffle, Comius was wounded in the head. He was, from that period, a violent enemy to the Romans. Being at last defeated, he was obliged to submit to Antony, which he did, on condition that he should not appear before any Roman. On these terms, Antony granted him peace.

Condrusi, ōrum, a people of Belgic Gaul, who lived on the river Mosa, (Mase, or Meuse,) north of Silva Arduenna.

Considius Longus, (Caius, i,) a partisan of Pompey, who was at one time the governor of Adrum êtum. He committed several acts of enormous cruelty. Considius afterwards commanded at Tisdra a garrison of Gætulians, and, on hearing of the defeat of his party, fled from that town with his treasures. Escaping from these barbarians and taking the road for Numidia, he was pursued by them, and to obtain possession of his money, they put him to death.

Consul, ūlis, a consul; the official title of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state. They were first created after the expulsion of the kings, A. U. 244. They had the same badges as the kings, except the crown, and nearly the same power. In time of war they had supreme command; one accompanied the army as com-
mander-in-chief, and the other remained at Rome; or, if neces-
sary, commanded another army, leaving the government in charge
of the Prætor. They levied soldiers, appointed the greater part
of the officers, and provided what was necessary for their support.
When any dangerous conjuncture arose, the consuls were armed
with absolute power by the Senate, which solemnly decreed that
they should take care that the republic received no harm. If any
serious tumult or sedition occurred, they called the citizens to
arms by proclaiming "Let those who wish to save the republic
follow me;" and this was usually sufficient to check it.
The authority of the consuls was first impaired by the creation
of Tribunes of the people, and afterwards by the Emperors. The
office however was retained, and the consuls, after their power
was gone, were still employed in consulting the Senate, adminis-
tering justice, managing the public games and the like; and the
year was usually characterized by their names.
At first the consuls were chosen from the Patricians only, but
afterwards from the Plebians also. They were elected annually,
and to be a candidate it was necessary to be forty-three years of
age,—to have gone through the inferior offices of Quaestor, Edile,
and Prætor,—and to be present in a private station.
Proconsul, ūlis, a proconsul, a person invested with consular
authority for the government of a conquered country. The con-
suls, at the expiration of their offices, were generally appointed
proconsuls, and soon after quitted the city to take charge of their
province. Their powers, though subject to the will of the senate
and authority of the people, were very extensive. They had the
appointment of the taxes and of the contributions imposed on the
country, and it cannot be denied, that avarice and rapacity too
often trampled on the principles of justice and humanity. To the
honor of the Senate it must be mentioned, that they frequently
punished acts both of extortion and cruelty. These crimes, how-
ever, were generally very flagrant before they became the subject
of prosecution.
Proconsularis, is, e, of or belonging to a proconsul, or the pro-
consulship, proconsular.
Consularis, e, adj. of or belonging to a consul; consular; one who
had been a consul; a man of consular rank.
Cotta, æ, (Lucius Aurunculœus,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army,
who suspected the stratagem of Ambiörix, and therefore endeav-
ored to convince his colleague Sabinus of the impropriety of fol-
lowing the treacherous advice of that crafty Gaul, but without
effect. Unwilling that any enmity, from difference of opinion, should exist between them, he at last yielded, and his compliance cost him his life. Ambiorix, at the distance of two miles from the camp, lay in ambuscade, and when crossing a large valley, made a furious attack on the Roman forces, in which Cotta, after displaying singular bravery, was killed, and almost the whole of the two legions.

Crassus, i. (Marcus Licinius,) surnamed *Dives*, on account of his prodigious wealth, was, in early life, very poor, but by trafficking in slaves, and by other dishonorable practices, soon acquired great riches. To escape the cruelties of Cinna, he fled to Spain, where he had formerly passed some years with his father, when governor of that country; and remained eight months concealed in a cave. On hearing of Cinna's death, he raised 2,500 men, for whom he procured shipping, sailed to Africa, and attached himself to Metellus Pius. The friendship of Crassus with Metellus was not of long continuance. He then formed an alliance with Sulla, and was of great service to him in the civil war. The military talents of Crassus were greatly inferior to those of Pompey, who, on that account, necessarily stood higher in the favor of Sulla. Hence the enmity of these two powerful citizens, which all the address and eloquence of Cæsar could scarcely subdue. The great object of Crassus seems to have been the accumulation of wealth. Besides buying the estates of the proscribed, he had recourse to other base and scandalous means in order to increase his overgrown fortune.

Crassus was not however, destitute of bravery or generosity. He was honored with an ovation for putting an end to the war with Spartæus by a decisive engagement, in which 12,000 of the slaves were killed. He used frequently to lend money to his friends without interest. After entertaining the populace at 10,000 tables, giving to every citizen corn to support him for three months, and consecrating the tenth part of his property to Heracles, he was worth 7,100 talents. He used to say that no man, who could not maintain an army ought to be called rich. His slaves whom he had ingenuity enough to employ so profitably that they not only defrayed their own expenses, but added greatly to the wealth of their master, were, in number, equal to an army.

A reconciliation between Crassus and Pompey was, at last, effected by Cæsar. The iniquitous combination of these three men to destroy the liberties of their fellow-citizens, was called the first triumvirate. Less solicitous for honor than riches, Crassus,
in this division of the empire, chose Syria for his province, in expectation of making large additions to his fortune. Without the authority of the senate, he crossed the Euphrates and advanced against that country. But he was deceived by Agbārus, an Arabian, defeated by the Parthians, and his army nearly annihilated. He then fled with a small number of his soldiers to Carrae, a town of Mesopotamia, and was prevailed on to meet Surēna, on pretence of negotiating a peace, where he was treacherously put to death. The Parthians cut off his head, and, in contempt of his avarice, poured melted gold into his mouth. The bond of union between Pompey and Cæsar, which had been greatly weakened by the death of Julia, was finally dissolved by that of Crassus. They had now recourse to arms, and their struggles for the superiority terminated in the final extinction of Roman liberty.

Cretenses, ium, the inhabitants of Creta, æ, vel, Crete, es, f. a large island in the Mediterranean Sea, opposite to Mare Ægeum, (Archipelago.) From its principal city, it is now called Candia. Cres, Cretis, m. et Cressa, æ, f. a native of Crete or Candia. Cretis, īdis, of Crete or Candia, with relation to a female, or to a noun feminine.

Curiosolitea, ārum, and Curiosolites, um, a people of Gallia Celtīca, among Armoricas Civitātes, whose country was afterwards called Bretagne

D.

Daci, ōrum, the inhabitants of Dacia, a country corresponding to the modern Wallachia, Transylvania, Moldavia, and that part of Hungary which lies to the east of the Tibiscus or Teiss; B. VI. Ch. 25.

Danubius, i, the Danube, the largest river in Europe, rises in the black forest in Germany, (according to Strabo and Pliny, in the mountain Abnōba,.) runs in an easterly direction, through Austria, Germany, Hungary, part of Turkey in Europe, and discharges itself into Pontus Euxīnus, (the Black Sea.) The ancients gave the name of Ister to the eastern part of this river, after its junction with the Savus, (Save.) Though of great breadth and depth in many places; it is not generally navigable on account of the cataracts. Strabo, Diodōrus Sicūlus, Tacitus, and Pliny, have given descriptions of this river in many respects different, and all
exceedingly inaccurate. With the whole course of the Danube the Greeks and Romans were very imperfectly acquainted. Their knowledge of the countries to the north of this large river, was almost wholly obtained by vague report from unlettered barbarians, and, of course, very incorrect.

In the decline of the Roman empire, it became better known to that people, in consequence of almost all the barbarous nations, who assailed that state, commencing hostilities by ravaging the country on the banks of the Danube. But learning had sunk with the state, and no minute or accurate account of this river is found in classic authors.

Decumāna (porta), the rear gate of the Roman camp, (See Castra) so called because the tens of the maniples were stationed there.

Decurio, ōnis, m. (from decem, ten,) an officer of the cavalry among the Romans, who commanded ten men. Each Turma, or troop of horse, had three Decuriones, and each Decurio chose a subaltern, who was, on that account, called Optio.

Delectus, ūs, (from deligo, to choose,) a military term to denote the levying or enrolment of soldiers. The consuls, after they entered on their office, appointed a day, on which all who were of the military age (from 17 to 46,) should be present in the capitol. On the day appointed, the consuls seated in their curule chairs, assisted by the military or legionary tribunes, held a levy, unless hindered by the tribunes of the commons. It was determined by lot in what order the tribes should be called. The consuls ordered such as they pleased to be cited out of each tribe; and every one was obliged to answer to his name under a severe penalty. They were careful to choose those first who had what were thought lucky names; as, Valerius, Sabīnus, Statorius, &c. Their names were written down on tables, hence, Scribēre militēs, to enlist, to levy, or to raise soldiers.

Diablintes, ium, et Diablitæ, et Dianlitæ, ārum, a people of Gallia Celtīca, on the river Medūna, (Māine.) Their chief town was Neodūnum, afterwards Diablintes, now Jublens.

Dictator, Gris, m. a Dictator, an extraordinary Magistrate at Rome, who possessed absolute authority over not only the lives and fortunes of his fellow citizens, but even over the laws themselves. A free government could admit of such an officer being appointed only on important and alarming conjunctures. We find from Roman history that the first Dictator was chosen during the wars with the Latins, (499 B. C.) and that his appointment was a consequence of the plebeians resisting to enlist, and of the consuls
being unable to protect the state. Unless when threatened with imminent danger, either from domestic sedition or foreign wars, the consuls held the highest office, and the laws set bounds to their powers; but the Dictator knew no restriction. Twenty-four Lictors preceded him, and, whilst he remained in office, the functions of the other magistrates, with the exception of that of Tribunes of the people, were suspended. He proclaimed war, levied forces, and marched against the enemy; or made peace or disbanded them whenever he pleased. Execution followed his decision, and from his judgment lay no appeal. At the expiration of his office, which could not exceed six months, he might be called to an account for his conduct; but few instances of it occur in the annals of Rome. Bravery does not extirpate credulity, nor does greatness of mind obliterate the fictions of ignorance. Though a nation of intrepid warriors, the Romans were credulous and superstitious. Hence to avert a plague, to remove some dreadful calamity, or to stop the progress of an invading enemy, they sometimes named a Dictator to drive a nail into the temple of Jupiter, which trivial and absurd ceremony they thought possessed these virtues. They sometimes too appointed a Dictator to hold the comitia, or to celebrate public festivals, and once to choose Senators. But for these purposes, except on particular occasions, the state had seldom recourse to the election of that magistrate.

Dies, ei, m. & f. a day, or that space of time which elapses from the first appearance of light in the morning, till the return of darkness at night. It is more generally used to denote the time the sun is visible, or above the horizon, which strictly speaking constitutes a solar day. The term has frequently a more extended signification, and includes the night. This forms the Astronomical day, and has also been called the Natural or Civil day. It exceeds the Siderial day, or a complete revolution of the earth on its axis, by three minutes and fifty-six seconds. Different nations begin the day at different times. Among the Romans the natural day began when the sun first appeared above the horizon, which was called the first hour, and ended with that luminary disappearing, which was the twelfth hour. This mode of dividing that space of time during which the sun is visible into twelve parts, though still followed in Turkey, must have been attended with great inconvenience. The hours thus varied with the length of the day and those of the night were subject to the same alteration. Besides, the hours of these two portions of time could be equal only twice a year, viz: at the Equinoxes, (See Hora.) The civil day
began at midnight, when the third watch commenced. With us, and most of the nations of Europe, the day is reckoned from midnight to midnight. The Jews began their day at sun-setting, and like the Romans divided it into twelve hours; and the night with them also consisted of twelve hours. It may not be improper to observe that astronomers generally compute from noon to noon, reckoning in a numeral succession from one to twenty-four hours, and not by two twelves agreeably to common usage.

Dis, Ítis, the god of riches, Pluto.

Divíco, Íonis, a nobleman of great influence among the Helvetii, who commanded the army in the war against Cassius, and was at the head of the embassy sent by that state to Cæsar, after three-fourths of their forces had crossed the Arar, (Sadhe,) and he had attacked and killed a great part of the other fourth.

Divitiácus, i, a nobleman of the ÍEdui, who had great influence with Cæsar, in consequence of his steady attachment to the Romans.

Druídes, um, v. Druídë, árum, (a term of doubtful etymology), Druids, the priests of the ancient Britons, Gauls, and Germans. Besides supreme authority in all matters of religion, their power extended to all public and private differences, and what is of much greater consequence, to making, explaining, and executing the laws. This exorbitant jurisdiction was necessarily attended with every mark of power. They were exempted from taxes and military service, and their persons were held sacred and inviolable. Among the Gauls there were only two classes of any note, the Druids and Equites, of which that of the Druids was the more illustrious. Their authority in many instances, surpassing that of the nobles, it is not surprising that they were, in general, sons of the first families. The worship and sacrifices of these priests were performed of deep groves, chiefly under an oak, which was their favorite tree. It was reckoned unlawful to commit any of their doctrines to writing; hence, many of their peculiar tenets are now unknown. It is generally supposed they believed in the immortality of the soul, and also the metempsychosis. Of natural philosophy, astronomy, arithmetic, and botany, it cannot be doubted their knowledge was very considerable. To the study of rhetoric they paid great attention, and to the charms of their eloquence, much of the admiration and power which they enjoyed, may be justly ascribed. Britain was, according to Cæsar, the great school of the Druids, whose chief settlement was Anglesy, called Mona by Tacitus. The natives of Gaul and Germany, who wished to be thoroughly versant in the mysteries of
Druidism, resorted to this island to complete their studies. At what time the Druids were wholly suppressed in Britain, is uncertain. But from the introduction of Christianity, their power and influence began to decline. It is worthy of remark, that some of their superstitious doctrines, and modes of predicting future events, are not, at this day, entirely forgotten in many parts of the island.

Dubis, is, m. the Doux, a river of Gallia, (France,) which originates in a small lake near mount Jura, and after a southwest course of sixty leagues, falls into the Arar, (Saone,) near to Cabillōnum, (Chalons.)

Dumnōrix, Ígis, one of the Ædui, and brother of Divitiācus. He persuaded the noblemen of Gallia, (France,) not to go with Cæsar into Britain, withdrew privately from the Roman camp, and was killed by the soldiers who were sent in pursuit of him, in consequence of his obstinacy in refusing to return. His character will be found in B. G. I. 18.

Durocortōrum, i, n. the capital of the Remi, now called Rheims, on the Vesle, one of the branches of the river Axōna, (Aisne.)

E.

Eburōnes, um, (Eburōnes, in Greek), a people of Gallia Belgica, whose territories lay on both sides of the river Mosa, (Māse, or Meuse,) at its junction with the Sabis, (Sambre.) On their being dispossessed, they were succeeded by the Tungri. They were under the vassalage of the Treviri. Cæsar attempted to extirpate this nation; but this barbarous design, even from his own account, he was unable to carry into full effect.

Euburovices, um, a people of Gallia, (France,) on the left bank of the Sequāna, (Seine.) The Lexovii were between them and the sea. Their chief city was at first called Mediolānum, and afterwards Euburovices, now Evreux.

Elūsates, ium, a people of Aquitania, who lived on the river Atur, (Adour,) whose principal city was Elūsa, æ, f. (Euse.)

Equites, (from equus and eo,) cavalry. Of these the number belonging to each legion was 300, called justus equitātus, or ala. They were divided into ten turmae, or troops of thirty each; and each turma into three decuriae, or bodies of ten men. The office of the Equites at first was to serve in the army. They were sā
lected both from the patricians and plebians; they were required, when chosen, to be 18 years of age, and to possess a fortune of 400 sestertia, ($15,472.) See Gr. App. V.

Eratosthēnes, is, a native of Cyrēne, (Cyrenaeus,) the scholar of Callimāchus, and of Aristo of Chios, and the second who was intrusted with the Alexandrian library, devoted his time to criticism and philosophy. He was eminent as a poet and mathematician, but more distinguished as an astronomer and geographer. He died in the year 194 B. C. in the 82d year of his age. B. VI. Ch. 24.

Essui, ōrum, supposed to be also called Saii, ōrum, a people of Gallia, whose territories lay on the Olena, (Orne,) adjoining to the Diablintes and Aulerci Eburōnes.

Esubii, ōrum. This word occurs only in B. G. III. 7, where the readings are very different. Some copies have Esubios, or Eusubios, and others Lexuvios. The Greek has Unellos, to which Dr. Clarke, in a note, seems to give the preference, although he has retained Eusubios in the text.

Evocati, (from evōco, to call out,) veteran soldiers, who had served out their time and received their discharge, but who were sometimes again called out into public service. This class were highly respected, and were exempted from the drudgery of military service to which the other soldiers were subjected.

Excubiae, arum, watches either by day or night. Vigiliae, watches by night only. These were relieved at the end of every three hours; hence the night, from sunset till sunrise, was divided into four watches, called the first, second, third, and fourth. See Gr. App. I.

Exercitus, us, (from exerco, to exercise,) an army, a body of men trained to, or exercised in military service. (Agmen, from ago, an army on the march, or in marching order. Acies, an army drawn up in a line, or in battle array.) A consular army consisted of two Roman legions, (See Legio,) with the proper number of cavalry, and two legions of the allies with their cavalry, making in all about 20,000 men, or in the time of Polybius, 18,600.

F.

Fabius, i, (Caius,) one of Cæsar’s lieutenants.

Fabius, i, (Quintus Fabius Maximus) a Roman consul who defeated the Averni and Rutēni.
Funditores, um, (from funda, a sling.) Slingers, a class of warriors usually joined with the Velites, but not properly a part of them. They were armed with slings and stones, or bullets of lead, which from practice they threw with great precision and with so much force that neither buckler nor head-piece could resist their impetuosity. They were generally obtained from the Balearic Isles, Achaia, Crete, Arabia, &c., the Balearians being considered the best. See Velites.

Galba, æ, the name of a branch of the Sulpicii, v. Sulpitii, or, according to others, the surname of the founder of that tribe.

Galba, æ, the king of the Suessiones at the time Cæsar invaded Gaul. On account of his knowledge and love of justice, he was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces raised by the Belgian states, against the power of Rome, in the second year of the Gallic war.

Galba, æ, (Sergius) was the son of C. Galba, and grandson of Servius, or Sergius Galba, a celebrated orator and the first distinguished character of that family. He held the rank of lieutenant in Cæsar's army during the Gallic war, and afterwards joined the conspiracy, which the Republican party formed against the life of that ambitious and unprincipled general.

Galea, a helmet, a defensive piece of armor, made of brass or iron, which came down to the shoulders but left the face uncovered.

Gallia, æ, now France, (See the map,) was an extensive and populous country of Europe, bounded on the north by the British Channel, on the east by the Rhine, Mount Jura and the Alps; on the south by the Mediterranean and Spain; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. In the time of Cæsar it was divided into three parts; Gallia Belgica, or the country of the Belgæ (now Belgium) occupying the northern part; Gallia Celtica, or the country of the Celtæ, or Celts, by far the largest, and occupying the middle portion; and Aquitania, lying between the Garumna (Garonne,) and the Pyrenees,—much smaller than either of the others. Adjacent Gaul on the east, and separated from it by Mount Jura,

* Cæsar does not use this term always in precisely the same sense. In B. I. Ch. 1, it means the whole of Gaul not then subject to the Romans; and in the same chapter it is used to denote the central division, or that possessed by the Celts. It is used in the same restricted sense, B. III. Ch. 2.
lay Helvetia, (now part of Switzerland,) extending from Mount Jura to the Rhine, on the east; and from Lake Lemannus (Geneva) and the Rhone on the south, to the Rhine on the north. On the south and eastern border of Gallia lay what was called Provincia, the Roman Province. (See Provincia.) Each of these great divisions contained within them numerous nations or tribes, all living under their respective kings or chiefs, all of which were finally brought under subjection to the Romans. The whole of this extensive country was called by the Romans Gallia Transalpina, Gaul beyond the Alps, to distinguish it from the northern part of Italy, which they called Gallia Cisalpina.

In the 27th year before the Christian æra, and twenty years after the conquest of Gaul was completed by C. Julius Cæsar, Augustus Cæsar made a new division of the whole, including Provincia Romana and Helvetia, into four grand divisions, in which more attention was paid to equality in the extent of the provinces than to the nations that inhabited them. Aquitania was extended northward and eastward to the Liger, (Loire,) Gallia Belgica on its eastern border was extended southward, taking in part of Gallia Celtica, and the whole country of the Helvetii. These four divisions were Gallia Belgica, Gallia Celtica, Aquitania, and Gallia Narbonensis (formerly Provincia, or Provincia Romana). These four divisions were again subdivided into seventeen provinces in all. And it is this division which is exhibited in the maps of ancient geography commonly in use. In the map accompanying this work, the division of the country in the time of Cæsar, and the names by which these divisions were then known, have been preferred as more suitable for such a work as this.

The whole country of Gaul from the time of its conquest by Cæsar, 47 years B. C., remained subject to the Romans, and a part of their vast empire for five hundred and fifty years. On the final dismemberment of that empire, Gaul being conquered by the Franks, (or Freemen,) a confederacy of warlike nations bordering on the Rhine, was from them called France about the beginning of the sixth century.

Galli, òrum, the Gauls, or the inhabitants of Gaul. Gallus, i, a Gaul; one of the inhabitants of Gaul.

Gallus, i, (Marcus Trebius,) a prefect or Tribune of the soldiers, sent by P. Crassus, to forage among the Curiosolitæ.

Garites, um, a people of Aquitania, to the north of the Ausci.
Garumna, æ, m. the Garonne, a river of France, which rises in the valley of Arran, to the south of St. Bernard, runs with rapidity N. N. E. to Tolosa, (Toulouse,) afterwards N. N. W. to Guienne, and falls into Oceanus Cantabricus, vel, Mare Aquitanicum, (the Bay of Biscay.) The general course of this river, which extends to about 250 miles, is northwest. After its junction with the Duranius, (Dordogne,) below Burdegalia, (Bourdeaux,) it assumes the name of Gironde. According to Julius Caesar’s division of Gaul, the Garonne was the boundary of Aquitania, and separated that district from Gallia Celtica, It is navigable to Toulouse, and communicates with the Mediterranean by means of the Royal Canal, about 180 miles long, made through Languedoc by Louis XIV.

Geneva, æ, f. Geneva, a town at the western extremity of Lacus Lemannus, (the Lake of Geneva,) on the south bank of the Rhodanus, (Rhone.) From Geneva towards Mount Jura, Caesar raised a mole or rampart of earth, nineteen miles in length.

In modern times, Geneva is a considerable city, nearly two miles in circumference, and contains thirty thousand inhabitants. Besides being neatly built, it is strongly fortified, and remarkable for its beautiful situation, fine walks, and delightful prospects. Calvin spent the latter part of his life at Geneva, and his followers have, ever since, held the government of the city.

Germany, æ, f. Germany, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by the Danubius, (Danube;) on the east by the Vistula, (Vistula;) on the north by Codanus Sinus, vel, Mare Suevicum, (the Baltic Sea;) and on the west by the Rhenus, (Rhine,) and Oceanus Germanicus, (the German Sea.)

Germanus, i, pl. i, örum, the people of Germany; Germans.

Getuli, örum, (sing. Getulus, i,) the inhabitants of Getulia, or Gaetulia, æ, f. Biledulgerid, a large country of Africa, to the south of Mauritania and Numidia. It formed part of the kingdom of Massinissa. Sallust, from books written in the Punic language which belonged to Hiempsal, gives the following character of the Getuli and Libyces:—"Africa was at first possessed by the Getuliains and Libyans, a savage and untutored people, who lived on the flesh of wild beasts, or grass of the field, like cattle; subject to no established customs, laws or government, a race of wanderers, who had no settled habitation, and who lay down to rest wherever night overtook them."—Sal. Bel. Jug. 18.

Gladius, i, a sword. The Roman sword was short, straight, and heavy, both for cutting and thrusting. It was worn on the right
side, so as in drawing not to interfere with the shield. The long sword of the cavalry was curved, and was worn on the left side.

Gorduni, orum, a people of the northern part of Gallia Belgica, subject to the Nervi, whose territories lay along the sea-coast, to the north of the Morini.

Graioceli, orum, an ancient nation of Gaul, whose territories seem to have been adjacent to those of the Centrones and Caturiges, a people who lived among the Alps.

Grudii, orum, a neighboring nation to the Gorduni. Their country was bounded on the north by the mouths of the Scaldis, (Schedt.)

Harudes, um, a people of Germania, (Germany,) on the north bank of the Danubius, (Danube,) towards the source of that river.

Hastati, orum, the name given to the first rank of the Roman legion (See Legio.)

Helvetia, æ, f. Switzerland, a country of a triangular form, bounded on the north by the river Rhenus, (Rhone,) and Lacus Brigantinus, (Lake of Constance,) which separate it from Vindelicia and Germania, Germany; on the south by the Rhodanus, (Rhone,) and Lacus Lemanus, (the Lake of Geneva,) which divides it from Provincia Româna; and on the west by Mount Jura which protected them from the Gauls. Hence it is manifest that Helvetia was of less extent than Switzerland. Cæsar (B. G. I. 1,) seems to consider the Helvetii as Gauls. In Lib. I. cap 24, he says, Helvetii—phalange factâ, by which is to be understood simply, that they fought in close order, not that they drew up their troops precisely in the form of the Macedonian Phalanx, so celebrated in ancient history.

Helvetii, orum, the people of Helvetia; the Helvetians.

Hercynia, æ, f. a very extensive forest of Germany, the breadth of which, according to Cæsar, was nine days journey, and its length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Namnètes, and Rauraci, along the Danubius, (Danube,) to the country of the Daci and Anartes; then turning to the north, it spread over many large tracts of land, and is said to have contained many different animals, unknown in other countries, of which Cæsar describes two or three kinds. Since the other forests of Germany were only branches of the Hercynian, some writers have considered it as covering nearly the whole of that
extensive territory. As the country became more inhabited, the grounds were gradually cleared, and few vestiges of the ancient forest remain in modern times.

Hiberna, Ærum, winter quarters. The wars of the Romans were prosecuted chiefly in the summer. When the weather and the state of the country became unfavorable to military operations the troops were withdrawn from the field, and led into winter quarters, (hiberna.) These were strongly fortified and furnished with every accommodation, like a city, containing storehouses, (arma- ria,) workshops, (fabrica,) an infirmary, (valetudinaria,) &c. Hence, from them many towns in Europe, and particularly in England, are supposed to have had their origin. This appears to be indicated by the terminations cester, or chester, from castra.

Hibernia, æ, f. Ireland, a considerable island in Mare Atlanticum, (the Atlantic Ocean). It is washed on the east by Oceanus Virginus, (St. George's Channel,) which separates it from England; on the north by Mare Hibernicum, (Irish Sea,) which divides it from Scotland; and on all other parts by Mare Atlanticum, (the Atlantic Ocean,) of which St. George's Channel, and the Irish Sea, form but very small parts.

Hiberni, Ærum, the inhabitants of Hibernia.

Hispania, æ, f. Spain, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Caditanum, or Herculæum, (the Strait of Gibral- tar;) on the east by the Mediterranean, which was known among the Romans by the appellation of Nostrum Mare, and among the Greeks, of Mare Internum; on the north by the Pyrenæi Montes, (Pyrenees,) which separate it from Gallia, (France,) and Oceánus Cantabricus, (the Bay of Biscay;) on the west by Lusitania, (Portugal, included in Hispania Ulterior,) and Mare Atlanticum, (the Atlantic Ocean,) which the Greeks called Mare Externum. Its greatest length, from east to west, is 600 miles, and its greatest breadth 550. The superficial contents of this country are about 148,000 square miles. Spain, including Portugal, was, by the Romans, divided into two parts, Hispania Citerior, (Hither Spain,) and Hispania Ulterior, (Farther Spain;) hence, due His- paniae, the two Spains, or Hispaniae, Spains. The former, or northern, comprehending an extent of country equal to three-fourths of modern Spain, the latter, or southern, the rest of the country. These two divisions were sometimes governed by pro- consuls, but more commonly by pretors.

In the reign of Augustus, Hispania Citerior was, from Tarraco, its principal city, called Tarracoensis, and Hispania Ulterior
HISPANI—ILLYRICUM.

was divided into Lusitania and Baetica. The former appellation was derived from the Lusitani, the most powerful of the nations who inhabited that country, and the latter, from Baetis, the Guadalquivir, a very large river, which watered that province.

Hispani,orum, the people of Hispania. Hora, æ, f. an hour. Among the Romans it was the twelfth part of the day. The first hour commenced with the rising of the sun, and the twelfth ended with his setting. It is manifest that the portion of time denominated an hour by them, was constantly changing, and was of equal length to our hour only at the equinoxes. At these two periods of the year, and at them only, their first hour corresponded to our 7 o'clock in the morning; the second to eight, third to 9, fourth to 10, and fifth to 11; but their sixth hour or noon (meridies) coincided exactly with our 12 o'clock noon, or mid-day throughout the whole year. Their 7th then answered to our 1 in the afternoon, 8th to 2, 9th to 3, 10th to 4, 11th to 5; and 12th to 6. At the summer solstice, or longest day, the sun rises at Rome a few minutes past 4 o'clock, and sets the same number of minutes before 8, consequently their hour is, at that time, nearly ½ longer than ours, and at the winter solstice it will be as much shorter.

I.

Iccius, i, m. one of the ambassadors whom the Rhemi sent to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Iccius, i, (sc. portus,) a harbor in the country of the Morini, in Gallia Belgica, which, according to some, was Boulogne, and, according to others, Vissant, or Calais. Ptolemy mentions it as a promontory, although it cannot be doubted that there was likewise a cognominal harbor. From his description, this seems to be the place which he had in view. It could not be Calais. Cæsar set out from Iccius Portus, when he sailed the second time for Britain.

Idus, num, f. the Ides, one of the divisions of the Roman month. In March, July, and October, the Ides were on the 15th, and in the other months, on the 13th. Like the Kalends, and Nones, the Ides were reckoned backwards. (See Gr. App. I.)

Illyricum, (Croatia, Bosnia, and Slavonia,) a country opposite to Italy, bordering on the Adriatic. It was bounded on the south by Macedonia; on the east by Mæsia and Pannonia; on the north by
Noricum; and on the west by Histia and Mare Adriaticum, vel. Supœrum, (the Gulf of Venice.)

Imanuentius, i, m. a Briton, the father of Mandubratius, and king of the Trinobantes. He was killed by Cassivellaunus.

Impedimenta, orum, baggage; (from impedio, to hinder.) The heavier baggage of the Romans, such as tents, mills, &c. was carried on beasts of burden; sometimes, though more seldom, on baggage wagons, (carri.) Every thing else was carried by the soldiers themselves, each of whom usually carried provisions for fifteen days, usually corn, sometimes dressed food, a saw, a basket, a mattock or axe, a reaper’s hook and leathern thong, a chain, a pot, usually three or four stakes, sometimes more, for the vallum, amounting in all, exclusive of armor, to 60 pounds; and under this load they commonly marched 20 miles a day, sometimes more.

Indutiomarus, i, a chief man among the Treviri, father-in-law to Cingetorix, who attacked Labienus, but was repulsed, and slain.

Italia, òrum, the people of Italia; Italians.

Itius Portus, a harbor in the country of the Morini, from which Cæsar sailed on his second expedition against Britain. See Icicius.
Under this frame the soldiers of conquered armies were often obliged to pass naked, *nudī, i. e. without their armor, which was previously laid down. Jumenta, ērūm, beasts of burden, (horses, mules, asses, &c.) used by the Romans for carrying their heavier baggage. (See *Impedi-
menta.*)

Junius, i, (Quintus, i,) a Spaniard who was frequently sent by Cæsar to converse with Ambiörix.

Jura, æ, m. a chain of mountains which, extending from the Rhodā-
nus, (Rhone,) to the Rhenus, (Rhine,) separated Helvetia, (Swit-
zerland,) from that part of Gallia Celtica which the Sequānī pos-
sessed, now called *Franche Comté.* Vosēgus, (Vauge,) is a branch, or an extension of Mount Jura.

*Justus equitatus,* the complement of cavalry attached to a Legion; three hundred in number, exclusive of the horsemen of the allies

**K.**

*Kalenda,* or *Calendæ, ērūm,* f. the Kalends, the name given by the Romans to the first day of every month. A priest was appointed to give notice to the people of the change of the moon, or when the new moon was first visible. This term appears to be de-
rived from the Greek verb *xolēω, I call.* (See Gr. App. I.)

**L.**

*Laberius,* (Quintus, L. Durus,) a tribuné of the soldiers in Cæsar's army. He was killed in Britain, B. G. V. 15.

Labiēnus, i, (Titus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the Civil war he deserted to Pompey, escaped from the battle of Pharsalia, and was killed in that of Munda.

Latobrīgi, ērūm, a people who appear to have been neighbors of the Helvetii Raurāci and Tulingi, but of whom little is known with certainty.

*Legātus,* i, m. a lieutenant-general, who was both appointed by, and acted immediately under, the consul, or Commander-in-chief. The number of these officers varied in proportion to the great-
ness or importance of the war. Each legion had at least one, often two. When separated from the main army, sent into win-
ter quarters, &c. the lieutenant-general, being the deputy of the commander, had the honor to be the highest officer.

At their first institution, the Legati were counsellors to the governors of provinces, and decided all causes of minor importance; but held no military rank. Hence the word primarily denoted an Ambassador. Their admission into the army naturally resulted from that place of intimacy and confidence. Under the emperors the term became a common appellation for all invested with the highest military command in foreign countries.

Legio, ënis, f. a legion, or body of soldiers consisting of different numbers at different times. In the early part of the reign of Romulus, the legion contained 3,000 foot, and 300 horse, which he, on the increase of the citizens by the admission of the Sabines, raised to 4,000. To that number 1,000 was added during the war which Hannibal carried on in Italia, (Italy,) about 216 years B. C. but a reduction of 500 had taken place before the time Polybius wrote his history. Livy states that the legion consisted of 5,000 foot, and Vegetius, of 6,000 foot. It cannot be doubted that these historians recorded the exact number, which constituted a complete legion in their respective times. The legion consisted of ten cohorts, each cohort of three maniples, and each maniple of two centuries; and in the order of battle the troops were drawn up in three lines, first the Hastati; second, the Principes; and third, the Triarii. Those who formed the first line were called Hastati, from their fighting with Hastas, a long spear, which was afterwards laid aside on account of its being inconvenient. They were the flower of the Roman youth. The second line consisted of the same number of maniples, but of men more advanced in life, and of greater military experience, who were called Principes, probably from their being at one time the first line. Their arms were heavy. The Triarii made up the third line, and seem to have been a body of reserve. They were frequently, from Pilum, a javelin, called Pilani, and the Hastati and Principes, Antepilani, from being stationed before them. The Velites generally skirmished before the lines, sometimes between them, and appear to have been what the moderns call Irregulars. They had light armor, hence called expediti, levis armatura, &c. The archers and slingers were attached to this body. According to that historian, twenty Velites seem to have belonged to each maniple. They were, in battle, not formed into cohorts, or maniples, but fought in such parties and in such places as the commander judged most advantageous.
In the early ages of the Roman state, their army in battle order was drawn up, like the Macedonian phalanx, in a continued line. This fact rests on the authority of Livy. The disposition into three lines, and arranging in maniples at some distance from each other seems an improvement of later times. When the Hastati yielded to the superior force or bravery of the enemy, they fell back to the Principes, who filled up the spaces between the maniples, and with them they renewed the charge. If both were forced to give way, the Triarii came up, and a third attack was made on the enemy. Hence, ad triarios ventum est, it is come to the last push; matters are in the utmost danger. The cavalry fought on the wings, but their exact form or position is not certainly known. It probably did not differ very much from the practice of the moderns. If after the whole force was brought into action the enemy still prevailed, they of necessity submitted to a defeat.

All the cohorts of the legion were manifestly on an equal footing in the army of Caesar, and no preference seems to have been either acknowledged or claimed. The only vestige of the ancient division was the officers retaining their former appellations, as Primus hastatus, Primus pilus, &c. Caesar frequently kept the third line as a body of reserve.

Lemânus (Lacus), the Lake of Geneva, is a most beautiful expanse of water, in the form of a crescent, the convex side of which is upwards of fifty-four miles long. Its hollow side is towards Switzerland, and its greatest breadth measures about twelve miles. The Rhodânus, (Rhone,) descending from the Alps, traverses the whole length of the lake, and renders the water at its entrance turbid, on account of the quantity of earth and mud brought down from these steep mountains. Like the other waters and lakes of Switzerland, for nearly an hour in the evening, after the sun is hid behind Mount Jura, it shines with a splendor resembling burnished gold, by the reflection of the solar rays from the Glaciers.

Leponti, örum, a people of the Alps, near the source of the Rhôdânus, (Rhone,) on the south of that river.

Levâci, örum, a people in the northern part of Gallia Belgica, on the Scaldië, (Scheidt,) between the Nervii and Grudii. The Centrones, Grudii, Levâci, Pleunosii, and Gorduni. were vassals of the Nervii. B. G. V. 39.

Leuci, örum, a Belgic nation who lived between the Mosa, (Meuse,) and the Mosella, (Moselle,) near the source of that river.
Lexovii, órum, a people of Gallia Celtica, whose country was bounded on the north by the Sequana, (Seine,) and on the west by Fretum Gallicum, or, Britannicum, (the English Channel.)

Liger, ēris, or Ligēris, is, m. the Loire, a large river of Gaul, which takes its rise in the country of the Helvii, runs N. N. W. and after a course of 200 miles, falls into Oceanus Cantabricus, (Bay of Biscay.) According to the division of Gaul made by Augustus, the Loire was the northern boundary of Aquitania.

Lingones, um, a people of Gaul whose territories included Mount Vossegus, (Vauge,) consequently the sources of the rivers Mosa, (Meuse,) and Matrona, (Marne.) Their chief town was Andomadūnum, or Andomatūnum, afterwards Lingōnes, now Langres.

Liscus, i, one of the Supreme magistrates of the Ædui, who along with Divitiācus and other chiefs of that nation, was in Cæsar's camp in the Gallic war, and informed him of the conduct and plans of Dumnōrīx.

Lituus, i, a clarion, bent a little at the end like an augur's staff. It was used for the cavalry. The tuba was straight and employed by the infantry. The cornu was bent almost round. The bucchina was commonly used for changing the watches.

Lorica, æ, a coat of mail, generally made of leather, covered with plates of iron in the form of scales, or iron rings twisted within one another like chains. It is also used to denote a battlement, or defence of towers and walls, constructed of stone or of hurdles.

Lucinius, i, (Quintus, i,) a centurion of the first rank, who was killed in attempting to rescue his son when surrounded by some of the troops of Ambiōrīx, after that king had treacherously persuaded Aurunculeius Cotta and Q. Titurius Sabinus, lieutenants, with the army which they commanded, consisting of one legion and five cohorts, to leave their winter-quarters among the Ebūrōnes.

Lugotōrīx, īgis, one of the four kings of Kantium, (Kent;) some copies read Cingetōrīx (B. G. V. 22).

Lutetia, æ, f. Lutetia the capital of the Parisii, (Paris, now the capital of France,) was originally a fortress on a small island in the Sequana, (Seine.) There are two other islands in the Seine at Paris covered with buildings, and connected with each other and the town, by means of bridges. Paris, situated in a plain on both sides of the Seine, is of a circular form, and upwards of eleven miles in circumference. It contains many stately edifices, and the finest collections of medals, statues, and paintings, in the
world. Every thing excellent in Rome, and in the other cities of Italy, has been conveyed to Paris to enrich these collections and to adorn the city.

M.


debated the combined forces of the Gauls. This victory put the country under his dominion.

Mandubratius, i, one of the nation of Trinobantes, who, on his father's being killed by Cassivellaunus, fled from Britain to Cæsar then in Gaul, who took him and the state under his protection.

Manilius, (Lucius, i,) a proconsul, who was obliged to fly from Aquitania, with the loss of all his baggage.

Manilius, i, (Tusculus,) one of the conspirators against Cassius Longinus, Proprætor of Farther Spain.

Manipulus, i, (See Legio.)

Marcomanni, or Marcomanni, orum, a people of Germania, (Germany,) whose territories were bounded on the west by the Rhenus, (Rhine,) and on the south by the Danubius, (Danube,) corresponding to part of the modern Circle of Swabia. They afterwards expelled the Boii, and took possession of their country, now called Bohemia.

Mare Nostrum, the Mediterranean Sea, to which the Romans gave this name, from its bounding their native country, Italia, (Italy,) on three sides. By the Greeks it was called Mare Internum; and the Atlantic Ocean, Mare Externum. In Scripture, this collection of water is denominated the Great Sea, which, though of small extent, when compared with the Pacific Ocean, &c. is the largest inland sea in the world. The modern appellation is manifestly derived from its situation, being wholly surrounded by land, except the narrow strait of Gibraltar, which connects it with the Atlantic Ocean.

The length of the Mediterranean is about 2,300 miles, and its breadth varies from 900 to 300 miles. Tides are scarcely known in this sea, except in the Gulf of Venice, and on the coast of Tripoli. There is a constant influx into the Mediterranean, both from the Atlantic and Pontus Euxinus, (the Black Sea,) That part of it which is east of the Archipelago, or of the island Candia, is called the Levant.

The principal islands in the Mediterranean, are the Baleares,
(Majorca and Minorca,) Sardinia, (Sardinia,) Corsica, (Corsica,) Sicilia, (Sicily,) separated from Italia, (Italy,) by Fretum Sicilium, (the Strait of Messina,) Melita, (Malta,) and Creta, (Candia.) In the Levant, besides some other islands of less extent, are Rhodos, (Rhodes,) and Cyprus, (Cyprus.)

Matrona, æ, f. the Marne, a river of Gallia, (France,) which formed part of the ancient boundary between Gallia Belgica and Gallia Celtica. It takes its rise at Sangres, runs northwest to Chalons, then westward, passes by Meaux, becomes navigable at Vitry, and at Charenton, a little above Paris, falls into the Sequana, (Seine,) after a course of about ninety-two leagues.

Mediomatrices, um, vel. i, örum, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosella, (Moselle,) and the Rhenus, (Rhine.) The Treviri were their neighbors on the north. Their chief town was Divodurum, afterwards Mediomatrici, now Metz. At one period they were a powerful nation, and possessed a very extensive country. But the conquest of Gallia, (France,) by the Romans, destroyed their power, and confined them to a narrow territory.

Meldi, örum, a people whose country was included between the rivers Matrona, (Marne,) and Sequana, (Seine.) The modern town, Meaux, is of some note, and contains 6,000 inhabitants. The Meldi mentioned B. V. 5, were a Belgic tribe living on the Scaldis (Scheldt.)

Menapii, örum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose territory was separated from Insula Batavorum, (Holland,) by the Mosa, (Meuse.) The Toxandri were their neighbors on the south.

Mensis, is, m. a month; a term originally employed to denote that portion of time which elapses between two successive changes of the moon. (See Gr. App. I.)

Messala, æ, (Marcus,) a noble Roman who was consul with Marcus Puppius Piso, in the 60th year B. C.

Mettius, i, (Marcus, i,) a man allied to Ariovistus by the rights of hospitality, whom Cæsar joined in commission with C. Valerius Proculus, on an embassy to that king. As soon as they entered his camp, without suffering them to speak, Ariovistus commanded both to be put in irons. He thrice drew lots to determine whether they should be burned alive upon the spot, or reserved for another time. The lots being always favorable, their lives were preserved. After the defeat of Ariovistus, Cæsar himself in the pursuit fell in with Proculus, and Mettius was likewise recovered and brought back to the Roman camp.
Minucius, i, (Lucius M. Basilus,) one of Cæsar's officers. To C. Fabius, and L. Minucius Basilus, he gave the joint command of two legions, which were stationed among the Rhami.

Mona, æ, f. the Isle of Man, an island in the Irish Sea, nearly equi-distant from England, Scotland, and Ireland. It is thirty miles long, and eight broad. The soil is fertile, the air salubrious, and the inhabitants live in general to a great age. The sovereignty of this island formerly belonged to the Dukes of Athol; but it was sold in 1765 to the crown. Tacitus and others call Anglesy, Mona, but Cæsar is more correct.

Morini, orum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay along the coast opposite to Cantium, (Kent.)

Moritasgus, i, the king of the Senones, at Cæsar's arrival in Gallia, (France.)

Mosa, æ, f. the Mease, or Meuse, a river of Gallia, (France,) rising a little to the west of Mount Vosegus, (Vauge,) runs north, passes a number of celebrated towns, receives, at Namur, the Sabis, (Sambre,) joins the Vahālis, (Wahal, or, Waal,) below the island of Bommel, and falls into the German Sea. The course of this river, which extends to 160 leagues, is north.

Munatius, i, (Lucius M. Plancus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants, who, with Caius Trebonius, had the command of three legions which were settled in Belgium, during the winter.

Musculus, a species of moveable shed or pent-house on wheels, shaped like an arched wagon, usually sent before the large towers to prepare the way for their advance, by cutting down trees, filling up ditches, removing obstructions, and making a smooth and solid road even up to the enemy's walls.

N.

Nameius, i, a nobleman of the Helvetii, who, with Verudoctius, was at the head of the embassy which that nation sent to Cæsar, to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Namnetes, or, Nannetes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the north bank of the Ligeris, (Loire,) where it falls into the sea.

Nantuates, um, a people, whose country lay on the south of Lacus Lemanus, (the Lake of Geneva.)

Narbo, cnis. f. Narbonne, a town of Provincia, to the south of the river Atax, (the Aude,) near the sea-coast, which afterwards gave name to that division of Gallia, (France,) called Narbonensis.
Nasua, æ, the brother of Cimberius, who commanded the 100 Cantons of the Suevi, who had encamped on the bank of the Rhenus, (Rhine,) with the design of crossing that river.

Naves, ium, (sing. navis,) ships. The kind of ships used by the Romans were chiefly two, viz: Naves Longæ, ships of war, and Naves Onerarie, ships of burden. The Naves longæ were so called because they were of a longer shape than the others. They were commonly impelled by oars, and were distinguished by a helmet at the mast head. They were also ranked as birēmes, tri-rēmes, quadrēmes, and quinquirēmes, according as they had two, three, four, or five rows or tiers of oars. According to the generally received opinion, these rows or tiers ran from the prow to the stern, as exhibited in the following wood cuts, taken from antiques, the first of which has one row and the second two. Over these were erected decks on which sometimes towers were constructed, from which the enemy might be more conveniently and successfully assailed.

The Naves Onerarie, or ships of burden, were broader and rounder than the vessels of war. They were impelled by sails
and distinguished by a basket, (corbis,) suspended from the mast head; whence they were sometimes called corbitæ.

*Naves Actuariae* were ships contrived for lightness and expedition. They had but one bank of oars, or at most two, on each side. They were of different kinds, distinguished by different names; as, *Celócês, Lembali, Phaséli, &c.*, but the most remarkable were the *Naves Liburnæ*, a kind of light gallies used by the Liburni.

Nemètes, um, a people of Gallia Belgîca, probably a tribe of the Germans, on the west bank of the river Rhenus, (Rhine,) between the Tribócî and Vangiônès. Their principal city was No-viomagus, (Spire.)

Nervii, örum, a powerful and warlike nation of Gallia Belgîca, whose country lay on both sides of the Scaldis, (Scheldt, near the source of that river, afterwards Hainault, and Nord. They revolted and attacked the Roman troops under Cæsar; but were totally routed. Their mode of defence against the attacks of cavalry was simple and effectual. The different readings B. G. Lib. II. 17, are numerous, yet the idea conveyed by all is not very materially different. In the place where the Nervii wished to raise a barrier, they, probably at a considerable distance from each other, half cut two rows of young trees, so that they continued to grow, bent them longitudinally, and gave their branches a lateral direction. The middle space between these rows was planted or filled up with briers and thorns, which intermixing with the trees that formed the outside of the fence, rendered the whole so close and impervious, that it not only stopped the progress, but even the view of the invaders.

After *ramis* the common text has *enatis*, which Oudendorp and others reject as a mere gloss, unnecessary to the sense. It is also wanting in the best MSS.

Nonæ, ärum, f. the Nones, the second division of the Roman month; so called, it is supposed, because from that day to the Ides nine days intervened. In the months of March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the seventh, and in the other months on the fifth. (See Gr. App. I.)

Noreia, æ, f. a city of Norìcum, the capital of the Taurisci. B. I. 5.

Norìcum, i, n. or Noricus ager, a large country of Germany, between Italia, (Italy,) and the Danubius, (Danube). It comprehended the greater part of Austria, all Saltzburg, Stiria, and Carinthia. Their chief city was Noreia, which was besieged by the
Boii, in the inroad which they had made upon Noricum, before they entered into alliance with the Helvetii.

Norici, ōrum, the people of Noricum.

Noviodūnum, i, n. (B. G. II. 15,) a town of the Suessiōnes, (Sot-sōns, or Noyons.) Another of the Ėdui, (B. G. VII. 55,) now Névers, on the banks of the Ligēris, (Loire). And a third belonged to the Biturīgēs, (B. G. VII. 14,) now Neuvy or, Neufry, about twenty miles west from Névers.

Numidiae, aë, f. Algiers, a country of Africa, bounded on the north by the Mediterrenean; on the west by Mauritania, (Morocco and Fez;) on the south by Gætulia; and on the east by Africa Propria, (Tunis.)

Numidiae, ārum, and, Nomādes, um, the inhabitants of Numidia, described by Sallust, in the Jugurthan war, as faithless, unsteady, and fond of revolutions in the state.

O.

Ocelum, i, n. Oux, or Exilles, a town on the frontiers of Gallia Cisalpina, Citerior, or Togāta, in Alpes Graiae.

Octodūrus, i, (Octodōrus, in Greek,) Martigny, a town, or village, of the Verāgrī, (Vicus Veragrorum, Cæsar, B. G. III. 1,) on the Drance, near its junction with the Rhodānus, (Rhone,) at a considerable distance above the entrance of the latter into Lacus Lemanus, (the Lake of Geneva.)

Orcynthia, æ, f. a name given by Eratosthenes, and some other Greeks, to Hercynia Silva; which see.

Orgetorix, īgis, was, according to Cæsar, the richest and most noble of the Helvetii. Prompted by a love of power, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles, and persuaded the people to quit their country. When his ambitious views were discovered by the state, he was obliged to answer to the charges preferred against him. Orgetorix, by means of his vassals and debtors, rescued himself, from the hands of his judges, and escaped. But whilst the state was endeavoring to support its authority by force, he died, as was suspected, by his own hands.

Osismii, ōrum, a people of Gallia Celtīca, one of the nations which went under the general name of Civitates Armoricae. Their country afterwards formed part of the province of Bretagne. It is now called Finisterre.
PADUS, i, m. the Po, the largest river of Italy, anciently called Eridanus. The northern branches of the Po, descending from the Alps, render it largest in the warmest months of summer, by the melting of the snow towards the summit of these lofty mountains. It disembogues into Mare Adriaticum, or Hadriaticum, (the Gulf of Venice,) by seven mouths, of which two were formed by nature, the other five by art.

Pæmâni, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the east bank of the Mosa, (Meuse.) They had the Cæræsi on the south, the Trevīri on the east, and Silva Arduenna on the north.

Paludamentum, i, the military robe or cloak of the Roman commander; sometimes also worn by the chief officers. It was of a scarlet color, bordered with purple. The elevation of this upon a spear above the Prætorium, or general’s tent, was often the signal given for commencing battle.

Parisii, ōrum, the inhabitants of Lutetia, from whom it was afterwards called Parisii, now Paris, the capital of France. (See Lutetia.)

Passus, ús, a pace, (two steps,) was reckoned nearly equal to five feet. (See Gr. App. VI. 5,) Of these 125 made a stadium, and 1000 made a mile; hence, mille passuum, a mile.

Pedius, i, (Quintus) a grandson of one of Julius Cæsar’s sisters, was one of his lieutenant generals in the Gallic war, and appointed in his will co-heir with Octavius, who had Pedius for his colleague in his first consulship. He passed a law, from him called Lex Pedia, declaring the death of Julius Cæsar to have been murder, and subjecting the assassin to capital punishment.

Peligni, ōrum, a people of Italy, whose country lay between the sources of the rivers Sagrus, (Sangro,) and Aternus, (Pescara,) both of which fall into the Gulf of Venice.

Petrosidius, i, (Lucius, i,) a standard bearer of the army which, under the command of Q. Titurius Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, wintered among the Eburōnes. These troops were, in consequence of a stratagem of Ambiorix, attacked by him on disadvantageous ground two miles from the camp, and almost wholly cut off. Petrosidius having, with a few of his men, returned to the camp, threw his standard within the rampart, and was killed fighting with great bravery before the fortifications.
Pictōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the south bank of the Ligeris, (Loiré,) where it falls into the sea.

Pilani. (See Legio.)

Pirustse, arum, a people of Illyricum, on the east coast of Mare Hadriaticum, (the Gulf of Venice.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius Calpurnius, i,) Cæsar's father-in-law, who was consul with A. Gabinius Paulus, in the year of the city 696. In their consulship, Cicero was banished from Rome, and Clodium was supported by Piso, in procuring that disgraceful sentence, (B. G. I. 6.)

Piso, ōnis, (Lucius, i,) the grandfather of Piso above mentioned, was a lieutenant of Cassius, both of whom fell in an engagement with the Helvetii, (B. G. I. 12.)

Piso, ōnis, surnamed from his country, Aquitanus, a nobleman of Aquitania, whose father had been supreme magistratus in that country, and called Friend by the Romans, (B. G. IV. 12.)

Plancus, i, (L. Munatius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, to whom he gave the joint command with Cæs Trebonius, of three legions cantoned in Gallia Belgica. After the death of Julius Cæsar, L. Munatius Plancus joined Antony and Lepidus. With the latter he was consul. He is said to have founded Lugdunum, (Lyons.)

Pleumossi, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, supposed to have lived on the Scaldis, (Scheldt,) near the place where the city Tournay now stands.

Pluteus, i, a kind of moveable gallery on wheels, in form resembling the Musculus, (which see,) but used chiefly to protect the archers stationed in it, in order to clear the walls with their arrows, and so facilitate the approach of storming parties and the erection of scaling ladders.

Pompeius, i, (Cneius,) a Roman who was well skilled in the language of the Gauls, and acted as interpreter to Quintus Titurius. After the credulity of that lieutenant had placed himself and his men at the mercy of Ambiorix, he sent Cneius Pompeius to the king of the Eburōnes, begging him to spare their lives. (See Titurius.)

Preconius, i, a lieutenant who was himself killed, and his army defeated at Apollonia.

Praefectus, i, an officer who commanded the allies, and who in the extent of his command resembled the legionary tribune. The commander of the cavalry of a legion was called praefectus alæ.

Praetor, ōris, m. a Praetor; (from Prae and eo,) literally, one who goes before. In the early ages of the Roman State, this term is
supposed by some to have been a general appellation of all the Roman Magistrates, afterwards of the general of the army; even the Emperors were ambitious to include it among their other titles. But the word commonly denoted a Roman judge who administered justice both among his fellow-citizens, and also among the foreigners who resided in Rome. In dignity the Prætor ranked next to the Consul. He had power to alter laws, repeal them, and enact new at pleasure.

Præatoria cohors, Prætorian cohort, a select band of troops forming the general's body guard.

Preciæni, òrum, a people of Aquitania, who are supposed to have lived at the foot of the Pyrenæi Montes, (Pyrenees,) near Mare Cantabricum, (the Bay of Biscay.)

Primopilus, i, (sometimes primus pilus,) the chief centurion of the legion. This name belonged to the first centurion of the first maniple of the Triarii. He was entrusted with the eagle or main standard of the legion; in pay he ranked among the equites, and had a place in the council of war with the consul and tribunes.

Provincia Romana, the Roman Province; that part of Transalpine Gaul in the possession of the Romans previous to the conquests of Cæsar. It extended along the shore of the Mediterranean, from the Pyrenees to the Alps, and was bounded on its northwest side by the Mount Cebenna, (or Cevennes,) and on the north, eastward, by the Ambani, Sequari, and Helvetii. In the new division of Gaul afterwards made by Augustus, its boundaries remained as before, but as all Gaul was now become a Roman Province it ceased to be distinguished by that name, and was called Narbonensis, from Narbo its principal city. (See Narbo.)

Pulfio, ònis, (Titus, i,) a Roman centurion of distinguished valor, who, to decide a dispute with L. Varènus respecting superiority of courage, rushed forth from the camp, when attacked by the Nervii, and displayed great bravery without the fortifications. Nor was his rival for military fame, inferior to him either in bravery or generosity; B. V. Ch. 44. (See Varènus.)

R.

Rauraci, òrum, a people of Gallia Celtica. on the northern extremity of Mount Jura. The Rhenus, (Rhine,) was their boundary on the east.

Remi, òrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay to the north of the Matrona, (Marne). Their chief town was Durocortorum, now Rheims.
Rhedões, um, a people of Gallia Celtica. The Rhedônes were one of those nations reckoned among the Civitates Armoricæ. Their country is now called Bretagne.

Rhenus, i. m. the Rhine, a celebrated river of Europe, which takes its rise in Mount Adula, (St. Gothard.) in the country of the Grissons, passes Lacus Brigantium, (Lake of Constance,) and continues to run nearly west about 75 miles, when it reaches Basti. On leaving this city, it takes a northerly direction and becomes the boundary between France, or the Netherlands, and Germany, till it divides into two branches, which, with the German Sea, formed, what was anciently called, Insula Batavorum, (Holland, or the United Provinces.) After a course of 600 miles, and receiving several rivers on both banks, the Rhine discharges itself into that part of Mare Atlanticum, (the Atlantic Ocean,) called Oceanus Germanicus, (the German Sea.)

Rhôdânum, i. m. the Rhone, a large and rapid river of Europe, which has its source in Mount la Fourche, near St. Gothard, in the canton of Uri, not more than two leagues south from that of the Rhenus, (Rhine,) passes Lacus Lemânus, (the Lake of Geneva,) five leagues below which it disappears between two rocks for a considerable way, rises again, flows with great rapidity in a southern direction, and discharges itself by three mouths into that part of the Mediterranean formerly called Gallicus Sinus, (the Gulf of Lyons.) The course of the Rhone is about 400 miles, during which it falls 5,400 feet. In Strabo's time it was navigable a good way up; but its mouths are now so full of rocks brought down from the mountain by its impetuous current, that no ship can enter them. The Rhone is largest in summer, and is at its greatest height soon after the longest day. This is most probably occasioned by the heat of the sun melting part of the snow on the Alps during the summer months.

Roma, w, f. Rome, one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, stood on the banks of the Tiber, about fifteen miles from the sea. Romulus, from whom the name is derived, laid the foundation of this city on Mons Palatinus, 15th April, 753 B. C. From a very small beginning it gradually increased, until its circumference, according to Pliny, was not less than twenty miles. After the lapse of many years, Rome became the capital of Italia. (Italy,) and, at the commencement of the Christian Era, the known world was in subjection to that gigantic power. It was divided into twenty-four regions or wards, had seven great, and thirteen smaller aqueducts, thirty-seven gates, and six hundred and forty-four tow
ers on the walls. To ascertain its population when in the height of power, is perhaps impossible; but it could not fall much below four millions.

Roscius, i, (Lucius, i,) a lieutenant, to whom Cæsar gave the command of the third legion, which he was to march into the territories of the Essui.

Rufus, i, (P. Sulpicius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, to whom he gave the charge of the port in Gallia, (France,) from which he sailed for Britannia, (Britain,) and a garrison sufficient to protect it during his absence.

Ruteni, ōrum, a people of Aquitania, on the river Tarnis, (Tarn.) Rufillus, i, (M. Sempronius, i,) an officer of Cæsar, who had, with T. Labienus, the joint command of the two legions which that general ordered to march into the territories of the Sequani.

S.

Sabinus, i, (Caius Calvisius,) an officer in Cæsar's army, whom he sent into Ætolia, in Græcia, (Greece,) with five cohorts and a few men.

Sabinus, i, (Q. Titurius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army. He, and L. Aurunculeius Cotta, had the command of the troops which were stationed among the Menapii, and in other parts of Gallia Belgica. When in their quarters on the frontiers of the Eburōnes, the artful stratagem of Ambiörix, king of that tribe, to cut off these lieutenants and their two legions succeeded, through the credulity and obstinacy of Sabinus. A few of the private soldiers escaped the sword of the Gauls. (See Cotta.) This officer is sometimes called simply Titurius, or, Sabinus.

Sabis, is, m. the Sambre, a river of Gallia Belgica, which has its rise in what is now called Picardy, runs northeast and falls into the Mosa, (Meuse,) near Namur.

Sagittarii, ōrum, archers; men who fought with bows and arrows, attached to the velites. (See Legio.) The best archers were the Cretans. The Romans did not use the bow in the early times of the republic, and when introduced they had scarcely any archers except those of the auxiliary troops.

Samarobrīva, æ, f. (i. e. the bridge of the Samāra,) Amiens, a town of Gallia Belgica, on the south bank of the river Samārn, (Somme.) It was afterwards called Ambiānum, from its inhabitants; hence the present name.
Santones, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the north of the river Carantonus, (Charente.) Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Santones, now Saintes.

Scaldis, is, the Scheld, or the Scheldt, a river of Gallia Belgica, which takes its rise about fifteen miles south of Camaracum, (Cambray,) in the province of Picardy, runs north, and dividing into two branches, falls into the German Sea. Caesar erroneously makes it a branch of the Mosa, (Meuse,) (B. G. VI. 33.)

Scorpiiones, a species of military engine for throwing darts and javelins, similar to the Balista, or probably only another name for the same. (See Balista.)

Scutum, i. m. a shield; a part of the defensive armor of the Roman infantry, which they wore on their left arms to protect their bodies against the arrows, darts, and other missile weapons thrown by the enemy. It consisted of thin pieces of wood joined by plates of iron, and covered with thick skin or hide. The most common form was oval, extending to four feet in length and two and a half in breadth. When a soldier had not his shield he was said to fight nudo corpore.

Seduni, orum, a nation of Helvetia, (Switzerland,) on the north bank of the Rhodanus, (Rhone,) above Lacus Lemanus, (the Lake of Geneva.)

Sedusii, orum, a nation of Germany, on the northeast bank of the Rhenum, (Rhone.) Their country was watered by the Menus, (Maine.)

Segonax, acis, one of the four kings who reigned in Cantium, (Kent,) at the time Caesar invaded Britain.

Segontiaci, orum, a British nation on the south of the river Taméisis, (Thames.) They appear to have been subject to Cassivellaunus, at the time Caesar attempted to add this island to the Roman empire. (B. V. Ch. 21.)

Segusiani, orum, a people of Gallia Celtica, to the west of the Rhodanus, (Rhone.) Their country was traversed by the Ligéris, (Loire,) towards the source of that river.

Senones, um, a warlike nation of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the Sequana, (Seine,) about 70 miles above Paris.

Septimius, i, (Lucius, i,) a tribune of the soldiers, sent along with Achillas, by Ptolemæus king of Egypt, to murder Pompey, in whose army he had formerly been a centurion.

Sequana, æ, the Seine, a river of Gallia, (France,) has its source near Nevers in Bourgogne, runs in a northwest direction, and falls into that part of the Atlantic called Fretum Britannicum, (the British Channel,) at Havre de Grace. The course of this beautiful and picturesque river extends to 250 miles. Paris, the capital of France, originally a fort on a small island in the Seine, above 120 miles from the sea, now stands on both sides of this river, over which there are, in that city, 12 bridges.

Sequana, æ, f. a district of Gallia, (France,) bounded on the east by Mons Jura, (Mount Jura,) which separated it from the country of the Helvetii; on the north by Mount Vosegus, (Vauge,) which divided it from that of the Leuci; on the west by the country of the Aedui and Lingones; and on the south by that of the Ambarri and Allobroges.
Sequani ōrum, (sing. Sequānus, i,) the people of Sequāna. This nation headed one of the factions of the Gallic states, and the Ædui the other.

Sesuvii, ōrum, (or Sesovii,) one of the Armoric states in Gaul, the situation of which is not known.

Sextius, i, (Publius S. Baculus,) a centurion of the first rank in Cæsar’s army, in the Gallic wars.

Sextius, i, (Titus, i,) one of the three lieutenants whom Cæsar sent to augment his army, in the sixth year of the war in Gallia, (France.)

Sibutzates, um, a people of Aquitania, whose country lay along the Adour. Of their history nothing is known.

Sigambri, ōrum, a German nation, who lived on the east bank of the Rhine, to the south of the river Rura, (Roir.)

Silānus, i, (Marcus, i,) one of Cæsar’s lieutenants, whom he ordered to levy troops for the war in Gallia, (France.)

Silius, i, (Titus, i,) an officer whom P. Crassus sent to the Venēti, to procure grain and forage with Velanius. But the Venēti, seized them in expectation of regaining their hostages by this measure.

Sotiates, ium, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the Garumna, (Garonne.) Their territories formed part of what was afterwards called Novempopulana, bounded by the Garonne, Pyrenees, and Bay of Biscay.

Suessiones, Suessōnes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country was bounded on the south by the Marōna, (Marne.) Although a brave and powerful nation, they were obliged to submit to the arms of Cæsar.

Suevi, ōrum, a nation of Germania, (Germany,) who inhabited a large tract of country, Suevia, æ, f. lying between the Albis, Elbe, and the Vistula, (Vistula,) on the northern side of Silva Hercynia. They made many inroads on the Roman territories.

Sulpitius, i, (Publius, i,) one of Cæsar’s lieutenants. Q. Tullius, Cicēro, and P. Sulpitius, were stationed among the Ædui, at Cabillo, v. Cabillōnum, (Chalon,) and Matisco, (Mascon,) on the Arar, (Saone.) These two officers were entrusted with the care of provisions.

T.

Tamesis, or Thamesis, is, m. the Thames, one of the largest rivers of England, rises in Cotswold hills in the western extremity of Gloucestershire, runs eastward, and after passing through London, falls into the German Sea. With respect to commerce, this is the first river in the world. It is navigable about 130 miles, and the tide flows up as far as Richmond in Surrey, which taking the course of the river, is 70 miles.

Tarbelli. ōrum, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the sea-coast, from the Pyrenei Montes, (Pyrenees,) to the territories of the Cocosates.

Tarusātes, ium, a people of Aquitania. The Tarbelli were between them and the Bay of Biscay.
Tasgetius, a nobleman of the nation of the Carnutes, whose forefathers had possessed the sovereignty of that state.

Taximagulus, one of the four kings who reigned over Cantium. (Kent.) They seem to have all been under the power of Cassivellaunus.

Tectosages, Tectosagii, a very valiant people of Gallia, a branch of the Volcae, near the Pyrenees. (See Volcae.)

Tenchtri, a people of Germany, on the river Rhenus, south of the Sigambri.

Terasidius, one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he sent into the country of the Esubii.

Testudo, f. I. A wooden tower used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers when employed in undermining the walls of a town, or in battering them with the ram, (See Aries.) It was erected of wood, and covered with hides, earth, or any other kind of substance which is with difficulty set on fire.

II. When the soldiers of a company advanced to an assault, they frequently stood close together, and formed a shade or screen of their shields, to protect their bodies against the missile weapons, thrown by the enemy from the walls. This defence they also called Testudo, from the resemblance which the locked shields had to the shell or covering of the tortoise, (See the following wood cut,) but it must not be confounded with the tower or man-telet just described.

TESTUDO.

Tigurinus Pagus, one of the four cantons or districts, into which Helvetia (Switzerland,) is divided according to Cæsar, compre-
hending the modern cantons Zurich, Sch威tz, Schaffhausen, and the lands of the Abbey of St. Gal.

Tigurini, òrum, the people of Pagus Tigurinus.

Titus, i, a common prænomen among the Romans.

Titurius, i, (Quintus T. Sabinus,) one of Caesar's lieutenants, often called simply, Titurius, killed by Ambiorix. (See Aurunculeius.)

Tolosa, æ, Thoulouse, or Toulouse, a town of Aquitania, beautifully situated on the north bank of Garumna. Tolosa was one of the most flourishing cities of Gaul, afterwards the residence of a Roman colony, and, at a later period, the metropolis of the Visigoths.

Tolosates, ium, the inhabitants of Tolosa.

Trebius, i, (Marcus T. Gallius,) an officer sent by Caesar to the Curiosolitae, to procure provisions.

Treviri, òrum, or (sing. Trevir, ïri,) a nation of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosella, (Moselle,) and Silva Arduenna. Their chief city, Augusta Trevirorum, now Trier, or Treves, stands on the east bank of the Moselle, over which it has a large bridge.

Tribunus, òrum, (sing. Tribunsus, i,) militum, Tribunes of the soldiers; officers in the Roman army, who had the command of a division of a legion. To take care of the works and camp, to communicate the watchword to the guards, and to give judgment in certain cases, formed the duty of the military tribunes. Romulus first appointed the tribunes, to whom he gave that name from their being only three in number, one out of each tribe. But afterwards, each legion had six tribunes. The right of nomination belonged first to the kings, then to the consuls, or dictators, and, at a later period, to the people.

Trinobantes, um, a nation of ancient Britain, inhabiting the counties now called Essex and Middlesex. Cassivellaunus was their king at the time Caesar invaded this island.

Tulingi, òrum, a people of Germany, between the rivers Danubius, (Danube,) and Rhenus, (Rhine.)

Turones, um, or, i, òrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the banks of the river Loire, about 140 miles from the sea. Their name is perpetuated by the modern appellation of the country, Touraine, and their city Tours, anciently Turones.

Turrīs, is, a tower. The towers used in the Roman military works were of two kinds, the fixed and the moveable. The fixed towers were erected on the agger, or mound, and were raised sufficiently high to overlook and command the enemy's ramparts, and from them showers of arrows, darts, and other missiles were thrown by means of various engines. The moveable towers (See wood cut, next page,) were pushed forward on rollers or wheels fixed below. To prevent them from being set on fire they were covered with raw hides and pieces of coarse woollen cloth. They were of immense size, sometimes forty or fifty feet square, and higher than the walls, or even the towers of the city. When brought up against the walls, a place was seldom able to stand out long. Sometimes they were provided with a species of drop or platform, which being let down reached from the tower to the top of the wall and formed a species of bridge by which the assailants took possession of the walls.
UBII, a people of Germany, whose territories were on the Rhine opposite to the Sigambri.

Unelli, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the northwest of what is now called Normandy. Their country was bounded on three sides by the sea. Their chief town was Coriallum, (Gouril.) Off the coast of the Unelli, lay the islands of Cæsarea, (Jersey,) Sarnia, (Guernsey,) and Redũnua, (Alderney,) which have long been in possession of the British.

Usipetes, um, or Usipii, a people of Germany, on the right bank of the Rhenus, (Rhine.)

V.

Vahalis, is, m. Wahal, or, Waal, the left branch of the Rhenus. (Rhine.) It joins the Mosa, (Meuse,) at the island of Voorn, and falls into the German sea below the Breil.

Valerius, i, (Caius V. Cabûrus,) a chief man among the Gauls in Provincia, whose original name appears to have been Cabûrus.
On being made a Roman citizen, by C. Valerius Flaccus, he, as was usual, took the name of his patron.

Valerius, i, (Caius, V. Flaccus,) a noble Roman, who conferred the freedom of the city on C. Valerius Caburus.

Valerius i, (Caius V. Procillus,) the son of C. Valerius Caburus, was the chief man in Provincia. Cæsar, on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language, sent him and M. Mettius to hold an interview with Ariovistus, king of Germany. The German king imprisoned them both, but they were afterwards rescued by the Romans during the flight of their army.

Vallum, the ramparts of a Roman encampment, composed of the earth dug out from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it to keep it together. (See Castra.)

Vangiones, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the west bank of the Rhenus, (Rhine,) They were originally from Germany, and, at one time, had probably lands on both sides of that river. Their chief town was Borbetomagus, now Worms.

Velanius, i, (Quintus, i,) sent by Cæsar with Silius to procure corn from the Veneti, who detained them in order to receive the hostages which they had given to that general.

Velauni, ōrum, a small tribe in Gallia Celtica, on the sources of the Ligoris. Their chief city was Anderitium, now Javoli, or Javoux.

Velocasses. (See Bellocaasses.)

Veneti, ōrum, a nation in the west part of Gallia Celtica, whose chief town was Venetia. Their country lay on the sea coast, northwest from the mouth of the Liger; (Loire.)

Verágrí, ōrum, a people who lived in that part of Provincia, now called Dauphine, on the south bank of the Rhodanlus, (Rhone,) above Lacus Lemanus, (the Lake of Geneva.)

Verbigonus, i, (sc. pagus,) or, Urbigenus, one of the four divisions of Helvetia, (Switzerland,) included the cantons of Friburg and Bern, with the districts of Neufchatel and Vallengin.

Vergobrētus, i, the title of the supreme magistrate among the Ædui, who was created yearly, and had the power of life and death over his countrymen.

Veromandui, ōrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Nervii and Sueciones. Their chief town was Augusta Veromandorum, (St. Quentin,) on the right bank of the Samara, (Somme.) Like most of the other nations of Gallia Belgica, they were originally from Germany.

Vertico, ōnis, a nobleman of the Nervii, who was in Cicero's camp, when attacked by the Eburones, and prevailed on a slave to carry a letter to Cæsar, communicating information of that event.
Verudoctius, i, one of the Helvetii. He and Nameius were at the head of the embassy sent to Cæsar, requesting permission to march through Provincia.

Vesontio, ōnis, f. Besancon, the chief town of the Sequāni. on the east bank of the river Dúbis, (Doux.)

Vigilia, æ, f. a watch, the time a Roman soldier remained on guard during the night. Of these there were four, each three hours long. (See Gr. App. I.

Víneas, ärum, f. a shed, used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers in besieging towns. It consisted of four upright posts, upon which was fixed a roof of hurdle or wicker-work. Above the hurdles were spread raw hides, a little earth, &c. to protect it from fire. The size of the vínæ differed according to circumstances. The whole rested upon wheels, so that this mantelet would be easily moved, and under it the besiegers either worked the ram, (See Aries,) or tried to undermine the walls. (See Pluteus.)

Viridovínx, ictis, the leading man among the Unelli, who headed a powerful army in an attack on Sabinus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants stationed among them, who defeated Viridovínx by an artful stratagem.

Vocátēs, ium, a people of Aquitania, supposed by some to be the same with Vasátēs, whose territories lay on the south bank of the Garōnne, about ninety miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was Cossio.

Vocio, ōnis, king of the Norīci, to whose sister Ariovistus was married.

Vocontii, ōrum, a nation of Gaul, on the banks of a small stream called Droma, (Drome,) which falls into the Rhodānus, (Rhone,) about 100 miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was Dia, Die.

Vosēgus, i, or Vogēsus, m. Vauge, is a branch of Mount Jura, stretching in a northern direction, in which are the sources of the Arar, (Saone,) the Mosa, (Meuse,) and the Mosella, (Moselle.)

Volcatius Tullus, Volcatii Tulli, an officer, who, according to Cæsar, sustained, at Dyrrachium, (Durazzo,) with three cohorts, the charge of a whole legion.

Volcéæ, ärum, a numerous and powerful nation of Gaul, between the Garumna, (Garonne,) and the Rhodānus, (Rhone,) divided into the Arecomīci, and Tectosāges, q. v.

Volusēnus, i, (Caius, i,) an officer whom Cæsar sent with a galley to survey the coast of Britain opposite Gaul, and to acquire as correct information as he could, respecting the harbors and landing places, previously to his sailing against that island.

[THE END.]
BULLIONS'
SERIES OF GRAMMARS,
ENGLISH, LATIN AND GREEK,
ON THE SAME PLAN,
FOR THE USE OF
Colleges, Academies & Common Schools.
(Published by Pratt, Woodford & Co., N. Y.)

In preparing this series, the main object has been, First: To provide for the use of schools a set of class books on this important branch of study, more simple in their arrangement, more complete in their parts, and better adapted to the purposes of public instruction, than any heretofore in use in our public Seminaries: and Secondly, to give the whole a uniform character by following, in each, substantially, the same arrangement of parts, using the same grammatical terms, and expressing the definitions, rules, and leading parts, as nearly as the nature of the case would admit in the same language; and thus to render the study of one Grammar a more profitable introduction to the study of another than it can be, when the books used differ so widely from each other in their whole style and arrangement, as those now in use commonly do. By this means, it is believed, much time and labor will be saved, both to teacher and pupil,—the analogy and peculiarities of the different languages being constantly kept in view, will show what is common to all, or peculiar to each,—the confusion and difficulty unnecessarily occasioned by the use of
elementary works, differing widely from each other in language and structure will be avoided,—and the progress of the student rendered much more rapid, easy and satisfactory.

These works form a complete series of elementary books, in which the substance of the best Grammars in each language has been compressed into a volume of convenient size, handsomely printed on a fine paper, neatly and strongly bound, and at a moderate price. The whole series is now submitted to the judgment of a discerning public, and especially to teachers and superintendents of schools, and seminaries of learning throughout the United States.

The following notices and recommendations of the works separately, and of the series, both from individuals of the highest standing in the community, and from the public press, will furnish some idea of the plan proposed, and of the manner in which it has been executed.

I. THE PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

*Comprising the substance of the most approved English Grammars extant—with copious exercises in Parsing and Syntax. Fifth edition with an Appendix, of various and useful matter, pp. 216, 12 mo. New York, Robinson, Pratt & Co.*

This work, on the plan of Murray's Grammar, has been prepared with much care, and with special reference to the wants of our Common Schools. It comprises in a condensed form, and expressed in plain and perspicuous language, all that is useful and important in the works of the latest and best writers on this subject,—an advantage possessed in an equal degree by no similar work now in use. It is the result not only of much study and careful comparison, but of nearly twenty-five years experience in the school room, during which, the wants of the pupil and the character of books best adapted to those wants, have been carefully noted; and its adaptation to the purpose of instruction has now been thoroughly tested and approved in some of the best schools in this country. It is beautifully printed on a fine strong paper, neatly and firmly
bound, and forms one of the most complete, useful, and economical school books ever offered to the public. The following are a few extracts from,

NOTICES AND RECOMMENDATIONS.

The undersigned have great satisfaction in recommending to the public, "The Principles of English Grammar," by Prof. Bullions, of the Albany Academy. Proceeding upon the plan of Murray, he has availed himself of the labors of the most distinguished grammarians, both at home and abroad; and made such a happy use of the helps afforded him, that we know of no work of the kind, in the same compass, which is equal to it in point of merit. Among its many excellencies, it is not the least, that Prof. B. has given a practical illustration of every principle from the beginning to the end; and the possession of his Grammar entirely supersedes the necessity of procuring a separate volume of Exercises on the Rules of Syntax. In a word, we can truly say, in the language of the author, "that there is nothing of much importance in Murray's larger Grammar, or in the works of subsequent writers, that will not be found condensed here."

JohN LUDLOW,  
ISAAC FERRIS,  
ALFRED CONKLING,  
T. ROMEYN BECK.

Albany, October 8, 1842.

[An Extract from the Minutes of the Board of Trustees of the Al.

bany Female Academy.]

At a meeting of the trustees of the Albany Female Academy, held on the third instant, the book committee reported, that they had examined Professor Bullions' English Grammar, recently published in this city; and that in their opinion, it contains all that is useful in the most improved treatises now in use, as well as much valuable original matter: that from the copious exercises in false syntax, it will supersede the necessity of a separate volume on that subject; and recommend that it should be used as the text book in this institution.

On motion, it was resolved, that the report of the committee be accepted, and the treatise on English Grammar; by the Rev. Peter Bullions, adopted as the text book in this academy.

An Extract from the Minutes.

A. CRITTENTON, Secretary of the Board of Trustees, and  
Principal of the Academy.

Albany, October 13, 1834.

Sing. Sing, November 1, 1834.

DEAR SIR—I have examined your English Grammar with no small degree of satisfaction; and though I am not in the habit of recommending books in this manner, I am constrained in this case to say, I think you have conferred another important favour on the cause of education.
The great defects of most of the English grammars now in use, particularly in the omission of many necessary definitions, or in the want of perspicuity in those given, and also in the rules of construction, are in a great measure happily supplied. I am so well pleased with the result of your labors, that I have adopted it, (as I did your Greek Grammar) for both our institutions.

Yours respectfully,

NATHANIEL S. PRIME, Principal of Mt. Pleasant Academy,

REV. P. BULLIONS,

The undersigned hold the responsibility of recommendation as an important one—often abused, and very frequently used to obliged a personal friend, or to get rid of an urgent applicant. They further appeal to their own conduct for years past, to show that they have only occasionally assumed this responsibility; and therefore feel the greater confidence in venturing to recommend the examination, and the adoption of the Rev. Dr. Bullions' English Grammar, as at once the most concise and the most comprehensive of any with which they are acquainted; as furnishing a satisfactory solution of nearly all the difficulties of the English language; as containing a full series of exercises in false syntax, with rules for their correction; and finally, that the arrangement is in every way calculated to carry the pupil from step to step in the successful acquisition of that most important end of education, the knowledge and use of the English language.

March 1, 1842.

A cursory examination of the English Grammar of Dr. Bullions, has satisfied me, that it has just claims on public favour. It is concise and simple; the matter is well digested; the exercises excellent, and the typographical execution worthy of all praise. The subscriber takes pleasure in recommending it to the notice of Teachers, and of all persons interested in education.

ALONZO POTTER.

Union College, Sept. 6, 1842.

The English Grammar of the Rev. Dr. Bullions, appears to me, to be the best manual which has appeared as yet. With all the good points of Murray, it has additions and emendations, which I cannot but think would have commended themselves to Murray himself, and if I were a teacher of English Grammar, I would without hesitation prefer it to any other book of the kind,

JAMES W. ALEXANDER,
Professor of Belles Lettres, College of N. J.

Princeton, Aug. 15, 1842

Extract of a letter from Rev. BENJAMIN HALE, D.D., President of Geneva College N. Y.

Rev. Dr. BULLIONS.—Dear Sir—I have lately procured a copy of your English Grammar, and given it such attention as my time has permitted, and I do not hesitate to express my conviction, that it is entitled to higher
confidence than any other English Grammar in use among us, and my wish, that it may come into general use. I have seen enough to satisfy me, that you have diligently consulted the best sources, and combined your materials with discrimination and judgment. We have, as a faculty, recommended it by placing it on the list of books to be used by candidates in preparation for this college. I have personally recommended it, and will continue to recommend it, as I have opportunity.

Very respectfully, dear sir, your friend, &c.

BENJAMIN HALE.

Geneva College, July 13, 1842.


University, New-York, June 13th, 1842.

Rev. Dr. Bullions.—Dear Sir—At the suggestion of the late Mr. Leckie, head classical master in the Grammar School, we began to introduce your grammars at the opening of the present year. We have made use chiefly of the Greek and English Grammar. The result thus far is a conviction that we have profited by the change, which I was very slow to make; and I doubt not that our farther experience will confirm the good opinion we entertain of your labors in this department of learning. Wishing you a large reward, I remain, very truly yours,

C. MASON, Rector.

NOTICES FROM THE PUBLIC PRESS.

From a Report presented to the Jefferson Co. Association of Teachers, on the English Grammars now in use, the merits of each, and the best method of teaching them. By the Rev. J. R. Boyd, Principal of Black River Institute.

2. The Grammar by Prof. Bullions of the Albany Academy, is constructed on the same plan as that of Brown; and while it is not so copious in its exercises, nor so full in its observations upon the language, yet it is far more simple in its phraseology, more clear in its arrangement, more free perhaps from errors or things needing improvement, and at the same time contains all that is necessary to be learned in gaining a knowledge of the structure of our language. The Rules of Syntax and observations under them, are expressed generally in the best manner. The Verb is most vividly explained, and that portion of the work contains much not to be found in other grammars, while it judiciously omits a great deal to be found in them, that is unworthy of insertion.

It is excellent upon Prosody, and upon Poetic Diction
and gives an admirable summary of directions for correct and elegant writing, and the different forms of composition. The typography of the book cannot be too highly commended—a circumstance that greatly affects the comfort and improvement of the learner.

"This grammar is equally well adapted to the beginner and to the advanced scholar. The course of instruction which Prof. B. recommends in the use of his grammar, seems wisely adapted to secure in the readiest manner the improvement of the pupil. The book is not so large as to appall the beginner, nor so small as to be of little use to those advanced. On the whole, in my judgment, no work has yet appeared, which presents equally high claims to general use. It is copious without redundancy—it is well printed, and forms a volume pleasing to the eye. It is lucid and simple, while in the main, it is philosophically exact.—Among the old Grammars, our decided preference is given to that of Prof. Bullions."

[From the Albany Argus.]

Principles of English Grammar.—This work besides containing a full system of grammar, is rendered more immediately useful for academies and common schools, by containing copious examples in good grammar for parsing, and in bad grammar for correction; and all of these are arranged directly under the rule to which they apply. Thus, instead of two books, which are required, (the grammar and the exercises,) the learner finds both in one, for a price at least not greater than the others.

[From the Newburgh Journal.]

Bullions’ English Grammar.—It is not one of the smallest evils connected with our present system of common school education, that our schools are flooded with such a variety of books on elementary subjects, not only differing in arrangement, but frequently involving absurd and contradictory principles. And to no subject are these remarks more applicable, than to English Grammar. And until some one elementary work of an approved character shall be generally introduced into our common schools, we despair of realizing a general proficiency in this important branch of education, It is with pleasure, therefore, that we witness the increasing popularity of “Bullions’ English Grammar.” From a familiar acquaintance with the work, from the publication of the first edition, we have no hesitation in pronouncing it the best Grammar with which we are acquainted. The perspicuity of its definitions, the correctness of its principles, the symmetry of its arrangements, as well as the neat and accurate form in which it is presented, and withal the cheapness of the work, are so many recommendations to its general use.
Professor Bullions' English Grammar is obviously the fruit of sound and enlightened judgment, patient labor and close reflection. It partakes of the character both of an original work and of a compilation. Following the principles of Murray, and adopting in the main the plan of Lennie, the most distinguished of his successors, the aim of the author, as he states in his preface, has been to correct what is erroneous, to retrench what is superfluous or unimportant, to compress what is prolix, to elucidate what is obscure, and to determine what is left doubtful, in the books already in use. In laboring to accomplish this excellent design, he has contrived to condense, in very perspicuous language, within the compass of a small, handsomely printed volume, about 200 pages, and costing but 50 cents, all that is requisite in this form to the acquisition of a thorough knowledge of the grammar of our language. It contains so great a number of exercises in parsing and syntax, judiciously interspersed, as to supersede the necessity of separate manuals of exercises now in use. Among other highly useful things to be found in this book, and not usually met with in works of this nature, are some very valuable critical remarks, and a pretty long "list of improper expressions," which unhappily have crept into use in different parts of our country. Under the head of Prosody, the author has, it is believed, given a better explanation of the principles of English versification, than is to be found in any other work of this nature in this country. In short, I hazard the prediction that this will be found to be decidedly the plainest, most perfect, and most useful manual of English grammar that has yet appeared.

EXTRACTS FROM LETTERS.

The following, are extracts from letters from County Superintendents of Common Schools in the State of New-York, to whom copies of the work had been sent for examination.

From Alexander Fonda, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com. Schools, Schenectady Co.

Schenectady, March 30, 1842.

Dear Sir—I acknowledge the receipt of a copy of your English Grammar, left upon my office desk yesterday afternoon. When in your city some three weeks since, I was presented with a copy by S. S. Randall, Esq.; from the examination I was enabled to give it, and from the opinion expressed in relation to it, by one of the oldest and most experienced teachers of this county, to whom I presented it, as well as from the knowledge I possessed by reputation of its author, I had before I received the copy from you, determined to introduce it as far as I was able, as a class book in the schools of this county.

From Chauncey Goodrich, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com. Schools, Onondaga Co.

Canal, June 24, 1842.

Dear Sir—Your favor of the 1st instant has just come to hand. The Grammar referred to has been received and examined. I am fully satisfied of its superior merits as a grammar for common schools, over any
other work I have seen. I shall take the earliest measures for its introduc-
tion into the schools under my supervision.

Pitcher, June 30, 1842.

Dear Sir—Sometime since I received a copy of a work on English gram-
mar, by the Rev. Peter Bullions, D.D. for which I am much obliged. I
have given the book as close an examination as circumstances would
permit. The book is well got up, and exhibits the thorough acquaint-
ance of the author with his subject. I think it well calculated for our
common schools.

From Garnsey Beach, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Putnam Co.
Patterson, July 2, 1842.

Dear Sir—Yours of the first ult, was received on Thursday last. As
it respects your Grammar I have carefully examined it, and without en-
tering into particulars, I consider it the best I have ever seen, and as
such, I have recommended it to the several schools under my care.

From O. W. Randall, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Oswego Co.
Phoenix, July 2, 1842.

Mr. P. Bullions,—Dear Sir—I have for the last two weeks devoted
some considerable time, in perusing your system of English Grammar,
and in reply to yours, requesting my views of the work, I can cheer-
fully say, that its general arrangement, is admirably adapted either to the
novice or adept. The § 27th and § 28th on verbs, with the attendant remarks,
are highly important, and essential to the full completion of any system
of grammar. The work taken together is remarkable for simplicity,
lucidity and exactness, and is calculated not only to make the correct
grammariian, but also a correct prosodian. Whatever may be its fate in
the field, it enters with a large share of merit on its side, and with full
as fair prospect of success as any work extant.

From W. S. Preston, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com Schools, Suffolk Co. N. Y.
Patchogue, L. I. July 6, 1842.

Prof. P. Bullions,—Dear Sir—Some time since I received a copy of
your English Grammar, for which I am much obliged. I have devoted
as much time to its perusal as circumstances would permit, and can say
of it, that I believe it claims decided preference over the Grammars ge-
nerally used in schools throughout this country, and indeed I may say,
over the many works on that science extant.

From James Henry, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Herkimer Co.
Little-Falls, July 11, 1842.

Prof. Bullions,—Sir—I have read with as much attention as my avo-
cations would allow, the work you had the kindness to send me, upon
English Grammar, and so far as I am capable of forming an opinion of
the merits of your book, I concur generally in the views expressed in
the extract from the report of M. Boyd, as contained in your circular.
From D. H. Stevens, Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Franklin Co. N. Y.
Moira, Aug. 27, 1842.

Rev. P. Bullions,—Dear Sir—On Wednesday the 24th instant, the committee determined upon a series of books, and I have the happiness to inform you, that your English Grammar will be reported on the first Wednesday in October. at the next meeting of the Association, as the most brief, perspicuous and philosophical work, upon that subject within our knowledge.

Bath, Sept. 11, 1842.

Dear Sir,—Having at length given your English Grammar a careful perusal; and having compared it with all the modern works on the subject, which have any considerable claims to merit, I am prepared to make a more enlightened decision, and one that is satisfactory to myself. The work has my decided preference.

Hudson, Sept. 15, 1842.

Rev. P. Bullions,—Sir—We have examined a copy of your English Grammar, with reference to the introduction of the same into our public schools, and we take pleasure in saying that the examination has proved very satisfactory. We cannot, without occupying too much space, specify the particular points of excellence which we noticed in the arrangement of the different parts, the clearness of expression and illustration, and the precise adaptation of the Rules of Syntax, to the principles previously laid down. It is sufficient to say, that we believe it to be, in all the requisites of a good school book, superior to any other English Grammar which has come under our observation.

II. THE PRINCIPLES OF LATIN GRAMMAR, &c.

This work is upon the foundation of Adam's Latin Grammar, so long and so well known as a text book in this country. The object aimed at was to combine with all that is excellent in the work of Adam, the important results of subsequent labors in this field,—to correct errors and supply defects,—to bring the whole up to that point which the present state of classical learning requires,—and to give it such a form as to render it a suitable part of the series. The following notices are furnished.

From Rev. James W. Alexander, Prof. Belles Lettres in the College of New-Jersey.

I have examined with some care the Latin Grammar of the Rev. Dr. Bullions. It is, if I may hazard a judgment, a most valuable work, evincing that peculiar apprehension of the pupil's necessities, which nothing but long continued practice as an instructor can produce. Among our various Latin Grammars, it deserves the place which is occupied by the best; and no teacher, as I think, need hesitate a moment about introducing it.
III. THE PRINCIPLES OF GREEK GRAMMAR, &c.

The object of this publication was to provide a comprehensive manual of Greek Grammar, adapted to the use of the younger, as well as to the more advanced class of students in our schools and colleges, and especially of those under the author's own care. To this end, the leading principles of Greek Grammar are exhibited in rules as few and brief as possible, so as to be easily committed to memory, and at the same time so comprehensive and perspicuous, as to be of general and easy application.

The following notices of this work, from different sources, will show the estimate formed of it by competent judges.

Bullions' Greek Grammar.—We have examined the second edition of Dr. Bullions' Greek Grammar, and consider it, upon the whole, the best grammar of the Greek language with which we are acquainted. The parts to be committed to memory are both concise and comprehensive; the illustrations are full without prolixity, and the arrangement natural and judicious. The present edition is considerably reduced in size from the former, without, as we apprehend, at all impairing its value.

It discovers in its compilation much labor and research, as well as sound judgment. We are persuaded that the general use of it in our grammar schools and academies would facilitate the acquisition of a thorough knowledge of the language. Judicious teachers pursuing the plan marked out by the author in his preface, would usually conduct their pupils to a competent knowledge of the language in a less time by several months than by the systems formerly in use. We therefore give it our cordial recommendation.

Union College, December 19, 1840. ALONZO POTTER.

Extract of a letter from Rev. Daniel D. Whedon, A.M., Professor of Ancient Languages and Literature, in the Wesleyan University, Middleton, Ct.

Wesleyan University, March 29, 1842.

Rev. Dr. Bullions,—Dear Sir,—Although I have not the honor of
your personal acquaintance, I take the liberty of addressing to you my thanks for your excellent Greek Grammar. Notwithstanding many personal, urgent, and interested appeals in favor of other grammars—and our literary market seems to abound with that kind of stock—the intrinsic superiority of your manual over every rival, induced me, after I saw your last edition, to adopt it in the Greek department of the Wesleyan University, and the success of my present Freshman class, amply justifies the course.

*Extract of a letter from Henry Bannister, A.M. Principal of the Academy in Fairfield, N. Y.*

*Fairfield Academy, May 12, 1842.*

Rev. Dr. Bullions,—Sir—Sometime since I received your English and Greek Grammar, of each, one copy; and, if it is not too late, I would now return you my sincere thanks. I have not found in any work, suitable for a text book in schools, an analysis of the verb so strictly philosophical, and at the same time so easy to the learner to master and to retain when mastered, as that contained in your work. The editorial observations on government, and indeed the whole matter and arrangement of the Syntax, especially commend your work to general use in schools.

[From the Princeton Review, for Jan. 1840.]

It is with pleasure we welcome a second edition of this manual, which we continue to regard as still unsurpassed by any similar work in our language. The typography and the quality of the paper are uncommonly good. We observe valuable additions and alterations. For all that we can see, everything worth knowing in Thiersch is here condensed into a few pages. We have certainly never seen the anatomy of the Greek verb so neatly demonstrated. The Syntax is full, and presents the leading facts and principles, by rules, so as to be easily committed to memory. To learners who are beginning the language, and especially to teachers of grammar schools, we earnestly recommend this book.

[From the New-York Observer.]  

Bullions’ Principles of Greek Grammar, &c. 2d edition. With pleasure we hail the second edition of this valuable work, and are happy to find that the revision which it has undergone has resulted in decided improvements. Formed, as it is, on the basis of that most symmetrical of all modern grammars. Dr. Moor’s Greek Grammar, which its learned author never lived to complete. It is now made to embrace not only the general rules, but all the minutiae essential to a critical knowledge of that ancient and elegant language. One of the chief excellencies of this model, and one that is fully retained in this grammar, is to be found in the simplicity, perspicuity, conciseness, and yet fulness of the definitions and rules for the various modifications of the language. The sense is clearly expressed, while scarcely a particle is used that could have been dispensed with. We have no hesitation in expressing the opinion, that Dr. B. has produced the most complete and useful Greek grammar that is to be found in the English language.
RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE SERIES.

From the Rev. John Ludlow, D.D. Provost of the University of Penn.

No one I think can ever examine the series of Grammars published by Dr. Bullions, without a deep conviction of their superior excellence. When the English Grammar, the first in the series, was published in 1834. it was my pleasure, in connexion with some honored individuals, in the city of Albany, to bear the highest testimony to its worth; that testimony, if I mistake not, received the unanimous approval of all whose judgment can or ought to influence public opinion. I have seen, with great gratification, that the 2d and 3d in the series, the Latin and Greek, have met with the same favorable judgement, which I believe to be entirely deserved, and in which I do most heartily concur.

From the Hon. Alfred Conkling, Judge of the United States Court in the Northern District of New-York, published in the Cayuga Patriot.

Bullions' Series of Grammars.—By the recent publication of "The Principles of Latin Grammar," this series of grammars (English, Latin, and Greek,) is at length completed. To their preparation, Dr. Bullions has devoted many years of the best portion of his life. In the composition of these books, he has shown an intimate acquaintance with the works of his ablest predecessors; and while upon the one hand, he has not scrupled freely to avail himself of their labors, on the other hand, by studiously avoiding all that is objectionable in them, and by re-modelling, improving, and illustrating the rest, he has unquestionably succeeded in constructing the best—decidedly the very best—grammar, in each of the three above named languages, that has yet appeared. Such is the deliberate and impartial judgment which has been repeatedly expressed by the most competent judges, respecting the English and Greek grammars; and such, I hesitate not to believe, will be the judgment formed of the Latin grammar. But independently of the superiority of these works separately considered, they possess, collectively, the great additional recommendation of having their leading parts arranged in the same order, and, as far as properly can be done, expressed in the same language. An acquaintance with one of them, therefore, cannot fail greatly to facilitate the study of another, and at the same time, by directing the attention of the student distinctly to the points of agreement and of difference in the several languages, to render his acquisitions more accurate, and at the same time to give him clearer and more comprehensive views of the general principles of language. The importance of using in academies and schools of the United States none but ably written and unexceptionable school books, is incalculable; and without intending unnecessarily to depreciate the labors of others, as a friend of sound education, I cannot refrain from expressing an earnest hope of seeing this series of grammars in general use. They are all beautifully printed on very good paper, and are sold at very reasonable prices.